

OXFORD

# Oxford Word Skills

**ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY**

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

*Learn to use the most important  
words and phrases in English  
topic by topic*



Oxford  
**3000**

**SECOND  
EDITION**

# Oxford Word Skills

**ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY**

**Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman**

*Learn to use the most important  
words and phrases in English  
topic by topic*

**OXFORD**



Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom  
Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.  
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,  
and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade  
mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2020

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted

First published in 2020

2024 2023 2022 2021 2020

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

#### No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,  
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as  
expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the  
appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning  
reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT  
Rights Department, Oxford University Press,  
at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must  
impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith  
and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the  
materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 460566 3 Pack  
ISBN: 978 0 19 460567 0 Student's Book  
ISBN: 978 0 19 479862 4 Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary 10th  
edition app

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Cover images: OUP (table tennis/ESLINE); Shutterstock (happy man/Dean Drobot),  
(painting/shoarts), (tiger/Collette3), (fruit/tazzymoto), (brick laying/Olefirenko  
Vitaly), (coffee/kikovic), (coast/Vibrant Image Studio), (subway/olivia\_owl), (traveller/  
minagephotography), (trollies/Henrik Lehnert).

Some of the **ABOUT YOU** answers were kindly supplied by the following people:  
Elzbieta Rudniak (Poland), Eva Pauleerová and her students (Czech Republic),  
Franky Lau (China), Florence Waelen (Kenya), Gabriela Rangel (Mexico), Katalin Elekes  
and her students (Hungary), Mallika Ghosh (India).

Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher.

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this  
has not been possible in some cases. We apologise for any apparent infringement of copyright and,  
if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest possible  
opportunity.

Disclaimer: This book includes some words which have or are asserted to have proprietary status as  
trademarks or otherwise. Their inclusion does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a  
non-proprietary or general significance nor any other judgement concerning their legal status. In cases  
where editorial staff have some evidence that a word has proprietary status this is indicated in the  
listing of that word in the Word List but no judgement concerning the legal status of such words is made  
or implied thereby.

The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to use the following photographs:  
Alamy Stock Photo pp. 64 (recipe/Zoomar CmbH), 66 (police/Martin Brayley), 112 (post  
office/Kumar Shikandan), 129 (history/Jan Dagnall), (literature/CBW), 158 (Vanessa May/  
ITAR-TASS News Agency), (Jonas Kaufmann/dpa picture Alliance), 159 (Glastonbury/  
Roger Cracknell D1), 160 (Mr Bean/United Archive GmbH), (Dunkirk/Moviestore  
Collection Ltd), (Bond/Entertainment Pictures), (cartoon/MARKA), (science fiction/  
Sportsphoto), 165 (Mary Shelley/Heritage Image Partnership Ltd), 177 (information  
office/EDU Vision), **Metropolitan Museum of Art** p. 129 The Mr. and Mrs. Henry  
Triteson Jr. Purchase Fund, 1956 © Metropolitan Museum, New York; OUP pp. 65 (mobile  
phone/Mox Studio), 80 (monkey, snake, whale, cow, spider), 92 (milk, bread,  
chocolates), 94 (apple, grapes, pineapple), 95 (cucumber), 96 (cow, beef, lamb), 102  
(bike), 140 (computer), 154 (TV), 171 (plane); Shutterstock pp. 17 (spoon/Alex  
Staroseliev), 24 (seasons/mandritoiu), 28 (woman/JP Chretien), (man/Studioloco), 30  
(tall/Asier Romero), (average/pixlestock), (short/minagephotography), (slim/Ebitkar),  
(average build/AlexNasty), (overweight/Gelpi), 31 (beard/Cookie Studio), (blonde hair/  
nakaridore), (straight hair/Roman Samborskiy), (grey hair/AJP), 34 (reception/  
SeventyFour), 36 (demon/aastock), (Elsie/India Picture), (Alf/Pathdoc), (Dave/kurhan),  
(Maggie/Djomas), (Paul/eurobanks), (Jane/natu), (Luke/Spectral Design), (Karen/Heather  
Shimmin), (James/Gelpi), (Jessica/all-about people), 37 (couple/Spectral Design),  
(Rogier Cracknell D1), 38 (laughing/WAYHOME Studio), 39 (Gemma, Sophie/WAYHOME  
Studio), 40 (couple/Robex-73), 41 (Sophie, Gemma/WAYHOME Studio), 51 (Caroline/  
Artem Varnitsin), 53 (tennis/filmphoto), 56 (scarf/Yuri Gulakov), (hat/  
FoodTravelStockforlife), (shoes/Kutlavya Dmitry), (leather boots/Hlemidia Ivan), (trainers/  
watch/Olga Popeva), (socks/Valkoinen), (tights/Kajonsak Tui), (glasses/Ajintai), (sunglasses/  
yod67), (gloves/Andrey Armayagov), (rings/AOME1812), (jewellery/Alina MD), (necklace/  
Alpay Erdem), 57 (Shoes/glamour/necklace/superphoto65), (watch/Hugh Adams),  
(boots/Hlemidia Ivan), (trainers/Harry Cabance), (gloves/TinasDreamworld), (belt/  
AlenKadr), (rights/Spinsv), (plastic ring/Nikos Andreou), 58 (red skirt/Velvet Eye),  
(blue skirt/lev radin), (orange handbag/Nadia Korel), (green handbag/Khmelnitskaia  
Evgeniia), (tie/Sandratsky Dmitriy), (purple tie/bg\_knight), (shoes/Ivan Popelyshko),  
(red shoes/azure), 59 (shop assistant/Zoriana Zaitseva), (large shirt/EveniiAnd), 60  
(bank notes & coins/Ubemensch Matt), (bank notes/Andrew Baker), (coins/UKRID),  
(debit card/robertindiana), (brown wallet/Ekaterina43), (purse/Bayanova Svetlana),  
(wallet/LomdetP), 61 (table setting/allstars), (hair products/Maria Francesca Moccia),  
(car/White Vector), 62 (toys/Billion Photos), 64 (diary/Panya Anusam), (old camera/  
finwal89), (cassette/Ensuer), (old tools/Olivier Le Queinec), 65 (fan/ScriptX),  
(electric fan/Ratthaphong Ekariyasap), (old phone/Adrio Communications Ltd), 68  
(headache/Makistock), (toothache/PARIN.PSA), (stomach ache/napatsor  
aungsriMinda), (backache/Obprod), (cold/Samo Trebizan), (cough/Stockbakery),  
(flu/Kryzelov), (temperature/Ernolaev Alexander), (sick/New Africa), 69 (ill/  
Rawpixel.com), 71 (rocks/Tatiana Popova), 72 (logging/Sheryl Watson), 73 (coal/Pail  
Oleg), (petrol/Novikov Alex), (electricity/TW Stock), (gas/Happyhunt), 78 (sunny/  
traXX), (cloudy/Suzanne Tucker), (raining/Linga Neilson), (windy/Rainer Fuhrmann),  
(snow/Alexander Demyanov), 79 (stormy/diamond), 80 (lion/Eric Isselee), (tiger/  
nattanan726), (elephant/Rich Carey), (bear/Alexander Cher), (bird/Dennis Jacobsen),  
(horse/mariai), (sheep/Aaron Amat), (pg/photomaster), (dog/Dora Zett), (cat/  
Timmary), (mouse/Eric Isselee), (fly, bee/irin-k), 89 (painting/Olena Yakobchuck),  
(timetable/PR Image Factory), (family/lakov Filimonov), (cinema/Nikolay Antonov),  
(holding up hands/fizkes), 90 (fighting/Anton Watman), (phone call/WAYHOME  
Studio), (waking up/YAKOBCHUK VIACHESLAV), (smelling rose/Arthir Premprayot),  
(asleep/Colubovoy), (smiling/Antonio Guillem), 92 (butter/jak fmm), (cheese/Hong Vo),  
(eggs/nechaevkon), (sugar/Kasabutsaya Nataliya), (cake slice/ninkas), (cake/  
Brittany), (jam/Alter-ego), (biscuits/TairA), (olive oil/Agorohov), (lilies/Africa Studio),  
(rice/RVillalon), (spaghetti/jamakosy), (chocolate/etorres), 93 (grocery/lakov  
Filimonov), (butchers/Minerva Studio), (bag/Pitchayarat Chootai), 94 (banana/  
vandycan), (orange/Valentyn Volkov), (peach/Svetlana Serebryakova), (pear/lines  
Behrens-Kunkel), (lemon/Valery121283), (strawberry/Maks Narodenko), (nuts/  
Svetlana Verbitckaia), 95 (potato/grey\_and), (beans/ConstantinosZ), (onion/Lubava),  
(carrot/VictoriaKli), (peas/AmyLV), (cabbage/jamakosy), (mushroom/bergamot),  
(garlic/Artem Kutsenko), (lettuce/Gavran333), (tomato/Tim UR), (red pepper/  
SOMMAl), (peas/Africa Studio), (cooked peas/stevemart), 96 (sheep/Aaron Amat),  
(lamb/Yanya Sid), (chicken/Olhastock), (duck/Aksanova Natalya), (pig/Tsekhmister),  
(chicken/IANG HONGYAN), (duck/bonchan), (pork/Mirek Kijewski), (ham/sripfoto),  
(bacon/Richard Griffin), (sausages/kzww), (salmon/TheFarAwayKingdom), (tuna/  
picturepartners), (squid/demarco), (prawns/aperturesound), (crab/LAURA\_VN), 99  
(waiter/lakov Filimonov), 100 (coffee/Photoangraphy), (black coffee/jamenic181),  
(tea/Pavel Lys), (hot chocolate/Lilya Kandashevich), (orange juice/r.classen), (cola/  
StudioBy The Sea), (sandwich/gowithstock), (brown bread/Richard M Lee), (toasted  
sandwich/Drozhdzina Elena), (roll/Ninetechno), (crisps/Mettus), (cakes/V\_L), 102  
(car/Rawpixel.com), (us/Sanit Fuangnakhorn), (coach/Mikbiz), (van/TeamDa), (lorry/  
Sunday Stock), (motorbike/Dimitris Leonidas), (taxi/maradon 333), (underground/  
MirasWonderland), 105 (information/SIHASAKPRACHUM), 107 (pointing/tofumax),  
108 (directions/Haelen Haagen), 110 (closed sign/AOFTO), (toilets/Thas Pol Sangsee),  
(exit/Piotr Dzida), (sale/Sundry Photography), (no smoking/Lester Balajadia), (keep  
left/Focus Zagni), (no dogs/Britain), (out of order/Richard Johnson), (no vacancies/  
Chiyat), (danger/AC Rider), (entrance/Stripped Pixel), (queue/jmrnkadir), (mind  
the gap/Joseph Maguire), (keep off the grass/emattil), 112 (castle/Daniela  
Miglioni), (palace/Fulcanova), (market/Epel), (park/EarthScape ImageGraphy),  
(art gallery/Sofia Voronkova), (tower/prasit jmkajomkiat), (square/PHOTOCREO  
Michael Bednarek), (bridge/Carlos Bruzos Valin), 129 (chemistry/Picel-Shot),  
(physics/Science Photo), (biology/New Africa), (maths/Billion Photos), (computer  
science/Aleksey Khilko), (geography/TonelloPhotography), (languages/  
Aytegicmel), (exercise/Summersky), (design and technology/RomanR), 130  
(uniform/Rawpixel.com), 131, 132 (man/AJR\_Photo), 133 (doctor/Monkey Business  
Images), (plans/asobov), (hard hat/Nattanan Zia), (scales of justice/Billion Photos),  
(newspaper/DONOT6\_Studio), (computer/Stanic Vladimir), (businessman/  
michaeljung), 134 (police/betto Rodrigues), (business people/gigsy25), (dentist/  
djrandco), (model/FashionStock.com), (shop assistant/Lstock Studio), (nurse/  
Monkey Business Images), (fashion designer/Enad Aksic), (soldier/Misha Belly),  
(pilot/Angelo Giampiccolo), (builder/ALPA PROD), (teacher/Asia Images Group),  
(chef/Wavebreak Media), (cleaner/RossHelen), (lorry driver/Kzenon), (hairstresser/  
lakov Filimonov), 136 (secretary/Dragon Images), (office/Africa Studio), (factory/You  
Touch Pix of Eu Toch), (hospital/Tyler Olsen), 138 (interview/Blue Planet Studio), 140  
(computer screen/Russian Ivantsov), (keyboard/On\_Ter), (mouse/AG-Photos),  
(printer/cigdem), (laptop/Sergey Peterman), (tablet/Umberto Shtanzman),  
(computer programme/Morrowind), (drop down menu/Semenchenko), 144 (mobile  
phone/Elica), (phone charger/ZBan), 147 (sightseeing/Rosshelen), (tent/Alexdukin),  
(painting/Syda Productions), 150 (bathroom/Artazum), (dining room/roakoma), (bus  
stop/den-arcticman), (DJ/FabrikaSimf), (railway station/CapuletBK), (art gallery/  
Anton\_Ivanov), (address book/Photology 1972), (dishwasher/Lezek Glasnet), 151  
(phone/jekla), 153 (man/Africa Studio), (two people/Rommel Canlas), 154 (tent/  
Alexdukin), (fishing rod/Vector), (weights/Valerii Ivaschenko), (guitar/Andrei  
Valadenkov), (golf clubs/Sean Locke Photography), (computer game/Gorodenkoff),  
(suitcase/omnimoney), (sketch pad/Nastya Sokolova), (cooking/Creativa Images),  
(stamp album/279Photo Studio), (friends/Monkey Business Images), (DVDs/Ingrid  
Balabanova), 155 (ballet/Flamingo Images) 156 (goalkeeper/FOTOKITA), (baseball/  
zsolc\_uveges), (basketball/Fabrizio Andrea Bertani), (swimming/jeep2499),  
(American football/Broccreative), (tennis/Q Stock), (table tennis/Stefan), (ice hockey/  
Sergey Mironov), (running/EveronKalinbacak), (motor racing/Ev.Safronov), (skiing/  
Andrey Nikulin), (football/Herbert Kraty), 158 (orchestra/Ferenc Szelepcsenyi), 158  
(Lang Lang/Maria Laura Antonelli/AGF), 159 (CD/Arkadi Bulva), 160 (love story/  
Bogoljub), (horror/Studio Canal), 161 (movie poster/Universal Pictures), 164  
(reading/Motortion Films), 166 (passport/Ray Morgan), 167 (double room/Nasimi  
Babaev), (single room/Ruslana Maskenskaia), 168 (hotel/alexkatov), 169 (key card/  
Pressmaster), (key/Zelikjo Radojko), 170 (ticket machine/filpazphotomatic), (check  
in desk/Tyler Olsen), 171 (businessman/Maridav), (seat belt/jnewsfoto), (flight  
attendant/Sorbis), (plane/tzuky333), (passport official/FrameStockFootages),  
(carousel/fizkes), 173 (taking photos/Stokkete), 179 (teacher/Dean Drobot), 180  
Dean Drobot, 184 (wedding/Olya64), (Sonya/ProStockStudio), 188 (cafe/pickingpock),  
191 (taking off jacket/Cecilia Tomio), (light switch/Svetlana Cherkasova), (putting  
on shoes/BOKEH Stock).

All illustrations by: CCS Digital Education.



# Contents

List of spotlight boxes .....	6
Acknowledgements .....	7
Introduction .....	8

## LEARNING ENGLISH

1 Classroom vocabulary .....	12
2 Grammar words .....	13
3 Using this book .....	14
4 Learning new words .....	16
5 Classroom activities .....	18

## NUMBERS AND TIME

6 Numbers .....	20
7 Telling the time .....	22
8 Days, seasons and dates .....	24
9 Time words and phrases .....	26

## PEOPLE

10 Parts of the body .....	28
11 Describing people .....	30
12 Physical actions .....	32
13 Personal information .....	34
14 Family .....	36
15 Personality .....	38
16 Relationships .....	40
17 Feelings .....	42

## LANGUAGE SECTION 1 prepositions

18 Prepositions: time .....	44
19 Prepositions: direction .....	45
20 Prepositions: place .....	46
21 Prepositions: phrases .....	48
22 Word + preposition .....	50

## EVERYDAY LIFE

23 Routines .....	52
24 Clothes .....	54
25 Accessories .....	56
26 Colours, size and appearance .....	58
27 Money .....	60
28 Shopping .....	62
29 Possessions .....	64
30 Crime .....	66
31 Illness .....	68
32 Injuries .....	70

## THE WORLD AROUND US

33 Geography .....	71
34 The environment .....	72
35 Countries and nationalities .....	74
36 My country .....	76
37 Weather .....	78
38 Animals, insects and birds .....	80

## LANGUAGE SECTION 2 verbs

39 Irregular verbs .....	82
40 <i>have got</i> and <i>have</i> .....	84
41 <i>make</i> or <i>do</i> .....	86
42 <i>get</i> .....	88
43 <i>see</i> .....	89
44 Verbs and nouns with the same form .....	90



# Contents

## FOOD AND DRINK

45 Shopping for food .....	92
46 Fruit and vegetables .....	94
47 Meat and fish .....	96
48 A restaurant table .....	97
49 Eating in a restaurant .....	98
50 In a café .....	100

## GETTING AROUND

51 Vehicles and roads .....	102
52 Buses .....	104
53 Trains .....	106
54 Directions .....	108
55 Signs and notices .....	110

## PLACES

56 My town .....	112
57 The countryside .....	114
58 Home .....	116
59 Kitchen .....	118
60 Bedroom and bathroom .....	120
61 Living room .....	122

## LANGUAGE SECTION 3 adjectives and adverbs

62 Adjectives with prefixes .....	123
63 Adjective opposites .....	124
64 Common adverbs .....	126
65 Adverbs of manner .....	128

## STUDY AND WORK

66 School subjects .....	129
67 The education system .....	130
68 University .....	132
69 Jobs .....	134
70 Describing jobs .....	136
71 Job interview .....	138
72 First day at work .....	139

## TECHNOLOGY

73 Computers .....	140
74 Email, letters and the internet .....	142
75 Phoning .....	144

## LANGUAGE SECTION 4 building words

76 -er / -or / -r nouns .....	146
77 -ing forms .....	147
78 Noun suffixes .....	148
79 Compound nouns .....	150

## HOBBIES AND INTERESTS

80 Likes and dislikes .....	152
81 Free time .....	154
82 Sport .....	156
83 Music .....	158
84 Films .....	160
85 The media .....	162
86 Books .....	164

## HOLIDAYS

87 Arranging a holiday .....	166
88 Hotels .....	168
89 Airports .....	170
90 Types of holiday .....	172

## SOCIAL ENGLISH

91 Meet and greet .....	174
92 Ask for information .....	176
93 Requests and permission .....	178
94 Invitations and suggestions .....	180
95 Offers and saying sorry .....	182
96 Probably or possibly .....	184

## LANGUAGE SECTION 5 link words and phrasal verbs

97 Link words 1 .....	186
98 Link words 2 .....	188
99 Phrasal verbs .....	190
100 Common expressions .....	192
Vocabulary building .....	194
Common irregular verbs .....	198
Answer key .....	200
A1 Oxford 3000 words which aren't keywords .....	235
Word list .....	236
Abbreviations used in the book .....	256



## Spotlight boxes

Title	Unit	Page
<i>a lot (of) and a bit (of)</i> .....	37	78
<i>about and around</i> .....	6	20
adverbs of frequency .....	23	53
adverbs of manner .....	65	128
airports .....	89	170
<i>allow and let</i> .....	55	110
amounts of money .....	27	60
<i>another and some more</i> .....	49	99
<i>at</i> .....	18	44
<i>at first and in the end</i> .....	21	48
<i>at university, in hospital, etc.</i> .....	21	49
<i>be good at sth</i> .....	66	129
<i>be ill and sick</i> .....	31	68
being polite .....	93	178
<i>book/reserve sth</i> .....	53	107
<i>boring/bored, interesting/interested, etc.</i> .....	80	153
<i>both</i> .....	38	80
<i>by</i> .....	83	158
<i>café, bar, pub</i> .....	50	100
capital letters .....	8	24
<i>centre and card</i> .....	79	151
comparatives and superlatives .....	14	37
<i>either ... or ...</i> .....	67	130
<i>else</i> .....	100	193
<i>employ</i> .....	69	134
<i>ever</i> .....	39	82
<i>exams</i> .....	67	131
<i>feelings and emotions</i> .....	17	43
<i>flat, house, home</i> .....	58	117
<i>for and since</i> .....	9	27
<i>friend</i> .....	16	41
<i>get</i> .....	42	89
<i>good-looking, beautiful, etc.</i> .....	11	31
<i>happen and take place</i> .....	30	66

Title	Unit	Page
<i>have + noun</i> .....	60	121
<i>have got and have</i> .....	40	84
<i>have to + verb</i> .....	88	169
<i>How long does it last?</i> .....	68	132
<i>How long does it take?</i> .....	52	104
<i>how much and how many?</i> .....	45	93
<i>hundreds, thousands, millions</i> .....	6	21
<i>(I'm) sorry</i> .....	95	183
<i>I think so / I hope so</i> .....	96	184
<i>information</i> .....	13	34
<i>injuries</i> .....	32	70
<i>introductions</i> .....	91	174
<i>irregular verbs</i> .....	12	32
<i>irregular verbs</i> .....	82	157
<i>keep</i> .....	73	140
<i>last</i> .....	53	106
<i>lend and borrow</i> .....	93	179
<i>love/like/hate + -ing</i> .....	80	152
<i>meet and meeting</i> .....	70	137
<i>menus</i> .....	49	98
<i>might + verb</i> .....	87	166
<i>minutes to or past</i> .....	7	22
<i>noun + shop</i> .....	28	62
<i>order of adjectives</i> .....	26	58
<i>people from a country</i> .....	35	74
<i>please and thanks</i> .....	50	101
<i>plural forms of nouns</i> .....	48	97
<i>plural nouns and pairs</i> .....	25	56
<i>position of adjectives</i> .....	63	124
<i>preposition + -ing form</i> .....	22	50
<i>quite</i> .....	11	30
<i>really</i> .....	15	39
<i>record sth and a record</i> .....	83	159
<i>relationship</i> .....	16	40

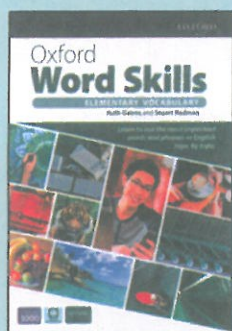
Title	Unit	Page
<i>salad</i> .....	46	95
saying and writing dates and years .....	8	25
saying email addresses .....	74	142
saying phone numbers .....	75	144
saying what you eat .....	47	96
see and watch .....	43	89
see you ... ..	91	175
should + verb .....	31	69
so and such .....	72	139
somewhere, anywhere, .....	33	71
nowhere, everywhere		
still .....	97	187
suffix -ion .....	78	148
suffix -ment .....	78	149
teacher, lecturer, professor .....	68	133
thing(s) .....	4	16
think about and think of .....	22	51
too and very .....	26	59
trouble .....	86	164
turn sth on/off .....	59	118
uncountable nouns .....	45	92
-in, -im, -ir, -un .....	62	123
used to + verb .....	90	172
verbs used with vehicles .....	51	102
verbs with games and sport .....	82	156
watch, see, listen, hear .....	85	162
What kind/type/sort of ...? .....	84	160
What's he/she/it like? .....	15	38
which or what? .....	92	177
whose and belong to someone .....	92	176
word building .....	5	18



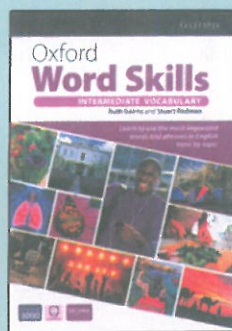
# Introduction

## What is **Oxford Word Skills**?

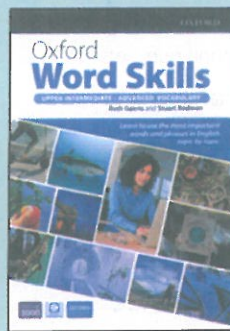
*Oxford Word Skills* is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



**Level 1:**  
elementary/pre-intermediate  
(CEFR levels A1 and A2)



**Level 2:**  
intermediate (CEFR level B1)



**Level 3:**  
upper-intermediate/advanced  
(CEFR levels B2 and C1)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.


## How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, usually on the same page.

The units are grouped within modules containing 3–10 units. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. People, Food and drink, Study and work, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Prepositions, Adjectives and adverbs, Verbs.

The Elementary level also contains:

- a list of all the 'spotlight' boxes
- a list of word-building tables
- a list of irregular verbs
- an answer key for all the exercises
- Word list – an index of all the vocabulary taught with a unit reference to where the item appears

*Oxford Word Skills* is directly linked to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the  to check the correct pronunciation.

## What vocabulary is included?

At Elementary level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, meeting and greeting
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions, verbs, adjectives and adverbs

Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels increasingly add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative use of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000™. This is a list of 3000 words identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the most important words for learners of English.





These items have been divided into four levels in accordance with the CEFR levels (A1, A2, B1 and B2).

- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling some items from the A2 level.
- The Upper-Intermediate/Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes B2 and C1 items from the enlarged Oxford 5000™ word list.

The Oxford 3000 word list is supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List™, containing just under 1,000 phrases considered important for students at these levels; and topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000 alongside the topic lists, we are able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary items that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. *main course* in a restaurant, or *hand luggage* at an airport. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we are also able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases at each level.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* for information on other meanings.

In the Elementary level, there is also a list at the back of the book of all the A1 items from the Oxford 3000 that have not been taught. The reason for this is that the Elementary level makes some assumptions about very high frequency level items which learners should already be familiar with. If there are words here that students do not know, they can go to the  to check the meaning and pronunciation.

Key words are sometimes repeated in later units in the book, but may not be highlighted in bold. If students do not recognize the word, they should look in the Word List to see where the item was introduced and defined, or use the . Such recycling is useful for learners.

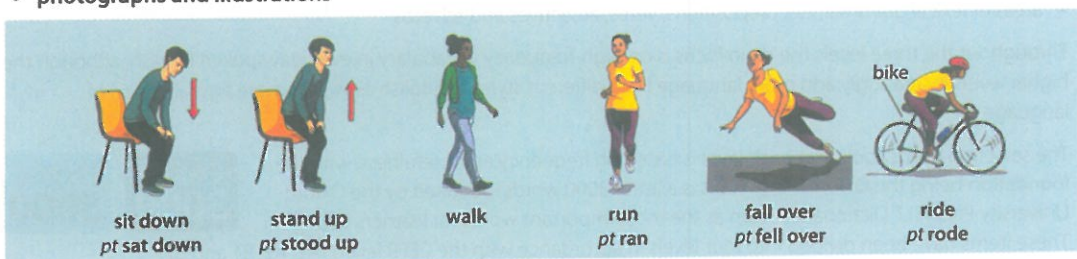


## To the teacher

### How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

- **photographs and illustrations**



- **tables**

<b>on</b>	<b>a day</b>	<b>a date</b>
	<b>on Tuesday</b> <b>on Friday evening</b> <b>on Tuesdays = every Tuesday</b> <b>on my birthday</b> <b>on Christmas Day</b>	<b>on September 10</b> <b>on 6<sup>th</sup> May</b>

- **different types of text**

### B Friends

**WHY WE LIKE each other**

Sophie: I **get on very well with** Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we've got

**GLOSSARY**

**each other**      She likes me and I like her.  
= We like **each other**.

**get on (well) with sb**      have a good relationship with sb

**personality**      what a person is like that makes them different from other people

**meet pt met**      1 see and speak to sb for the first time  
2 go to a place and wait for sb:  
*We're **meeting** them at 7.30.*

**become**      begin to be sth: **become friends/flatmates**

**flatmate**      a person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship

**advice (U)**      an opinion or information that you give to help sb with a problem  
**give (sb) advice**

**see sb**      talk to or visit sb

Visuals obviously provide a clear guide to meaning; the tables and texts show words being used in natural sentences, with the meaning explained in a glossary (within a table or beside a text). As the input in most sections occupies a page and does not usually exceed 15 items, it is very straightforward to use in the classroom. Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for at least ten minutes. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of the new items in the presentation sentences, dialogue or extended text. Tell students to look at the extra words included in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. This is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value, for example, these spotlights on *else* and on the difference between *flat*, *house* and *home*:

**SPOTLIGHT** *else*

You can use **else** to mean 'different' after words like **everyone**, **somewhere** and **nothing**.

- I didn't like it, but **everyone else** did. (= all the other people)
- The restaurant was full so we went **somewhere else**. (= to another place)
- We had bread because there was **nothing else** to eat. (= no other thing)


**SPOTLIGHT** *flat, house, home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.

SYN **apartment**

A **house** is a building that is made for people to live in. It can have more than one floor.

**Home** is where you live (in a flat or a house).

- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the items. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise the presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to read sections of it, etc.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer Key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. This is probably a better approach as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on / practise pronunciation. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically as they tend to progress from receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the ABOUT YOU / ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary. When they have finished an exercise, you will find that many of them – sentence completion and particularly dialogue completion – lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
- Students should look out for the  **TEST YOURSELF** icons in each unit. When they have completed the written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a book, notebook or piece of paper) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- You will often notice the headings **ABOUT YOU** or **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY**. These are personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way, and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pairwork activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer Key, possible answers for these activities are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

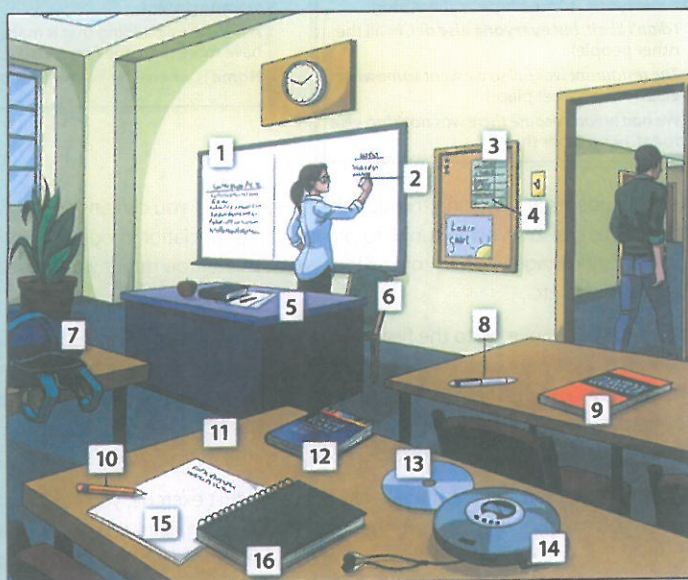
**TEST YOURSELF** How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the app, as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. For self-study learners in particular, it is also a good idea to start with the first module, which will help them use the book more effectively. Self-study learners can check their answers to exercises using the Answer Key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge. In addition, they have the opportunity with this book to test themselves, as explained above.



# 1 Classroom vocabulary

- 1 whiteboard (ALSO board)
- 2 board pen
- 3 noticeboard
- 4 notice
- 5 desk
- 6 chair
- 7 bag
- 8 pen
- 9 coursebook
- 10 pencil
- 11 table
- 12 dictionary
- 13 CD
- 14 CD player
- 15 piece of paper
- 16 exercise book / notebook



1 Tick (✓) the things you can put in a bag. Put a cross (X) by the things you can't.

- |   |                                      |                                       |  |
|---|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| ▶ pen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | 2 desk <input type="checkbox"/>      | 5 table <input type="checkbox"/>      | 8 noticeboard <input type="checkbox"/>     |
| ▶ board <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 3 notice <input type="checkbox"/>    | 6 coursebook <input type="checkbox"/> | 9 dictionary <input type="checkbox"/>      |
| 1 pencil <input type="checkbox"/>           | 4 CD player <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 chair <input type="checkbox"/>      | 10 piece of paper <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Complete the words or phrases.

- |            |            |            |
|------------|------------|------------|
| ▶ notebook | 3 notice   | 5 piece of |
| 1 board    | 4 exercise | 6 CD       |
| 2 course   |            |            |

3 Write your answers.

- |  |         |
|--|---------|
| ▶ You sit on one of these.               | a chair |
| 1 The teacher writes on this.            |         |
| 2 You find the meaning of words in this. |         |
| 3 You sit behind one of these.           |         |
| 4 You write in one of these.             |         |
| 5 The teacher puts information on this.  |         |
| 6 The teacher can play one of these.     |         |
| 7 You can put your books in this.        |         |
| 8 You study from one of these.           |         |

4 ABOUT YOU Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ▶ I've got a dictionary | ▶ I haven't got a CD player |
|                         |                             |
|                         |                             |
|                         |                             |
|                         |                             |



TEST YOURSELF



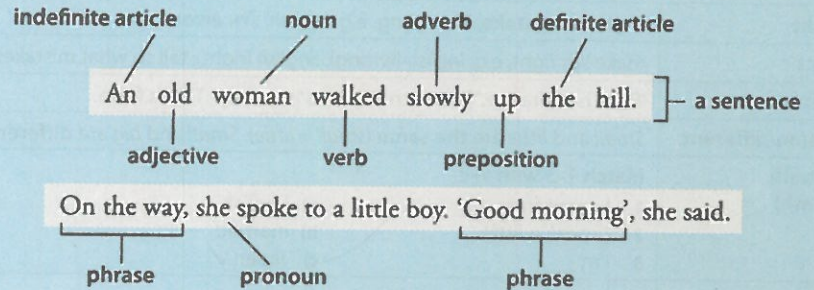
## 2 Grammar words

Read this short text.

An old woman walked slowly up the hill.  
On the way, she spoke to a little boy.  
'Good morning', she said.

- There are eight **words** in the first **sentence**.
- *Walk* is a **regular** verb. The **past simple** is *walked*.
- *Speak* is an **irregular** verb. The past simple is *spoke*, and the **past participle** is *spoken*.  
(The past participle is used to form the present perfect: *Have you spoken to the doctor today?*)

Look at the different parts of speech.



### 1 Circle the correct answer.

► A and the are adjectives / articles.

1 A and an are definite / indefinite articles.

2 Woman is a noun / adjective.

3 Up is a preposition / pronoun.

4 Have is a regular / an irregular verb.

5 He and she are nouns / pronouns.

6 Go and do are verbs / nouns.

7 Badly and happily are adverbs / adjectives.

8 Gone is the past simple / past participle of the verb go.

### 2 Find the answers for each sentence.

I have an English lesson now.

► a verb have

1 a pronoun

2 an indefinite article

3 a noun

There's a young man from Rome in the class.

4 an adjective

5 a preposition

6 an indefinite article

This morning, he asked a question, and he spoke very quietly.

7 an adverb

8 an irregular past simple

9 a regular past simple

10 a phrase

I think he's in the wrong class.

11 a noun

12 a verb

13 an adjective

14 a pronoun

15 a sentence

### 3 What are the parts of speech for the other words in the text at the top of the page?

► hill noun

1 on

2 the

3 way

4 spoke

5 to

6 a

7 little

8 boy

9 she

10 said




TEST YOURSELF



### 3 Using this book

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

tick	✓ (= yes OR correct)				
underline	<u>word</u>				
cross out	<del>word</del>				
circle	(word)				
complete	I <u>like</u> ice cream.				
correct/wrong	2 + 2 = 4 is <b>correct</b> (ALSO <b>right</b> ). 2 + 2 = 5 is <b>wrong</b> .				
mistake	If sth is a <b>mistake</b> , it's wrong. e.g. <del>English</del> . SYN <b>error</b>				
correct	make sth right, e.g. <del>English</del> (wrong), <b>English</b> (right); tell sb what mistakes they are making				
true/false	'Paris is in France.' That's <b>true</b> . 'Paris is in Italy.' That's <b>false</b> .				
the same/different	<i>Small</i> and <i>little</i> are <b>the same</b> ( <i>small</i> = <i>little</i> ). <i>Small</i> and <i>big</i> are <b>different</b> .				
match sth (with sth)	Match 1–3 with a–c. 1 I come from <u>c</u> .      a) English 2 I speak a little <u>a</u> .      b) married 3 I'm <u>b</u> .                      c) Japan ✓				
missing	If sth is <b>missing</b> , it is not there. e.g. He comes <u>from</u> Tokyo. (The word <u>from</u> is <b>missing</b> .) He comes <u>from</u> Tokyo.				
cover	put one thing over another thing 				
test sb OR yourself	If you <b>test yourself</b> , you ask yourself questions to find what you know and understand, e.g. <i>When I test myself on English verbs, I look at the verb, then say the meaning in my language.</i>				
table	This is a table: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Question</th><th>Answer</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>What does awful mean? NOT What means 'awful'?</td><td>I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Question	Answer	What does awful mean? NOT What means 'awful'?	I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.
Question	Answer				
What does awful mean? NOT What means 'awful'?	I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.				
column	The table above has got two <b>columns</b> : one for questions and one for answers.				
put sth in order	put things in the right place or position: <i>Put these words in order to make a sentence.</i> <i>bed / I / early / to / went</i> <u>I went to bed early.</u>				

#### Short forms and symbols

- TV is a **short form** of television.
- A **symbol** is a sign or picture with a special meaning. e.g. = is a symbol that means **equals** OR **is the same as**: 2 + 2 = 4.

e.g. is short for **for example**: fruit, e.g. apples and bananas.

**OPP** is short for **opposite**: Big is the **opposite** of small.

**SYN** is short for **synonym** (= a word that means the same as another): small SYN little.

**etc.** You use **etc.** at the end of a list to show there are more things, but you don't want to say them all: We bought apples, oranges, bananas, etc. We can say **etc.** as 'etcetera' or **and so on**.

**inf** means **informal**. If a word is **informal**, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well, but not in serious writing or important letters. **OPP formal**

**sth** is a short form of **something**.

**sb** is a short form of **somebody/someone**.



1 Read the sentences and write your answers.

- Put a tick at the end of this sentence. ✓
- 1 Underline the third word in this sentence.
- 2 Circle the first word in this sentence.
- 3 Cross out the last word in this sentence.
- 4 What's the opposite of *big*? .....
- 5 What's a synonym for *fantastic*? .....
- 6 Correct the mistake in this sentence. ....
- 7 What's a more informal word for *thank you*? .....
- 8 Is it *true* or *false* that London is in Scotland? .....
- 9 What word is missing in this sentence? .....
- 10 Is eight thirty the same as half past eight? .....
- 11 Fourteen and twenty-seven is forty-three. Is that right or wrong? .....
- 12 Complete the next sentence. *Where* ..... *you live?* ~ I live near the park.

2 Match the opposites.

- formal c
- 1 the same .....
- 2 correct .....
- 3 true .....
- 4 synonym .....
- a wrong
- b opposite
- c informal ✓
- d different
- e false

3 What do these short forms and symbols mean? Write your answers.

- OPP opposite
- 1 e.g. ....
- 2 ✓ .....
- 3 *inf* .....
- 4 SYN .....
- 5 = .....
- 6 etc. ....

4 Complete the sentences.

- Do days of the week have a capital letter? Yes, that's correct/right.
- 1 You use ..... at the end of a list to show that there are other things but you are not going to say them all.
- 2 What word is ..... in the next sentence? *I went bed early.*
- 3 If you put something in ....., you put it in the correct place or position.
- 4 12 and 12 is 26, isn't it? No, that's .....
- 5 = is a ....., and it means 'equals' or 'is' .....
- 6 I make lots of ..... when I speak, but my teacher usually ..... me.
- 7 After each page, I always ..... myself on all the new words. I often look at the words, ..... the meanings, and then try to remember and say the meanings.
- 8 *US* is a ..... of the United States of America.
- 9 In this exercise, you have to ..... *a* to *e* with 1 to 5.
- 10 *Hi* is a more ..... way of saying *hello*.
- 11 San Francisco is the capital of America. True or .....?
- 12 ..... is a synonym for *mistake*.
- 13 How many ..... has this table got? ~ Three.

Word	Synonym	Example
family name	surname	Rodriguez
first name(s)	forename(s)	Maria Helena

- 14 We have to ..... the correct answer, e.g. I looked at/in the board.
- 15 We have to ..... the wrong answer, e.g. I looked at/in the board.



TEST YOURSELF

## 4 Learning new words

### A How to learn words

Here are some **things** to **help** you when you are learning new words:

- Repeat words **out loud** two or three times to practise the **pronunciation**.
- **Write down** new words in a **notebook**. It's important to **keep a record** of them because it will help you to remember them.
- Write the **meaning** in English or your own language.
- Write an example sentence with the new word. This helps you to understand how to **use** the new word.
- Think of **situations** where you can use this word, and perhaps write them down.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>help</b>	do sth good for sb; make their life easier
<b>out loud</b>	so that other people can hear it
<b>pronunciation</b>	how to say a word <b>pronounce</b> v
<b>write sth down</b>	write sth on paper so you can remember it
<b>notebook</b>	a book that you can write in
<b>record</b>	notes of things that have happened, e.g. a <b>record</b> of money that you have spent <b>keep a record (of sth)</b>
<b>meaning</b>	The <b>meaning</b> of <i>small</i> is 'little'.
<b>use</b>	do a job with sth: <i>I <b>use</b> a key to open my door.</i>
<b>situation</b>	things that are happening at a certain time or in a certain place: <i>I was in a difficult <b>situation</b> at work today because my computer wasn't working.</i>

#### SPOTLIGHT *thing(s)*

We often use **thing(s)** to talk about an idea or a subject. It means we don't need to find the exact name for something.

- *We talked about lots of **things**.*
- *Art is the **thing** that interests me most.*

### 1 Complete the dialogues with one word.

- What's this word?
- 1 Was the homework easy? ~ *Beige*, but I don't know the correct pronunciation.
- 2 Did the others hear you? ~ No, it wasn't, but my father ..... me.
- 3 How do you know you've read that book? ~ Yes, I said his name out .....
- 4 How did you remember her phone number? ~ Because I keep a .....
- 5 Do you know the meaning of *awful*? ~ I wrote it .....
- 6 I've broken my mother's favourite cup. I don't know what to say to her. ~ Yes, but I don't know how to ..... it.
- 7 Have you got a new computer? ~ What a difficult .....!
- 8 Did you talk about the holiday? ~ Yes, but I don't know how to ..... it yet.
- ~ Yes, and lots of other .....

### 2 Complete the sentences. First, cover the text at the top of the page.

- Here are some ► things to help you when you are learning new words.
- 1 Repeat words ..... two or three times to practise the pronunciation.
- 2 Write down new words in a ..... It's important to ..... a record of them.
- 3 Write the ..... in English or your own language.
- 4 If you write an example sentence, it helps you to remember how to ..... a new word.
- 5 Think of ..... where you can use this word.

### 3 Answer the questions.

- Why do you do lots of different things when you are learning new words?  
To help you to understand and remember them.

- 1 Why do you repeat words out loud? .....
- 2 Where can you write down new words? .....
- 3 Why is it important to do that? .....
- 4 How can you write the meaning? .....
- 5 Why do you write an example sentence? .....
- 6 What can you do after that? .....



TEST YOURSELF



## B Questions about words

Question	Answer
What does <i>awful</i> mean? (NOT <i>What means awful?</i> )	I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.
What's this called in English? How do you say <i>fil</i> in English?	I can't remember. OR It's a spoon. Son. OR <i>Fils</i> is French for son.
Could you explain 'No vacancies'? (NOT <i>Could you explain me...?</i> )	Yes. You see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.
What's the difference between <i>hello</i> and <i>hi</i> ?	The meaning is the same, but <i>hi</i> is informal.
What's the opposite of <i>big</i> ?	Small.
How do you pronounce <i>tie</i> ?	It's like <i>my</i> .
<i>Eight</i> is pronounced like <i>night</i> . Is that right/correct?	No, that's wrong. OR That's not right. It's pronounced like <i>wait</i> .
How do you spell <i>apple</i> ? I'm not sure. (Is it one 'p' or two?)	It's A-double P-L-E. (double P = two Ps)

### 4 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- How do you *spell* your name?  
 1 How do you say *cup* in German?  
 2 What's the opposite of *closed*?  
 3 What does *tiny* mean?  
 4 How do you pronounce *weight*?  
 5 Could you explain *hello*?  
 6 *Come* and *go* mean the same thing.

- a Very small.  
 b It's what you say when you meet a friend.  
 c A-double N-A. ✓  
 d It's like *wait*.  
 e No, they don't. That's wrong.  
 f I don't know. I only speak French.  
 g Open.

### 5 Complete the dialogues.

- What does *awful* mean? ~ Terrible.  
 1 What's this \_\_\_\_\_ in English? ~ It's a frying pan.  
 2 How do you pronounce *what*? ~ It's \_\_\_\_\_ hot.  
 3 \_\_\_\_\_ you spell *eye*? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E.  
 4 What's the difference \_\_\_\_\_ *bye* and *goodbye*? ~ *Bye* is more informal.  
 5 *Pen* is the same as *pencil*. Is that right? ~ No, that's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 6 What's the \_\_\_\_\_ of *interesting*? ~ Boring.  
 7 What \_\_\_\_\_ *enormous* mean? ~ It means 'very big'.  
 8 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ *EXIT*? ~ You see it on a door. It means you can go out there.

### 6 Write a question using each word.

- pronounce How do you pronounce \_\_\_\_\_ *vegetable*?  
 1 mean \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 2 spell \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 3 say \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 4 explain \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 5 opposite \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 6 called \_\_\_\_\_ ?



TEST YOURSELF

## 5 Classroom activities

### A Teacher instructions

OK, repeat after me.

When you finish, compare your answers with a partner.

I want you to write a **description** of someone you know.

Please **pay attention**.

**Practise** new words every day.

I'd like you to **make up** a story.

Listen to the conversation. Then answer the questions.

Listen, then **follow the instructions** in the book.

If you don't know the meaning, try to **guess**.

And don't forget to **do the homework**.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>repeat</b>	say or do sth again
<b>compare sth (with sth)</b>	think about things or people to see how they are different
<b>description</b>	words that tell what sb or sth is like or what happened <b>describe v</b>
<b>pay attention</b>	look or listen carefully
<b>practise</b>	do sth many times so that you do it well <b>practice n</b>
<b>make sth up</b>	say sth that is not true <b>SYN invent</b>
<b>instructions</b>	words that tell you what you must do or how to do sth. You <b>follow (the) instructions</b> .
<b>guess</b>	give an answer when you do not know if it is right <b>guess n</b> <b>SYN have a guess</b>
<b>forget</b>	If you <b>forget</b> to do sth, you don't remember to do it.
<b>homework</b>	work that a teacher gives you to do at home. <i>I'm doing my homework. (NOT I'm making my homework.)</i>

#### SPOTLIGHT word building

Many nouns in English are formed from verbs, and **-(t)ion** is a common noun ending:

■ **instruct** (verb) → **instruction** (noun)

There is often a spelling change:

■ **describe** → **description**

■ **explain** → **explanation**

■ **educate** → **education**

#### 1 Match 1-8 with a-i.

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| ▶ repeat it <b>c</b>           | <b>a</b> talk to another student about it            |
| 1 make something up            | <b>b</b> listen carefully                            |
| 2 follow the instructions      | <b>c</b> say it again ✓                              |
| 3 pay attention                | <b>d</b> do it a few more times                      |
| 4 I forget.                    | <b>e</b> invent something                            |
| 5 compare with another student | <b>f</b> say what it's like                          |
| 6 describe it                  | <b>g</b> If you don't know, just think of an answer. |
| 7 practise it                  | <b>h</b> I don't remember.                           |
| 8 have a guess                 | <b>i</b> do what it tells you                        |

#### 2 Complete the table. If you don't know the answer, have a guess.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
▶ discuss	<u>discussion</u>	instruct	.....
explain	.....	invent	.....
describe	.....	practise	.....
guess	.....	educate	.....

#### 3 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Were you listening? ~ No, the teacher told me to pay attention.
- 1 Can you say that again, please? ~ Yes, I'll repeat it.
- 2 Did you remember your instructions? ~ No, I'm afraid I forgot to do it.
- 3 Did you know the answer? ~ No, but I had a guess.
- 4 How can I get better? ~ You have to practise more.
- 5 How do you know they're different? ~ We compare them.
- 6 Did you do the homework? ~ No, I forgot it. I'm sorry.
- 7 Did you invent that story? ~ Yes, I made it up.
- 8 Did you write a description? ~ No, I just described it to her.



#### TEST YOURSELF



## B Student activities

Here are **activities** that students do in the classroom:

- read a **text**
- guess the meaning of new words from the **context**
- listen to **dialogues**
- **look up** the meaning of new words in a dictionary
- write a **paragraph** about something
- write a short **essay** on something
- **revise vocabulary** from another lesson
- do written **exercises**
- have a **conversation** about something in English
- have a **discussion** about something

### GLOSSARY

<b>activity</b>	sth you do, perhaps often
<b>text</b>	a short piece of writing that you read
<b>context</b>	the words that come before or after another word or sentence
<b>dialogue</b>	words that people say to each other, often in a book or film
<b>look sth up</b>	try to find information in a book
<b>paragraph</b>	a group of lines of writing
<b>essay</b>	a short piece of writing about sth. It usually has three or more paragraphs.
<b>revise</b>	look at or do sth again
<b>vocabulary</b>	all the words that sb knows or uses
<b>simple</b>	easy to do or understand
<b>exercise</b>	work that you do to learn sth
<b>conversation</b>	a talk between two or more people
<b>discussion</b>	talking about sth seriously <b>discuss</b> v

#### 4 Underline the correct answer.

- I like to revise / look up the vocabulary after I've studied it.
- 1 We read a text / context in class about pop music in the 1970s.
  - 2 I don't need to write a lot – just one context / paragraph.
  - 3 We practised the essay / dialogue in pairs, and the teacher listened to us.
  - 4 The teacher sometimes asks us what contexts / activities we want to do.
  - 5 I have to write a discussion / an essay for homework.
  - 6 You can understand the meaning from the text / context.
  - 7 We had a discussion / conversation in class about politics.
  - 8 Everyone understood because it was quite simple / difficult.

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- We started the exercise in class and finished it for homework.
- 1 We studied the past tense last week and we're going to \_\_\_\_\_ it this week.
  - 2 I didn't understand so I \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ in my dictionary.
  - 3 Yesterday, I had a \_\_\_\_\_ in English with my American friend.
  - 4 Yesterday in class we did three \_\_\_\_\_ on irregular verbs.
  - 5 We listened to a \_\_\_\_\_, then practised it in pairs.
  - 6 Speaking is my favourite \_\_\_\_\_ in class.
  - 7 I'm sure you can understand this text: it's very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 8 We had to write an \_\_\_\_\_ in English about our holidays for homework.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often do you read texts in English? What do you read? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you often use the context to help you understand the meaning of a new word? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 How often do you write an essay in English? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do you often revise vocabulary? Why? / Why not? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What's your favourite activity when you are studying English, inside or outside class? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do you like listening to dialogues? Do you think listening to them helps you to learn vocabulary? \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

# 6 Numbers

## A 1-100

1 one	11 eleven	21 twenty-one	40 forty
2 two	12 twelve	22 twenty-two	50 fifty
3 three	13 thirteen	23 twenty-three	60 sixty
4 four	14 fourteen	24 twenty-four	70 seventy
5 five	15 fifteen	25 twenty-five	80 eighty
6 six	16 sixteen	26 twenty-six	90 ninety
7 seven	17 seventeen	27 twenty-seven	100 a/one hundred
8 eight	18 eighteen	28 twenty-eight	
9 nine	19 nineteen	29 twenty-nine	
10 ten	20 twenty	30 thirty	

### GLOSSARY

<b>count</b>	When you count, you say numbers one after another, e.g. 1-2-3-4-5. I <b>counted</b> the chairs - there were 15. I can <b>count</b> in German.
<b>equal</b>	be the same as sth: 2 + 2 <b>equals</b> (=) 4
<b>minus</b>	less; when you take away: 6 <b>minus</b> (-) 4 = 2
<b>plus</b>	and; added to: 4 <b>plus</b> (+) 4 = 8

### SPOTLIGHT *about and around*

**about/around** = a bit more or a little less than

- How many students are there? ~ **Around/about** 20. (= 18? 19? 20? 21? 22?)
- How much is it? ~ It's **about/around** €100.
- How long is the programme? ~ **About/around** half an hour.

### 1 Write the middle number in words.

▶ 24 <u>twenty-five</u> 26	6 5	7
1 7 9	7 12	14
2 19 21	8 71	73
3 66 68	9 23	25
4 49 51	10 88	90
5 34 36		

### 2 Write the number in words using *about* or *around*.

▶ sixty-eight people <u>about/around seventy people</u>	5 forty-nine dollars
1 ninety-seven euros	6 seventy-eight people
2 nine lessons	7 sixty-eight pounds
3 thirty-one years	8 nineteen chairs
4 forty-one students	

### 3 Do the maths. Write your answers in words.

▶ three plus nine equals <u>twelve</u>	▶ ten minus six equals <u>four</u>
1 twelve and seventeen equals	
2 forty-three plus thirty-four equals	
3 eighty-seven minus twenty-four equals	
4 seventeen plus fourteen equals	
5 sixty minus thirty-six equals	
6 seventeen plus twenty-eight equals	

### 4 Close your book and count from 1 to 20. Then count from 30 to 100 in tens.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Large numbers

101	a/one hundred and one
140	a/one hundred and forty
200	two hundred (NOT <del>two hundreds</del> )
1,000	a/one thousand
1,050	a/one thousand and fifty
1,250	a/one thousand two hundred and fifty

2,000	two thousand (NOT <del>two thousands</del> )
100,000	a/one hundred thousand
1,000,000	a/one million
2,000,000	two million (NOT <del>two millions</del> )
1,000,000,000	a/one billion

In numbers over 999, write a comma (,) between:

- **thousands** and **hundreds**, e.g. 11,000
- **millions** and **thousands**, e.g. 3,000,000

### SPOTLIGHT *hundreds, thousands, millions*

We use **hundreds**, **thousands**, and **millions** (with an 's') when we don't use a specific number.

- We saw **hundreds** of animals. (OR We saw **three hundred** animals.)
- There were **thousands** of people at the concert.
- The new shopping centre will cost **millions**.

### 5 Correct the mistakes in the spoken or written number.

- ▶ one hundred two one hundred and two
- 1 two hundreds
- 2 three hundred forty
- 3 one thousand and five hundred
- 4 two thousand six hundred fifty
- 5 seven thousands
- 6 42500

### 6 Write the next number in words.

- ▶ 243 two hundred and forty-four
- 1 999
- 2 5055
- 3 11,300
- 4 999,999
- 5 2,499
- 6 324,999
- 7 999,999,999
- 8 1,999

### 7 Write the sentences in a more general way. Use **hundreds/thousands/millions** or **about/around**.

- ▶ There are four hundred flats. There are hundreds of flats.
- 1 They said it was three thousand dollars.
- 2 It's forty-eight minutes.
- 3 There are six thousand of them.
- 4 I bought seventeen books.
- 5 We want to grow four hundred trees.
- 6 There are about ten to twelve million people with this problem.



TEST YOURSELF

# 7 Telling the time

## A What's the time?

### What's the time?



It's four o'clock.



It's (a) quarter past four.  
It's four fifteen.



It's half past four.  
It's four thirty.



It's (a) quarter to five.  
It's four forty-five.

### What time is it?



It's five past six.



It's twenty past six.  
It's six twenty.



It's twenty to seven.  
It's six forty.



It's three minutes to seven.  
It's six fifty-seven.

### SPOTLIGHT minutes to or past

We use **minutes to** or **minutes past** with numbers which are not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five.

- eight minutes to two (NOT eight to two)
- three minutes past six (NOT three past six)

### 1 Write the times in words. Don't use past or to.

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| ▶ 3.10 <u>three ten</u> | ▶ 6.15 <u>six fifteen</u> |
| 1 9.15                  | 5 5.50                    |
| 2 10.25                 | 6 7.20                    |
| 3 3.35                  | 7 2.30                    |
| 4 6.45                  | 8 4.40                    |

### 2 Write the times in words. Use past and to.

- |                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ▶ 12.30 <u>half past twelve</u> | ▶ 6.40 <u>twenty to seven</u> |
| 1 7.15                          | 5 8.55                        |
| 2 9.30                          | 6 1.03                        |
| 3 11.35                         | 7 2.45                        |
| 4 3.50                          | 8 4.17                        |

### 3 Look at the timetable and answer the questions. Write your answers in words.

Bath Spa	7.25 ▼	7.45 ▼	8.05 ▼	8.35 ▼	9.05 ▼
Swindon	7.57 ▼	8.17 ▼	8.45 ▼	9.07 ▼	9.42 ▼
Didcot Parkway	8.15 ▼		9.02 ▼		9.58 ▼
Reading	8.35 ▼	8.55 ▼	9.15 ▼	9.45 ▼	10.10 ▼
London Paddington	8.55	9.15	9.35	10.05	10.35

- ▶ When does the first train leave Bath? At seven twenty-five
- 1 When does the first train after 8.00 leave Bath? .....
- 2 You want to be in London before 10.00. What time is the best train from Swindon? .....
- 3 When does the 8.05 train from Bath get to Didcot Parkway? .....
- 4 When does the 8.05 from Bath get to London Paddington? .....
- 5 When does the 9.05 from Bath get to Reading? .....

### 4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What time do banks open and close in your country? .....
- What time do most shops open and close? .....
- What time do most restaurants open and close? .....
- When do most people start and finish school/work? .....
- When do you have lunch? .....
- When do you have dinner? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Exact times and periods of time

9.00 a.m.	nine o'clock in the morning
12.00 p.m.	(at) midday / noon
9.00 a.m. – 1.00 p.m.	all morning
1.58	just before / nearly / almost two
5.00 p.m.	five o'clock in the afternoon
2.00 – 5.30 p.m.	all afternoon (ALSO all day from 9.00 – 5.00)
7.00 p.m.	seven o'clock in the evening
8.02	just after eight
11.30 p.m.	eleven thirty at night
12.00 a.m.	(at) midnight



sun



moon

### 5 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ 8.45 p.m. / 8.45 in the evening **S**
- 1 12.00 at night / midnight
- 2 4.00 a.m. / 4.00 in the afternoon
- 3 6.27 / nearly 6.30
- 4 11.45 p.m. / 11.45 at night
- 5 almost 7 o'clock / just before 7.00
- 6 9 a.m. – 1.00 p.m. / all day

- ▶ 3.00 p.m. / nearly 3.00 **D**
- 7 8.43 / nearly quarter to nine
- 8 2.17 / quarter past two
- 9 12.03 p.m. / just after midday
- 10 2.00 p.m. – 5.30 p.m. / all afternoon
- 11 8.30 / just before 9.00
- 12 3.00 a.m. / three o'clock

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I can meet you in the morning.
- 1 She usually leaves before three.
- 2 Our train was late, and it was eight thirty when we arrived.
- 3 The party ends midnight, and then I'll get a taxi home.
- 4 It starts to get really hot around five o'clock.
- 5 We got there at about five o'clock in the afternoon.
- 6 I usually go to bed around 11 o'clock at night.
- 7 They are very busy, so they'll be at work all day.
- 8 It was just after 7 o'clock when we got home.
- 9 The train leaves at after 8.00, at 8.03.
- 10 She's there all morning, from nine until lunchtime.

### 7 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ I get up just/seven o'clock. before / after
- 1 I'm meeting my friend midday.
- 2 I only drink coffee the morning.
- 3 I work day in a bank.
- 4 I see my friends the evening.
- 5 I watch television evening.
- 6 I go to bed midnight.
- 7 I don't get home before 10.00 night.
- 8 It's three minutes to 8.00 – it's 8.00.
- 9 I always get up before 7.00, at 6.55.



#### TEST YOURSELF

## 8 Days, seasons and dates

## A Days, months and dates

<b>DAYS of the WEEK</b>	Monday Thursday	Tuesday Friday	Wednesday Saturday	Sunday
<b>MONTHS of the YEAR</b>	January May September	February June October	March July November	April August December
<b>SEASONS</b> (in Britain)	spring (March–May) summer (June–August) autumn (September–November) winter (December–February)			
<b>SPECIAL DAYS</b>	Christmas Day (25 December) New Year's Day (1 January) your birthday (the day you were born)			

## SPOTLIGHT capital letters

Days and months have a capital letter.

**Monday** (NOT *monday*); **January** (NOT *january*)



spring



summer



autumn



winter

- 1** Put the words in the correct order. Write the numbers in the boxes.

- 1 Wednesday ☐ Saturday ☐ ► Monday ☒ Friday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Sunday ☐ Thursday ☐
- 2 autumn ☐ spring ☐ winter ☐ summer ☐
- 3 December ☐ March ☐ June ☐ February ☐ November ☐ January ☐  
October ☐ April ☐ July ☐ September ☐ May ☐ August ☐

- 2** Say the days of the week and the months in the correct order. Use the **APP** to help you with pronunciation. Practise saying the words.

- 3** Write the next day, month or season.

- |   | May      | June |    | Sunday    | Monday |
|---|----------|------|----|-----------|--------|
| 1 | Monday   |      | 6  | March     |        |
| 2 | August   |      | 7  | January   |        |
| 3 | spring   |      | 8  | autumn    |        |
| 4 | November |      | 9  | Wednesday |        |
| 5 | Friday   |      | 10 | June      |        |

- 4 ABOUT YOU** Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Which month is your birthday? .....
- 2 Which season do you like **best**? Why? .....
- 3 Which day of the week do you like best? Why? .....
- 4 What do you do on Christmas Day? .....
- 5 What do you do on New Year's Day? .....
- 6 What are two other special days in the year, and when are they? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Ordinal numbers and dates

1 <sup>st</sup>	first	11 <sup>th</sup>	eleventh	21 <sup>st</sup>	twenty-first
2 <sup>nd</sup>	second	12 <sup>th</sup>	twelfth	22 <sup>nd</sup>	twenty-second
3 <sup>rd</sup>	third	13 <sup>th</sup>	thirteenth	23 <sup>rd</sup>	twenty-third
4 <sup>th</sup>	fourth	14 <sup>th</sup>	fourteenth	30 <sup>th</sup>	thirtieth
5 <sup>th</sup>	fifth	15 <sup>th</sup>	fifteenth	31 <sup>st</sup>	thirty-first
6 <sup>th</sup>	sixth	16 <sup>th</sup>	sixteenth		
7 <sup>th</sup>	seventh	17 <sup>th</sup>	seventeenth		
8 <sup>th</sup>	eighth	18 <sup>th</sup>	eighteenth		
9 <sup>th</sup>	ninth	19 <sup>th</sup>	nineteenth		
10 <sup>th</sup>	tenth	20 <sup>th</sup>	twentieth		

### SPOTLIGHT saying and writing dates and years

We can write the date like this:

■ 10 March OR 10<sup>th</sup> March OR March 10 OR 3.10.07 OR 3/10/07

We say the date like this:

■ What's the date today? ~ It's March the tenth.  
~ It's the tenth of March.

Say the year like this:

■ 1995 nineteen ninety-five ■ 2006 two thousand and six  
■ 2020 twenty twenty OR two thousand and twenty

### 5 Complete the words.

► ni n th

1 th r d

2 twent h eth

3 fi f th

4 f ir st

5 eig ht

6 si xt eenth

7 fo ur teenth

8 th ir teenth

9 s ec ond

### 6 Answer the questions below, then practise saying the dates you wrote.

CALENDAR													
MARCH							APRIL						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S
				1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	29	30	31				

What's ...

► the first Saturday in March? March the third / the third of March

1 the second Tuesday in April? \_\_\_\_\_

2 the first Sunday in March? \_\_\_\_\_

3 the third Tuesday in April? \_\_\_\_\_

4 the third Wednesday in March? \_\_\_\_\_

5 the second Wednesday in April? \_\_\_\_\_

6 the first Friday in April? \_\_\_\_\_

7 the fifth Saturday in March? \_\_\_\_\_

8 the fourth Monday in April? \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Write the dates/years as we say them.

► 6.9 the sixth of September

1 3.2 \_\_\_\_\_

2 4.7 \_\_\_\_\_

3 10.12 \_\_\_\_\_

4 12.8 \_\_\_\_\_

5 15.1 \_\_\_\_\_

6 2022 \_\_\_\_\_

7 21.5 \_\_\_\_\_

8 30.11 \_\_\_\_\_

9 22.4 \_\_\_\_\_

10 2015 \_\_\_\_\_

11 today's date \_\_\_\_\_

12 the date next Tuesday \_\_\_\_\_



TEST YOURSELF

## 9 Time words and phrases

### A The past, the present and the future

Look at the diary and read the sentences below. It's midday on Thursday, 11 April.

APRIL		
MON 1 Moscow	MON 8 Jonah & Charlotte 7.30	MON 15 London
TUES 2	TUES 9 pay phone bill	TUES 16 dinner with Scott 8.00
WED 3	WED 10 lunch with Ella 1.00 meet Logan 7.45	WED 17
THUR 4	THUR 11 <b>TODAY</b> cinema 7.15	THUR 18 Dr Holton 10.45
FRI 5 Bath	FRI 12 meeting 9.00-12.00 Wheeler's café 7.30	FRI 19 theatre 8.00
SAT 6	SAT 13 stay at Will's	SAT 20 Callum's birthday
SUN 7	SUN 14	SUN 21 to Mum and Dad's for lunch

I was in Moscow **last week**.  
I saw Jonah and Charlotte three days **ago**.  
I had lunch with Ella **yesterday**.  
I went out with Logan **last night**.  
I'm going to the cinema **this evening**.

I have a meeting **tomorrow morning**.  
I'm staying at Will's **this weekend**.  
I'm going to London for three days **next week**.  
I have a doctor's **appointment next Thursday**.  
I'm seeing my parents in ten days.

#### GLOSSARY

**diary** a book where you write what you're going to do  
**last week** (the past) = 1-7 April  
**this week** (the present) = 8-14 April  
**next week** (the future) = 15-21 April  
**ago** before now; in the past

**last night** (NOT *yesterday night*)  
**yesterday evening** (NOT *last evening*)  
**appointment** a meeting at a fixed time, often with one person, for work or with a doctor/dentist, etc.  
**in ten days, etc.** ten days, etc. from now

#### 1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ I was in Moscow last week. T
- 1 I got back from Moscow two days ago. ....
- 2 I saw Jonah and Charlotte this week. ....
- 3 I paid the phone bill three days ago. ....
- 4 I met Logan yesterday. ....
- 5 I was in London last week. ....
- 6 I'm going to the cinema this afternoon. ....
- 7 I'm going out tomorrow evening. ....
- 8 I'm seeing Scott in four days. ....
- 9 I'm seeing the doctor in a week. ....
- 10 I'm going to the theatre next Friday. ....

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We saw them at the cinema yesterday evening.
- 1 She saw Paul about three days .....
- 2 I won't forget Pedro's birthday - I wrote it in my .....
- 3 She called me at 10 o'clock last .....
- 4 He wants to come ..... week, not next week.
- 5 She can't come tomorrow morning. She's got a dentist's .....
- 6 I'm going to Italy ..... week.

#### 3 Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.

- ▶ I had lunch with Ella ..... a week ago.
- 1 ..... on Thursday evening.
- 2 ..... five days ago.
- 3 ..... last weekend.
- 4 ..... tomorrow morning.
- 5 ..... in three days.
- 6 ..... this weekend.



#### TEST YOURSELF



## B Time words and tenses

There are some words about time in English that we often use with particular tenses.

<b>ever</b>	Do you <b>ever</b> swim in the winter? (present) Have you <b>ever</b> been to Moscow? (present perfect)
<b>while</b>	He often phones <b>while</b> I'm eating. (present continuous) They arrived <b>while</b> I was watching TV. (past continuous)
<b>already</b>	I was <b>already</b> there when they arrived. (past) Do you want lunch? ~ No thanks. I've <b>already</b> eaten. (present perfect)
<b>recently</b>	I went to the dentist <b>recently</b> . (past) I haven't seen Tom <b>recently</b> . (present perfect)
<b>yet</b>	I haven't done my homework <b>yet</b> . (present perfect) Have you seen Almodovar's new film <b>yet</b> ? (present perfect)
<b>just</b>	Where are the girls? ~ They've <b>just</b> left. (present perfect)
<b>for</b>	I've been in this job <b>for</b> three years. (present perfect)
<b>since</b>	We've lived here <b>since</b> we got married. (present perfect)

### GLOSSARY

<b>ever</b>	at any time (any time now with the present tense, or any time before now with the present perfect)
<b>while</b>	during the time that (sth else is/was happening)
<b>already</b>	before now or before then (but we don't know exactly when). In negative sentences, we use <b>yet</b> , not <b>already</b> .
<b>recently</b>	not long ago (with the past simple), or in a short period of time before now (with the present perfect)
<b>yet</b>	used for talking about sth that hasn't happened, but you think it will
<b>just</b>	a very short time before now

### SPOTLIGHT *for and since*

We use **for** with a period of time.  
 ■ **for** two weeks, six months, etc.  
 We use **since** with a point in time in the past:  
 ■ **since** 2003, **since** last year, **since** I came to England, etc.  
 We often use these words with the present perfect.  
 ■ I've been at university **for** two years.  
 ■ I've known Joe **since** 2018.

#### 4 Complete the sentence with **for** or **since**.

I've known her ...

- **for** a year  
 1 ..... 2010  
 2 ..... a long time  
 3 ..... about three months

- **since** last year.  
 4 ..... a couple of years  
 5 ..... I got married  
 6 ..... I was at university

#### 5 Circle the correct answer.

► My girlfriend wants to go to Ibiza, but I've **already** / **yet** been there.

- 1 Paolo is in the classroom. I've **just** / **yet** seen him.  
 2 Lily arrived **while** / **ever** we were having lunch.  
 3 Do you **just** / **ever** go to concerts?  
 4 We haven't seen them **since** / **for** yesterday.  
 5 I haven't been to Turkey **recently** / **already**.  
 6 I want to work abroad, but I haven't found a job **already** / **yet**.  
 7 Have you **ever** / **yet** driven a bus?  
 8 I went to Spain **just** / **recently**. I stayed in Seville **since** / **for** two weeks.

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

- He's been in that flat **for** ..... three months.  
 1 Have you finished your English course ..... ? ~ No, I've got another two weeks.  
 2 I was ..... awake when Mum came into my bedroom this morning. I was reading.  
 3 Where's Sophia? ~ She has ..... gone out. She was here a minute ago.  
 4 I haven't been to the dentist's ..... I must make an appointment.  
 5 Do you ..... go to that café when you're in town?  
 6 I haven't had lunch ..... I'm really hungry.  
 7 George tried to phone me ..... I was in the meeting.  
 8 We haven't seen Joe ..... he left school.

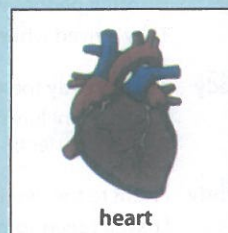
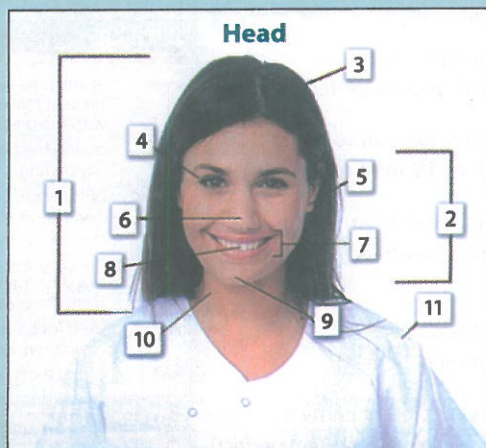
#### 7 Translate the words in bold on this page into your own language.



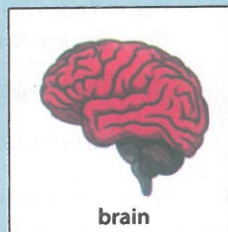
TEST YOURSELF

# 10 Parts of the body

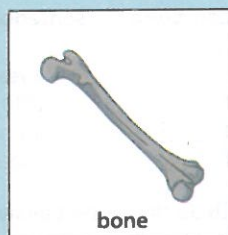
- 1 head
- 2 face
- 3 hair
- 4 eye
- 5 ear
- 6 nose
- 7 mouth
- 8 tooth  
(pl teeth)
- 9 chin
- 10 neck
- 11 shoulder



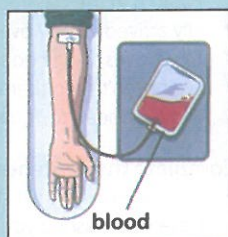
heart



brain

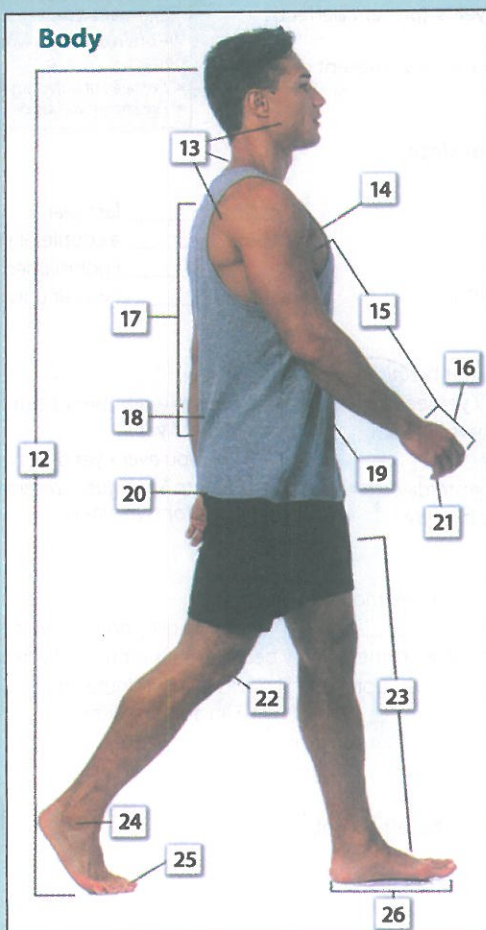


bone



blood

- 12 body
- 13 skin
- 14 chest
- 15 arm
- 16 hand
- 17 back
- 18 waist
- 19 stomach
- 20 bottom
- 21 finger
- 22 knee
- 23 leg
- 24 ankle
- 25 toe
- 26 foot  
(pl feet)



## GLOSSARY

- body** the total physical form of a person or an animal
- hair** [U] *My hair is long.*  
(*My hairs are long.*)
- skin** [U] It covers the outside of a person or an animal's body.
- blood** [U] It is pronounced like *sun*.



1 Tick (✓) the words which are correct. Put a cross (X) by the words which are wrong.

I've got two ...

eyes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ears	<input type="checkbox"/>	backs	<input type="checkbox"/>	ankles	<input type="checkbox"/>
necks	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	waists	<input type="checkbox"/>	legs	<input type="checkbox"/>	heads	<input type="checkbox"/>
noses	<input type="checkbox"/>	knees	<input type="checkbox"/>	hands	<input type="checkbox"/>	arms	<input type="checkbox"/>
feet	<input type="checkbox"/>	shoulders	<input type="checkbox"/>	mouths	<input type="checkbox"/>	teeth	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Which word is different? Circle it.

▶ finger	arm	<u>waist</u>	hand	4 nose	bottom	chin	hair
1 foot	shoulder	toe	ankle	5 shoulder	chest	neck	blood
2 arm	hand	shoulder	stomach	6 teeth	legs	knees	ankle
3 neck	ears	nose	eyes	7 bone	brain	heart	finger

3 Complete the words.

▶ h <u>a</u> i r	5 f <u>o</u> e	9 bl <u>o</u> d
1 s <u>h</u> o u l d e r	6 h <u>a</u> d	10 br <u>o</u> o t
2 n <u>e</u> e	7 t e <u>e</u> h	11 bo <u>o</u> m
3 b <u>o</u> o k	8 ch <u>a</u> t	12 st <u>o</u> m a c h
4 c <u>h</u> e s t		

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined vowels the same or different? Write S or D, and use the to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ chest	leg	<u>S</u>	▶ arm	ankle	<u>D</u>
1 bone	toe	.....	6 blood	foot	.....
2 hand	back	.....	7 foot	took	.....
3 head	heart	.....	8 stomach	bottom	.....
4 knee	feet	.....	9 shoulder	mouth	.....
5 tooth	soon	.....	10 stomach	blood	.....

5 Which part of the body comes between the other two parts?

▶ eyes	<u>nose</u>	mouth	4 chest	.....	head
1 hand	.....	shoulder	5 hair	.....	nose
2 waist	.....	leg	6 bottom	.....	ankle
3 ankle	.....	toes			

6 Complete the sentences with a part of the body.

- ▶ I put the soap in my hand.
- 1 I can't see – there's something in my .....
- 2 People have five ..... at the end of each foot.
- 3 I have a problem with the middle ..... of my left hand.
- 4 You sit on your .....
- 5 I usually wash my ..... every two or three days.
- 6 I had a problem with my ..... so I went to the dentist.
- 7 My ..... is about 80 cm. It could be about 77 cm if I eat less.
- 8 We had a lot of sun and now the ..... on my hands is a bit red, and they feel hot.
- 9 Can you stand on one .....?
- 10 I cut my finger with a knife, and there was a lot of .....
- 11 When my aunt was in hospital, she nearly died: her ..... stopped for several minutes.
- 12 If you want to make good decisions, you have to use your .....
- 13 My brother broke a ..... in one of his fingers.
- 14 Your skin covers the whole of your .....



TEST YOURSELF

# 11 Describing people

## A Height and weight

How tall is she? She's ...

Is he thin or fat? He's ...

How much does he weigh?



tall



average height



short



slim



average weight



overweight

### GLOSSARY

<b>height</b>	(sounds like <i>white</i> ) how tall sb is: <i>She's 175 cm tall.</i> OR <i>She's 175 cm in height. cm = centimetres</i>
<b>weigh</b>	<i>He weighs 60 kg.</i> OR <i>He's 60 kg in weight. kg = kilos</i>
<b>slim</b>	thin, but <i>slim</i> is more positive
<b>weight</b>	(sounds the same as <i>wait</i> ) describes how heavy sb or sth is
<b>put on weight</b>	become heavier/fatter OPP <b>lose weight</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *quite*

**Quite** is a very common word, and it means 'not very'.

- *She's quite tall.* (= not very tall but more than average height)
- *He plays the piano quite well.* (= not very well but better than OK)

### 1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If you are *overweight*, you aren't slim. T
- 1 *Average height* means not fat and not slim. ....
- 2 *Quite thin* and *very thin* are the same. ....
- 3 *Put on weight* and *lose weight* are opposites. ....
- 4 If someone is *fat*, they are *overweight*. ....
- 5 The answer to *How much does he weigh?* is *200 cm*. ....
- 6 *How tall are you?* is a correct question. ....
- 7 *Average weight* means quite slim. ....
- 8 *Thin* and *slim* mean the same, but *thin* is more positive. ....
- 9 If you *lose weight*, you get thinner. ....
- 10 *Average height* and *average weight* are the same. ....

### 2 Complete the dialogues. Don't use the words in *italics* in your answer.

- ▶ Is he quite short? ~ No, he's very *tall*.
- 1 She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's *average*.
- 2 Are they quite *thin*? ~ Yes, they're both very .....
- 3 Is he *overweight*? ~ Yes, he's getting a bit .....
- 4 Is she very slim? ~ No, but she's ..... slim.
- 5 Max is looking a bit fat. ~ I know. He has ..... 10 kilos.
- 6 Is he about average weight? ~ I think so. He ..... 75 kg.
- 7 Scarlet isn't very tall, is she? ~ No, actually she's quite .....
- 8 Ben is looking very slim. ~ Yes, he has ..... a lot of weight.
- 9 This box is very heavy. ~ Is it? How ..... does it weigh?
- 10 Is Willie very tall? ~ No, but he's ..... tall.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Features



1 a good-looking man with dark curly hair and a beard



2 a pretty teenager with long blonde hair and a lovely smile



3 a very attractive woman with straight fair hair



4 a middle-aged man with short grey hair

### GLOSSARY

<b>feature(s)</b>	an important part of sth, e.g. <i>your face, your eyes</i>
<b>teenager</b>	a person between the ages of 13 and 19 <i>teenage adj</i>
<b>lovely</b>	beautiful or very nice: <i>a lovely smile/dress</i>
<b>smile</b>	(see picture 2) <b>Smile</b> is also a verb: <i>He smiled at me.</i>
<b>middle-aged</b>	about 45 to 60 years old

### SPOTLIGHT *good-looking, beautiful, etc.*

For a woman, we can say **beautiful** or **(very) good-looking/ attractive**. For a man, we usually say **good-looking** or **handsome**. For girls especially, we can say **beautiful**, but we often use **pretty**.

### 3 Look at the pictures. True or false? Write T or F. If false, correct the mistake.

- ▶ The girl isn't a teenager. F - She is a teenager.
- 1 She's got a lovely smile. ....
- 2 She's got dark hair. ....
- 3 It's also quite short. ....
- 4 The young man isn't handsome. ....
- 5 He's got dark hair. ....
- 6 The woman has got blonde hair. ....
- 7 Her hair is straight. ....
- 8 She's beautiful. ....
- 9 The other man is old. ....
- 10 His hair is dark. ....

### 4 Complete the words in the texts.

**My sister (15):** ▶ is a teenager. She's very (1) pr , with (2) d brown hair, and she has a lovely (3) sm , which is one of her best (4) fe .

**My brother (18):** is also a (5) te . He's very (6) g -l and he knows it. He's got short (7) st hair, and no (8) be .

**My father (52):** is (9) m -a now. I think he's still a (10) ha man, but his hair is quite (11) gr .

**My mother (50):** has short (12) bl hair. She was (13) be when she was young and she is still very (14) at .

**Me (20):** I am no longer a (15) t boy. I'm different from my sister because I've got (16) f hair, and different from my brother because my hair is (17) cu . And I'm also different from them because, unfortunately, I'm not very (18) g .

### 5 ABOUT YOU Write two or three sentences describing yourself using some of the vocabulary from this page. Then look at the pictures again. Do you think the four people are beautiful/handsome/attractive? If possible, talk to someone else about them.



#### TEST YOURSELF



# 12 Physical actions

## A Using your body



sit down  
pt sat down



stand up  
pt stood up



walk



run  
pt ran



fall over  
pt fell over



ride  
pt rode



climb



jump



lie down  
pt lay



dance



get on  
pt got on



get off  
pt got off

### SPOTLIGHT Irregular verbs

Many of the verbs above are **irregular**: the past simple is not formed by adding *-ed*. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 198. See also Unit 39.

### 1 Write the present form of the verbs.

- |             |             |            |       |
|-------------|-------------|------------|-------|
| ▶ walked    | <u>walk</u> | 4 stood up | _____ |
| 1 lay down  | _____       | 5 sat down | _____ |
| 2 fell over | _____       | 6 got on   | _____ |
| 3 rode      | _____       | 7 ran      | _____ |

### 2 Complete these sentences with verbs from above.

- ▶ When you go to bed, you do this. lie down
- 1 When you hear music and you're happy, you do this. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 When you're tired, you do this. \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 When you don't see something on the floor in front of you, you could do this. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 When you go on a bike, you do this. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 When you're waiting at the bus stop and the bus arrives, you do this. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6–9.

- ▶ I sat down at my desk and worked for two hours.
- 1 The children have to \_\_\_\_\_ when the teacher comes into the classroom.
- 2 I often \_\_\_\_\_ to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on foot.
- 3 I want to \_\_\_\_\_ Mount Kilimanjaro next year.
- 4 Do you often \_\_\_\_\_ when you go to clubs?
- 5 The doctor asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ on the bed.
- 6 The boys \_\_\_\_\_ into the swimming pool.
- 7 She \_\_\_\_\_ her bike to school this morning.
- 8 I was late, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to the bus stop, but I \_\_\_\_\_ over and hurt my leg.
- 9 She \_\_\_\_\_ the bus, went into the station and got \_\_\_\_\_ a train.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Using your hands



push



pull



carry



hold *pt* held



pick sth up



put sth down *pt* put



break *pt* broke



give *pt* gave



close/shut *pt* shut  
OPP open



drop



throw *pt* threw



catch *pt* caught

### 4 Cover the pictures and underline the correct answers.

- ▶ You can drop a glass / a house.
- 1 You can open a door / a light.
- 2 You can catch a car / a ball.
- 3 You can throw a book / a house.

- 4 You can push the sky / a person.
- 5 You can hold a dictionary / a country.
- 6 You can break some juice / a pencil.
- 7 You can pick up a car / a bicycle.

### 5 Do you need two hands to do these things? Or can you do them with one hand?

- ▶ shut a dictionary 1
- ▶ give someone five dictionaries 2

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1 pick up a cup  | drop a cup     |
| 2 pick up a TV   | turn on a TV   |
| 3 break a bottle | open a bottle  |
| 4 pull a person  | carry a person |

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| 5 throw a ball   | catch a ball  |
| 6 drop a ruler   | break a ruler |
| 7 carry a door   | close a door  |
| 8 pick up a baby | hold a baby   |

### 6 Complete the sentences with suitable verbs from above.

- ▶ I opened the garage door and then three of us pushed the car out.
- 1 It was cold, so he \_\_\_\_\_ the window.
- 2 She \_\_\_\_\_ the cat and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ in its bed.
- 3 I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ your best glass and it broke. I'm really sorry.
- 4 Four of us \_\_\_\_\_ the boat out of the sea and then \_\_\_\_\_ it along the beach.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ the baby to Mum and she \_\_\_\_\_ it in her arms.
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ the ball to my brother but he dropped it on the floor.
- 7 The box is very heavy. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it to the car.



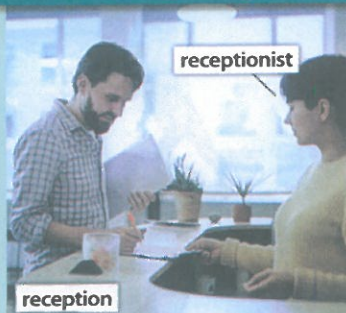
#### TEST YOURSELF

# 13 Personal information

## A Facts

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The **receptionist** needs some **information**.

- Receptionist** What's your family name? (OR What's your surname?)  
**Sandro** Bertoli.  
**Receptionist** And your first name?  
**Sandro** Sandro.  
**Receptionist** OK, Sandro. What's your address and postcode?  
**Sandro** 45 Alfred Road, CB2 4TX.  
**Receptionist** So, Sandro, where are you from? (OR Where do you come from?)  
**Sandro** Italy.  
**Receptionist** Whereabouts in Italy? (OR Where in Italy exactly?)  
**Sandro** Pisa.  
**Receptionist** What do you do in Pisa? (OR What's your job?)  
**Sandro** I'm a doctor.  
**Receptionist** And are you married or single?  
**Sandro** I'm married. My wife is German.  
**Receptionist** And how old are you?  
**Sandro** I'm 34.



### SPOTLIGHT information

**Information** [U] means facts about people or things, e.g. name, address, etc. **Information** is uncountable. Don't say *an information* OR *informations*.  
**Personal information** is information about one person.

### 1 In each sentence, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it.

- ▶ Are married you?  
 1 I need some information personal.      3 Do what you do?      5 How old you are?  
 2 Where do come from you?      4 What your postcode is?      6 Where the receptionist is from?

### 2 Write the questions with different words but with the same meaning.

- ▶ What's your family name?      What's your surname ?  
 1 Where are you from?      Where do ..... ?  
 2 Whereabouts in Poland?      Where in Poland ..... ?  
 3 What's your job?      What do ..... ?  
 4 Where do you live?      What's your ..... ?  
 5 What's your age?      How ..... ?

### 3 Complete the questions in the table.

QUESTIONS	ANSWERS	ABOUT YOU
▶ What's your <u>name</u> ?	<u>Kovács.</u>	
1 And your ..... name?	Zsuzsa.	
2 Where are you ..... ?	Hungary.	
3 ..... in Hungary?	The capital, Budapest.	
4 ..... your address?	Tarcali utca 27.	
5 And the ..... ?	1113.	
6 And what ..... you do?	I'm an engineer.	
7 Are you ..... ?	No, I'm single.	
8 How ..... are you?	I'm 27.	

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in the table, or ask another student.





## B Talking about your English course

Sandro has been in Cambridge now for two months and is talking to the receptionist again.

- Receptionist** So, Sandro. What's your English **level** now?  
**Sandro** I'm intermediate.  
**Receptionist** Yes, you **communicate** very well.  
**Sandro** Thank you, but I still need to **improve**.  
**Receptionist** Why's that?  
**Sandro** Because I want to work **abroad** and **help** people in other countries. For that, my English has to be **perfect**.  
**Receptionist** So **how long** are you **planning** to stay here?  
**Sandro** I don't know.  
**Receptionist** But you're enjoying your **course**?  
**Sandro** Yes, it's **great**. I've made a lot of **progress**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>level</b>	how high sth is, e.g. <i>an elementary/intermediate/advanced level of English</i>
<b>communicate (with sb)</b>	be able to say what you mean, or have a conversation with other people
<b>improve</b>	become better <b>improvement</b> <i>n</i>
<b>abroad</b>	in another country
<b>help</b>	do sth good for sb so their life is easier
<b>perfect</b>	so good it can't be better
<b>how long?</b>	how much time? (NOT <i>how long time?</i> )
<b>plan (to do) sth</b>	decide what you are going to do and how you are going to do it
<b>course</b>	a number of lessons
<b>great</b>	very good or nice <b>SYNS fantastic, wonderful</b>
<b>progress</b>	improvement

### 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you **help** someone, you make their life easier. T  
 1 **Perfect** means the same as good. .....  
 2 **Plan to do something** is the same as decide what to do and how to do it. .....  
 3 **Improve** means to make something different. .....  
 4 **Abroad** means in another country. .....  
 5 **A language course** means the same as *a language level*. .....  
 6 If you **communicate** something, you are able to say what you mean. .....  
 7 **How long?** means the same as *how far?* .....  
 8 **Great** means the same as *fantastic*. .....

### 6 Agree with the first speaker, but replace the words in *italics* with different words.

- The course is *really good*. ~ Yes, it's *great*.  
 1 She's *getting better*. ~ Yes, she's .....  
 2 Her English is *very good* now. ~ Yes, it's at a high .....  
 3 She can *express ideas* very well. ~ Yes, she .....  
 4 She wants to work *in another country*. ~ Yes, she wants to go and work .....  
 5 They're *thinking about* going to Spain. ~ Yes, they're ..... to go there.  
 6 I thought it was *fantastic*. ~ Yes, it was .....  
 7 He's really *improving*. ~ Yes, he's making a lot of .....  
 8 He wants to *make people's lives better*. ~ Yes, he wants to .....

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

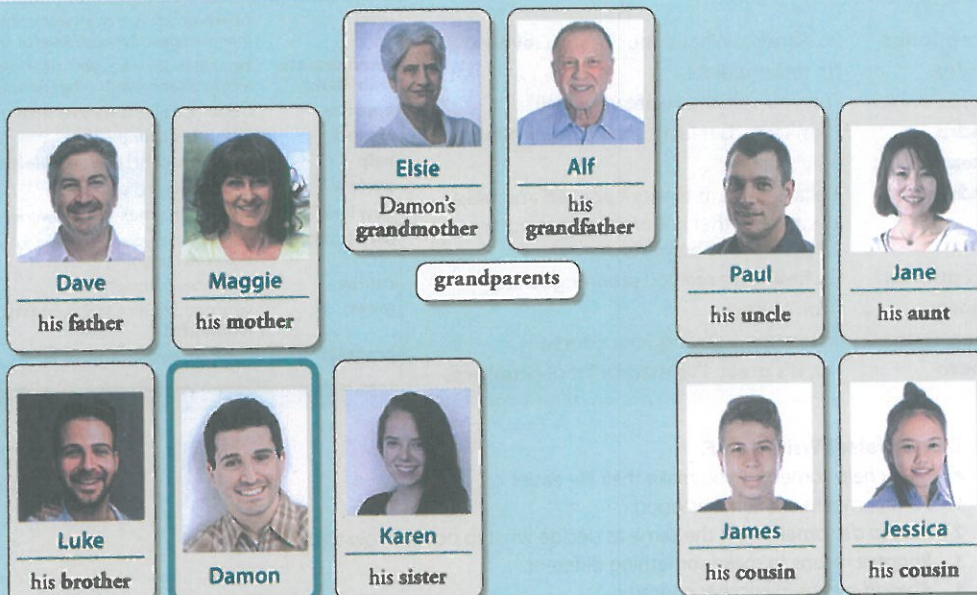
- 1 What's your English level? .....  
 2 How well do you communicate in English? .....  
 3 Do you want or need to improve? .....  
 4 Are you making progress? .....  
 5 Are you planning to go to an English-speaking country? If so, where? .....  
 6 Would you like to work abroad? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 14 Family

## A Damon's family tree



All the people here are Damon's **relatives**.  
 Luke is Dave and Maggie's **son**.  
 Karen is Dave and Maggie's **daughter**.  
 Maggie is Dave's **wife**.  
 Dave is Maggie's **husband**.  
 Elsie and Alf are Maggie's **parents**.

Dave is Paul's **brother-in-law**.  
 Jane is Maggie's **sister-in-law**.  
 James is Maggie's **nephew**.  
 Karen is Paul's **niece**.  
 Luke is Elsie's **grandson**.  
 Jessica is Elsie's **granddaughter**.

### 1 Complete the sentences about Damon's family.

- ▶ Paul is Elsie and Alf's son.
- 1 Maggie is Elsie's .....
- 2 Luke is Paul's .....
- 3 Jessica is Maggie's .....
- 4 Maggie is Jane's .....
- 5 Karen is Jessica's .....
- 6 Elsie and Alf are Damon's .....
- 7 Paul is Jane's .....
- 8 Elsie is Jessica's .....
- 9 Paul is Luke's .....
- 10 Maggie is Jessica's .....
- 11 James, Dave and Alf are Damon's .....

### 2 Complete the table.

MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE
▶ father	<u>mother</u>	brother-in-law	.....
brother	.....	grandfather	.....
husband	.....	grandson	.....
nephew	.....	cousin	.....
relative	.....	parent	.....
son	.....	uncle	.....

### 3 ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and *brother, sister, uncle, etc.*



TEST YOURSELF



## B Family history



My parents **got married** 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother Luke **was born**. Then I was born a year after that. I've also **got** a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so **there are five of us** in my family. Luke has got a **girlfriend**, Amy, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with Mum and Dad. We **spend a lot of time together**.



### GLOSSARY

<b>get married</b>	become husband or wife with sb <b>OPP get divorced</b> stop being husband or wife with sb
<b>be born</b>	start your life
<b>have got</b>	have
<b>there are five of us</b>	(NOT <i>We are five.</i> )
<b>girlfriend</b>	a girl or woman who sb has a romantic relationship with <b>ALSO boyfriend</b>
<b>mum inf</b>	mother
<b>dad inf</b>	father
<b>spend time with sb together</b>	be with sb and do things with them with each other: <i>My family all live together in the same house.</i>

### SPOTLIGHT comparatives and superlatives

- *Damon is 22 (years old).* (NOT *Damon is 22 years.*)
- *His brother is older than him.* He's 23.
- *His sister is younger than him.* She's 20.
- *Luke is the oldest in the family.*
- *Karen is the youngest in the family.*

#### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ Damon is Luke's older brother. F
- 1 Damon's parents are divorced. ....
- 2 Damon was born after Luke. ....
- 3 Luke is younger than Karen. ....
- 4 Luke and Amy live together. ....
- 5 Luke's mum has three children. ....

- 6 Damon is Amy's boyfriend. ....
- 7 There are four in Damon's family. ....
- 8 Karen is the youngest in the family. ....
- 9 Damon and Karen are often together. ....
- 10 Luke is Damon's dad. ....

#### 5 Write the words in the correct order.

- ▶ his / divorced / are / parents
- 1 born / I / 2001 / in / was
- 2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a
- 3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is
- 4 in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us
- 5 the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am
- 6 brother / older / younger / an / 've got / I / a / and / sister

His parents are divorced.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.


- 1 How many people are there in your family? .....
- 2 When were you born? .....
- 3 Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you? .....
- 4 In your family, who do spend a lot of time with? .....
- 5 Do you all live together? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 15 Personality

## A What's he/she like?

Word	Example	Meaning
friendly	The students in my class are all really <b>friendly</b> . It's great.	happy to meet and talk to other people OPP <b>unfriendly</b>
kind	He visited me in hospital, which was really <b>kind</b> .	friendly and good to other people
nice	I met Charlie on holiday, and he's a really <b>nice</b> guy.	kind and friendly (a very common word in spoken English)
fun	I love Caitlin; she's <b>great fun</b> .	sb or sth that makes you happy <b>Good/great fun</b> is common.
funny	Josh makes me <b>laugh</b> – he's a really <b>funny</b> man.	making you <b>laugh</b> 
relaxed	I felt very <b>relaxed</b> after my holiday.	calm and not worried
clever	Tom is really <b>clever</b> – the best student in our class.	quick at learning and understanding things SYN <b>intelligent</b> OPP <b>stupid</b>
patient	My boyfriend is often late, but I'm very <b>patient</b> .	able to stay calm and not get angry when you are waiting
strange	He's a <b>strange</b> man – I never know what he's thinking.	unusual or surprising

### SPOTLIGHT What's he/she/it like?

We use this question to find out more about somebody/something.

- **What's Jack like?** ~ He's very nice. (**NOT** He's like very nice.)
- **What was the teacher like?** ~ She was **good fun**.

### 1 Complete the words.

- ▶ f\_u\_n                      3 c\_l\_\_\_\_r                      6 p\_\_\_\_t\_\_\_\_t  
1 n\_\_\_\_e                      4 s\_t\_\_\_\_e                      7 l\_a\_\_\_\_h  
2 f\_\_\_\_y                      5 f\_\_\_\_y                      8 r\_\_\_\_l\_\_\_\_x\_\_\_\_d

### 2 Cover the table, then answer the questions.

What's ...

- ▶ a synonym for nice? friendly  
1 the opposite of friendly? \_\_\_\_\_  
2 a synonym for clever? \_\_\_\_\_  
3 the opposite of clever? \_\_\_\_\_

What do you call someone who ...

- 4 is able to learn quickly? \_\_\_\_\_  
5 makes you laugh? \_\_\_\_\_  
6 is able to wait for things? \_\_\_\_\_  
7 is calm and doesn't worry? \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the conversations.

- 1 What's \_\_\_\_\_ Alex like? ~ Oh, he's very funny. We \_\_\_\_\_ a lot when we're together.  
2 What are Ana's parents \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Well, her mother's great \_\_\_\_\_. I like her very much.  
But I never know what to say to her father – he's very \_\_\_\_\_.  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ was your grandmother like? ~ She was very \_\_\_\_\_: she always helped everyone.  
And she was \_\_\_\_\_ too: she went to university.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write the names of people you know who are:

- kind \_\_\_\_\_ very friendly \_\_\_\_\_ patient with you \_\_\_\_\_  
good fun \_\_\_\_\_ intelligent \_\_\_\_\_ strange \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF



## B We like each other



Gemma



Sophie

### WHY WE LIKE

## each other

Gemma: I met Sophie at university. I was **on my own** in the café, and she came and talked to me. She's like that. What's interesting is that we're **completely different**. She has a very **active social life** and meets lots of new people. I'm very **quiet** and **serious**. But it didn't **matter**. We became friends and **shared a flat** for two years. I'm **tidy** and did most of the housework. Sophie's quite **lazy**, but she is a great cook and a **really** nice person.

### GLOSSARY

<b>each other</b>	She likes me and I like her. = We like <b>each other</b> .
<b>on my own</b>	not with other people <b>SYN alone</b>
<b>completely different</b>	totally different; different in every way
<b>active</b>	busy and able to do a lot of things
<b>social life</b>	going out with friends
<b>quiet</b>	Somebody who is <b>quiet</b> doesn't say very much.
<b>serious</b>	A <b>serious</b> person thinks a lot and doesn't laugh much.
<b>matter</b>	be important; <b>it doesn't matter</b> = it's not important
<b>share a flat</b>	live in the same flat as another person
<b>tidy</b>	A <b>tidy</b> person likes everything to be in the right place. <b>OPP untidy</b>
<b>lazy</b>	A <b>lazy</b> person doesn't like working. <b>OPP hard-working</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *really*

**Really** is important in spoken English. It means 'very', and you can use it before most adjectives.

■ I'm in a **really** nice class. ■ She was **really** lazy.

- 5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sound the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ social / doesn't

**D**

1 other / own

2 hardworking / doesn't

3 alone / social

4 completely / other

5 completely / serious

- 6 Read the text again. True or false? Write **T** or **F**.

▶ Sophie likes cooking

1 Gemma was alone when she met Sophie.

2 Gemma and Sophie are similar.

3 Gemma doesn't say very much.

4 They lived together at university.

5 Gemma is really lazy.

6 Sophie goes out a lot.

7 Gemma's untidy.

8 It was a problem that they were completely different.

- 7 Complete the sentences.

▶ I never put things away. I'm very untidy.

1 When we met, I was on my ..... and wanted someone to talk to.

2 I've always had an active social ..... I go out most nights.

3 We wanted to ..... a flat together.

4 Do you want me to help? ~ No, it doesn't

5 My sister and I are ..... different.

6 We've always liked each .....

- 8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

### Questionnaire

What are you like?

1 Are you tidy or untidy? .....

2 Are you hard-working or a bit lazy? .....

3 Are you quiet? .....

4 Are you serious? .....

5 Do you have an active social life? .....

6 Do you like being on your own? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 16 Relationships

## A Romantic relationships

Max is my **partner**, and we have a very good **relationship**. We've **been together** for about two years. I started to **go out with** him after I came to London. We met at my **ex-boyfriend's** house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to **get to know** each other. Now Max wants us to **get married** and **have a baby**, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married **couples** who have **separated** and are now **divorced**. I don't want that to happen to us.



### GLOSSARY

<b>partner</b>	sb you have a romantic relationship with (your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband)	<b>get to know sb</b>	learn more about sb and become friends
<b>be together</b>	be in a romantic relationship	<b>get married</b>	become husband or wife with sb
<b>go out with sb</b>	have a romantic relationship with sb	<b>have a baby</b>	become a new mother/father
<b>ex-boyfriend</b>	a person who was your boyfriend in the past ALSO <b>ex-girlfriend</b> , <b>ex-husband</b> , etc.	<b>couple</b>	two people, often in a romantic relationship
		<b>separate</b>	stop being together
		<b>be divorced</b>	married in the past but not now

### SPOTLIGHT *relationship*

You have a **relationship** with somebody. It can be good or bad.

- I have a **good relationship** with my classmates.
- He has a **difficult relationship** with his father.

We often talk about **romantic relationships** with wives, boyfriends, etc.

### 1 Make six more phrases using words from the box.

get to together ✓ ex- know be ✓ get boyfriend go out with somebody have romantic a baby married relationship

▶ be together

### 2 Write the words in the correct order.

- ▶ get / to / they / married / want They want to get married
- 1 baby / last / had / a / year / they \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 separated / January / they / in \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 have / good / a / very / relationship / we \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 boyfriend / you / how / your / get / did / to / know \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 three / together / for / they / years / were \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- ▶ They have a very good relationship.
- 1 Tom \_\_\_\_\_ married last summer, but I don't know his new \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ to know each other at university, and we've been \_\_\_\_\_ now for a year.
- 3 I know Tom and Lucy very well. They're a lovely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 She went \_\_\_\_\_ with him last year, but they \_\_\_\_\_ in January.
- 5 Sonia is his \_\_\_\_\_ girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
- 6 My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're \_\_\_\_\_. My father has a new \_\_\_\_\_, but I don't think they're going to \_\_\_\_\_ married.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Friends



### WHY WE LIKE

## each other

Sophie: I **get on very well with** Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we've got very different **personalities**. We first **met** at university about six years ago, and then we **became flatmates**. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I go to her for **advice**. And she always gives me good advice. We don't **see** each other very often now because we live in different cities, but I've **known** her for quite a long time, and she will always be my **best friend**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>each other</b>	She likes me and I like her. = We like <b>each other</b> .
<b>get on (well) with sb</b>	have a good relationship with sb
<b>personality</b>	what a person is like that makes them different from other people
<b>meet pt met</b>	<b>1</b> see and speak to sb for the first time <b>2</b> go to a place and wait for sb: We're <b>meeting</b> them at 7.30.
<b>become</b>	begin to be sth: <b>become friends/flatmates</b>
<b>flatmate</b>	a person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship
<b>advice [U]</b>	an opinion or information that you give to help sb with a problem <b>give (sb) advice</b>
<b>see sb</b>	talk to or visit sb
<b>know pt knew pp known</b>	If you <b>know sb</b> , you have met them. If you <b>have known sb</b> for a long time, you are often friends.

### SPOTLIGHT friend

A **friend** is a person that you like and know well. Your **best friend** is your most important friend. You can also have a **close friend** (= a very good friend) or an **old friend** (= somebody you have known a long time).

#### 4 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ We met last year. / I have known her for a year. S
- 1 We live near each other. / We are flatmates. .....
- 2 We get on very well. / We have a very good relationship. .....
- 3 I see her every Saturday. / I visit her every Saturday. .....
- 4 She's my best friend. / She's a close friend. .....
- 5 We became friends. / We stopped being friends. .....
- 6 She gives me advice. / She helps me with my problems. .....

#### 5 Complete the sentences

- ▶ Abigail and I soon became friends.
- 1 My best friend often gives me good .....
- 2 Charles and Ed are good friends – they see ..... other almost every day.
- 3 Mia is an ..... friend – I've ..... her for many years.
- 4 Sammy seems to ..... on well with everyone – he's very popular.
- 5 I first ..... my wife when we were at university – we were only twenty.
- 6 I've ..... Olivia a long time, but we don't ..... each other very much now.
- 7 I'm ..... my friends outside the cinema at 7 o'clock.
- 8 Emma was just my ..... – we shared a flat for a year. Now she's my ..... friend, but we have very different .....

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Who is your best friend? .....
- 2 How long have you known him/her? .....
- 3 How and where did you first meet? .....
- 4 How often do you see each other? .....
- 5 Why do you get on well with him/her? .....
- 6 Do you often give each other advice? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 17 Feelings

## A Feelings and emotions



1 She's happy.



2 She's sad. SYN unhappy



3 They're excited.



4 He's bored.



5 He's angry.



6 She's scared/afraid (of sth/sb).



7 She's embarrassed.



8 She's surprised.



9 He's in love.



10 She's worried.

### SPOTLIGHT feelings and emotions

**Feelings or emotions** are what you have inside yourself. We use adjectives after the verb **be** to describe our feelings, e.g. I'm **happy/sad/angry/afraid**, etc. We can also use many of these adjectives after the verb **feel** (pt felt): I **feel happy/sad/angry**, etc.

### 1 Complete the words.

▶ ha p p y

1 ang \_\_\_\_\_

2 wor \_\_\_\_\_

3 \_\_\_\_\_

4 sc \_\_\_\_\_

5 emb \_\_\_\_\_

6 unh \_\_\_\_\_

7 af \_\_\_\_\_

8 sur \_\_\_\_\_

9 ex \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Answer the questions.

▶ What's the opposite of **sad**? happy

1 What's another word for **feelings**? \_\_\_\_\_

2 What's the opposite of **excited**? \_\_\_\_\_

3 What's another word for **unhappy**? \_\_\_\_\_

4 What's another word for **afraid**? \_\_\_\_\_

5 If two people love each other, how can we say it another way? They are \_\_\_\_\_

6 If you do something stupid, how do you feel? \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the sentences.

▶ The teacher got angry because the children were running round the classroom.

1 I got very \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.

2 I got 100% in my English exam. I was happy but also very \_\_\_\_\_

3 My brothers get very \_\_\_\_\_ when they're watching football on TV.

4 I made a mistake and everyone laughed. I \_\_\_\_\_ stupid and a bit \_\_\_\_\_

5 My sister and Jake are getting married. My parents are \_\_\_\_\_ because they like Jake.

6 I didn't like the film and I was \_\_\_\_\_ after half an hour.

7 My aunt never travels by plane. She's \_\_\_\_\_ of flying.

8 Oliver and Marcia met on holiday. I think they're in \_\_\_\_\_

9 I had different \_\_\_\_\_ when I first flew in a plane: I was excited but also a bit scared.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B How did you feel?

How did you feel ...

when you went to bed last night?	~ Quite <b>tired</b> .
on your walk when it got hot?	~ I was <b>thirsty</b> .
after you had nothing to eat for hours?	~ I was <b>hungry</b> .
when everyone came to your party?	~ I was very <b>pleased</b> .
when you forgot a friend's birthday?	~ I was very <b>sorry</b> .
before your important exam today?	~ I was <b>nervous</b> .
when you broke your finger?	~ I was in <b>pain</b> .
when your dog died?	~ I was very <b>upset</b> , and I <b>cried</b> .
when you <b>argued with / had an argument</b> with your best friend?	~ I felt <b>bad</b> and <b>unhappy</b> about it.



She's crying.

### 4 How do you feel? Write your answers.

- ▶ It's the end of a working day.
- 1 Your best friend hasn't invited you to his party.
- 2 You are meeting your boyfriend or girlfriend's parents for the first time.
- 3 You've had nothing to drink for hours.
- 4 It's lunchtime and you didn't have breakfast.
- 5 You walked into a door and hit your head.
- 6 A friend wrote a letter to thank you for something.
- 7 A friend asked you to do something, and you forgot.

tired

### 5 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry?
- 1 I've got my driving test tomorrow. ~ Oh, are you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 I'm going to bed. ~ OK. Are you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Did Dan finally pass his exam? ~ Yes, he's so \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Did Amelia fall down the stairs? ~ Yes, she was in a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Steph looked very angry. ~ I know. She's just had an \_\_\_\_\_ with her boyfriend.  
Really? What about? ~ I don't know, but they often \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I'm really \_\_\_\_\_ I couldn't come last night. ~ That's OK.
- 7 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ ~ OK. What would you like to drink?
- 8 Julia's mother was in hospital and died last week, so Julia is very \_\_\_\_\_  
~ Oh, that's probably why she was \_\_\_\_\_ when I saw her.

### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

#### Questionnaire

When was the last time you ...

1 felt tired? \_\_\_\_\_

2 felt nervous? \_\_\_\_\_

3 felt hungry? \_\_\_\_\_

4 felt thirsty? \_\_\_\_\_

5 argued with somebody? \_\_\_\_\_

6 were in pain? \_\_\_\_\_

7 cried? \_\_\_\_\_

8 felt pleased? \_\_\_\_\_



TEST YOURSELF

# 18 Prepositions: time

<b>at</b>	<b>a time</b> at six o'clock at midday/midnight	<b>a mealtime</b> at breakfast at lunch / lunchtime at dinner / dinner time	
<b>on</b>	<b>a day</b> on Tuesday on Friday evening on Tuesdays = every Tuesday on my birthday      on Christmas Day	<b>a date</b> on September 10 on 6 <sup>th</sup> May	
<b>in</b>	<b>a part of a day</b> in the morning in the afternoon in the evening	<b>a season</b> in (the) spring/summer/ autumn/winter	<b>a month, year or century</b> in July/December in 1990/2050 in the 21 <sup>st</sup> century (= 2000–2099)

## SPOTLIGHT *at*

We also use **at** in these time phrases:

- I relax **at the weekend**.
- Some doctors work **at night**. (NOT *in the night*)
- What are you doing **at Christmas / at New Year?**
- He's not here **at the moment** (= now).

### 1 Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.

- in the spring / ~~February 15<sup>th</sup>~~ / the evening  
1 **at** lunchtime / 2020 / the weekend  
2 **in** August / summer / Friday  
3 **on** April / your birthday / Saturdays  
4 **at** night / the morning / half past seven  
5 **in** autumn / the 20th century / 4.00  
6 **on** midnight / June 2<sup>nd</sup> / Sunday afternoon  
7 **at** breakfast / midday / the autumn  
8 **on** winter / Christmas Day / 5<sup>th</sup> May  
9 **in** the afternoon / lunchtime / 2018  
10 **at** New Year / the evening / six o'clock

### 2 Write the correct preposition.

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left ► **on** Thursday morning (1) about nine o'clock and got there (2) lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) spring, but it was great – really sunny. (5) Friday, we had lunch with an old friend. I first met her at university (6) 2007. Then (7) the evening, we went to a restaurant and got home (8) midnight. (9) the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We'd like to go back for the Brighton Festival, which starts (10) May 6<sup>th</sup>.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

When do you ...

get up? .....  
study English? .....  
go swimming? .....  
usually go out with friends? .....  
watch TV? .....  
go to bed? .....

When ...

is your birthday? .....  
were you born? .....  
are there public holidays in your country? .....



TEST YOURSELF



# 19 Prepositions: direction



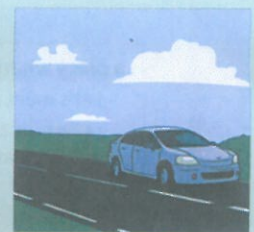
go into go out of  
(the house)



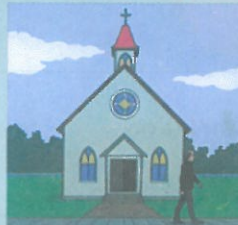
go across the road



go up go down  
(the stairs)



go along the road



go past the church



go through the gate



go under go across/over  
(the bridge)



go towards the hill

## 1 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Don't run down the hilly town.
- 1 Walk under the trees / field.
- 2 Drive along the city / motorway.
- 3 Don't go across the river / gate.
- 4 Go into the beach / shop.

- 5 Go towards the church / clouds.
- 6 Walk through the gate / stairs.
- 7 Go up the floor / mountain.
- 8 We flew over the sky / field.
- 9 Walk out of the building / hill.

## 2 Complete the sentences with a preposition. Use a different one in each sentence.

- ▶ Go straight on, along this road.
- 1 We shouted hello as the boat went under the bridge.
- 2 She went past the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
- 3 They drove towards the hill to look at the view from the top.
- 4 I walked across the village, which was about a kilometre away.
- 5 We drove through a restaurant on the way to the station.
- 6 He came over the door and fell over. It was very funny.
- 7 I came by the bank and saw the accident.
- 8 We went down the hill, into the valley below.
- 9 The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens, and he just ran out of the road.

## 3 Complete the sentences with a preposition.

- ▶ What do you see when you go out of the building where you live?
- 1 Do you ever walk across a bridge near your home?
- 2 Do you ever drive along a river or a railway line?
- 3 Do you walk past a gate when you leave your home?
- 4 Have you ever walked through the River Thames?
- 5 When you walk to work, do you go towards any interesting buildings?

## ABOUT YOU

## 4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

# 20 Prepositions: place

## A at, in, on

at

a place where something happens

Let's meet **at** the bank / **at** the bus stop.

I saw him **at** the match / **at** the party / **at** home  
**at** work / **at** school.



in

something with walls or sides

**in** a box / **in** a cupboard

**in** a room / **in** an office / **in** a flat

**in** a garden / **in** a park



a big area

**in** a village / **in** a town / **in** a city

**in** the countryside

**in** London/Spain/Asia/the world



on

something long

**on** the road / **on** the coast

**on** a river



something flat

**on** the table / **on** the wall

**on** the first floor



in OR on

He's **in** the river.

She's **on** the river.



### 1 Underline the correct preposition.

► I live in / on Canada.

1 She's not in / on her office.

2 The photos are in / on the wall.

3 We met in / at a golf match.

4 We stayed in / on a lovely village.

5 He's swimming in / on the pool.

6 Barcelona is in / on the coast.

7 We live at / in the countryside.

8 There is a white line at / on the road.

9 Dinner is on / at the table.

10 They're sitting in / at the garden.

11 The books are on / in the table.

12 I saw her in / at the bus stop.

13 The number is in / on the door.

14 I spoke to her in / at the party.

### 2 Complete the questions with at, in or on.

► Which country do you live in ?

1 Do you live in a village, a town or a city?

2 Do you live in a flat or a house?

3 Is your town on a river?

4 Which floor is your bedroom on ?

5 What's on the walls in your living room?

6 Do you like walking in the countryside?

7 Do you ever meet new people at parties?

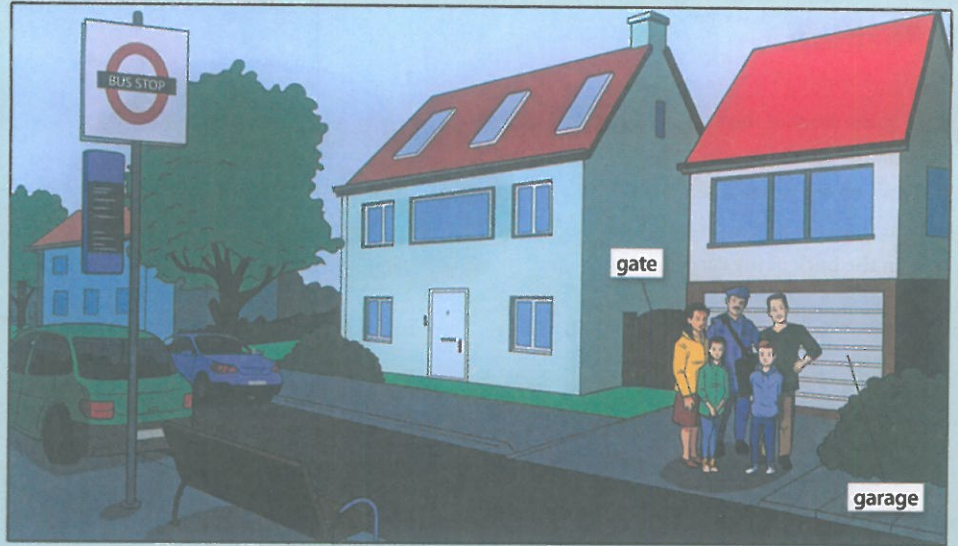
8 Did you learn English at school, on work,  
or in an English-speaking country?

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.





## B Other prepositions



The people are **in front of** the garage.  
The postman is **between** Mum and Dad.  
The adults are **behind** the children.  
The tree is **near** the house.

The office is **above** the garage.  
The garage is **below** the office.  
The seat is **next to** the bus stop.  
The bus stop is **opposite** the house.

### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ The tree is opposite the house. **F**
- 1 The blue car is near the house. ....
- 2 The big window is above the door. ....
- 3 The seat is opposite the garage. ....
- 4 The people are opposite the garage. ....
- 5 The postman is next to Mum. ....

- 6 The gate is between the house and the tree. ....
- 7 The children are behind Mum and Dad. ....
- 8 The girl is in front of the postman. ....
- 9 The front door is below the big window. ....
- 10 The green car is next to the bus stop. ....

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The tree's behind the blue car.
- 1 The bus stop is ..... the seat.
- 2 The blue car is ..... the tree.
- 3 The boy is standing ..... Dad.
- 4 The gate is ..... the house and the garage.
- 5 The blue car is ..... the house.
- 6 The people are ..... the garage.
- 7 The postman is ..... Dad.
- 8 The garage is ..... the people.

### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What's opposite the building where you live? .....
- 2 What's behind your building? .....
- 3 What's next to your building? .....
- 4 Are there any shops near it? .....
- 5 What's above your living room? .....
- 6 What's below your bedroom? .....
- 7 What's next to your bedroom? .....
- 8 Is there anything between your building and the street? If so, what? .....

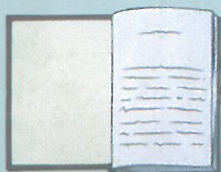
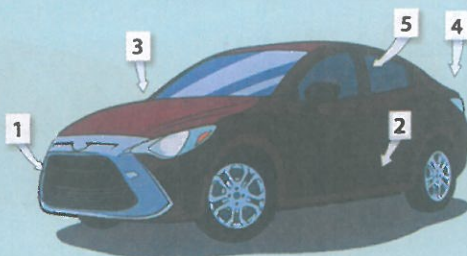


### TEST YOURSELF

# 21 Prepositions: phrases

## A Position

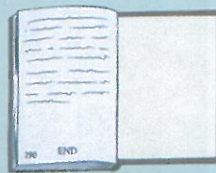
- 1 at the front of the car
- 2 on the side of the car
- 3 OPP on the other side
- 4 at the back of the car
- 5 in the back of the car



at the beginning/start of the book



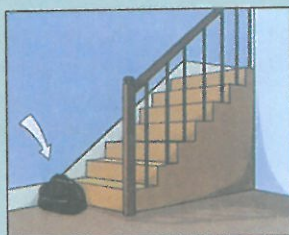
in the middle of the book



at the end of the book



at the top of the mountain



at the bottom of the staircase

### SPOTLIGHT *at first and in the end*

We often talk about time using **at first** (= at the beginning of the time) and **in the end** (= finally) when we tell stories.

- **At first**, I didn't like being in the water, but I soon learned how to swim.
- It was a long journey. **In the end**, we arrived at our hotel.

### 1 Cross out the wrong answer.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ at the front of the <i>cinema</i> / <del>bread</del> / <i>house</i> | 4 at the bottom of the <i>glass</i> / <i>river</i> / <i>apple</i>   |
| 1 at the back of the <i>night</i> / <i>bus</i> / <i>classroom</i>     | 5 in the middle of the <i>book</i> / <i>road</i> / <i>milk</i>      |
| 2 at the beginning of the <i>story</i> / <i>meal</i> / <i>pencil</i>  | 6 on the other side of the <i>sky</i> / <i>house</i> / <i>river</i> |
| 3 at the top of the <i>stairs</i> / <i>book</i> / <i>building</i>     | 7 at the end of the <i>film</i> / <i>morning</i> / <i>mountain</i>  |

### 2 Complete the sentences with a phrase.

- ▶ There's a murder at the beginning of the film.
- 1 There's a great view \_\_\_\_\_ of the hill.
- 2 I always sit \_\_\_\_\_ of the class where the teacher can't see me.
- 3 They found an old boat \_\_\_\_\_ of the lake.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't enjoy learning English, but now I like it.
- 5 When I go and see a film, I like to sit \_\_\_\_\_ of the cinema, where I can see easily.
- 6 What happens \_\_\_\_\_ of the book? I didn't finish it.
- 7 They put a big sign \_\_\_\_\_ of the square so everyone could see it.
- 8 We had a lot of problems, but \_\_\_\_\_ it was OK.
- 9 The problem is not on this side of the wall – it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ of the film I couldn't understand their English, but it got better.
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant was empty, but a few customers arrived about 6.30. Then a large group came in at about seven, followed by several more smaller groups. \_\_\_\_\_, it was almost full and really busy.





## B Fixed phrases

Did you like London when you went there?  
 How many people came?  
 What are Liam and Yasmin doing **at the moment**?  
 Did you know Ellie **at university**?  
 Is Ethan here?  
 Were you late?  
 When will you finish painting the house?  
 Is Xav working now?

~ I don't remember. I was only 8 **at the time**.  
 ~ **At least** 25.  
 ~ I think they're **on holiday**.  
 ~ Yes, we were there **at the same time**.  
 ~ Yes, but he's **on the phone**.  
 ~ No, I'm always **on time**.  
 ~ Oh, **by the end of** the week.  
 ~ No. **In fact**, he's **in hospital** with a broken leg.



### SPOTLIGHT *at university, in hospital, etc.*

If you are **at university**, you are studying in a university.  
 If you are **at school**, you are a pupil/student.  
 If you are **in hospital**, there is something wrong with you and you must stay there.  
 If you are **in prison**, you have done something wrong/illegal and you must stay there for a period of time.

### GLOSSARY

<b>at the time</b>	then: I worked there in 2016. I was 24 <b>at the time</b> .
<b>at least</b>	not less than
<b>at the moment</b>	now or around now: I'm busy <b>at the moment</b> . (NOT <i>in this moment</i> )
<b>on holiday</b>	not working/studying and often away from home
<b>at the same time</b>	used to say that two or more things happen together
<b>on the phone</b>	using the phone and speaking to sb <b>also on his/her phone</b> (= mobile phone)
<b>on time</b>	not early or late
<b>by the end of sth</b>	not later than sth
<b>in fact</b>	used to say that sth is true (often the opposite of what sb says or thinks): <i>She looks English, but <b>in fact</b>, she's Spanish.</i> SYN <b>actually</b>

### 3 Make phrases using the words in the box.

least      holiday      university ✓      fact      the same time      the time  
 the phone      the moment      prison      time      hospital

AT ► university

ON  
IN

### 4 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- Is he at university? ~ No, he's still at school.  
 1 Did they arrive together? ~ Yes,  
 2 Are they away? ~ Yes, they're  
 3 What are you doing .....? ~ Now? Nothing. Why?  
 4 Is he ill? ~ Yes, he's  
 5 Were there many people there? ~ ..... 50.  
 6 Were you late? ~ No, I was  
 7 Is she still studying? ~ Yes, she's

### 5 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrase from above.

- I was on time, but Max was late, as usual.  
 1 We came here in 2012, but I was only nine .....  
 2 My father has been ..... with a heart problem.  
 3 The hotel is quite expensive: a room is ..... \$200.  
 4 She's on holiday at the moment, but she'll be back ..... the week.  
 5 He's been ..... for two years for stealing money.  
 6 I know she looks Swedish, but ..... she's English.  
 7 My sister has been ..... for two years. She finishes at the end of next year.  
 8 He's always ..... He never stops sending texts.



### TEST YOURSELF

## 22 Word + preposition

### A Verb or adjective + preposition

You will find the meaning of some of the verbs and adjectives in this unit in other parts of the book. Use the **APP** to help if you are not sure of the meaning.

#### Questionnaire

#### ABOUT YOU AND YOUR FAMILY

- Do you still **live with** your parents?
- Do you still **depend on** your parents?
- Do you ever **ask them for** money?
- Do you usually **agree with** your parents?
- Do you **spend** a lot of money **on** clothes?
- Do you **care about** making money?
- Do you always **thank** people **for** presents?
- What are you **interested in**?
- What are you **good at**?
- Do you get **bored with** things quickly?

#### GLOSSARY

<b>depend on sb/sth</b>	need sb or sth
<b>agree with sb</b>	have the same view or opinion as sb (NOT <i>I'm agree</i> .) OPP <b>disagree with sb</b>
<b>spend money (on sth) or spent</b>	pay money for sth
<b>care about sb/sth</b>	think that sb or sth is important
<b>thank sb (for sth)</b>	tell sb you are pleased or happy because they gave you sth or helped you
<b>present</b>	sth that you give to sb or get from sb SYN <b>gift</b>

#### SPOTLIGHT preposition + -ing form

A preposition can be followed by a noun or an **-ing form**.

- I'm **good at** maths.
- I'm **interested in** art.
- I'm **good at** drawing.
- I'm **interested in** learning languages.

#### 1 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ I spend a lot of money ~~in~~ food. on
- 1 I'm good in playing chess. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 We must stop now. ~ Yes, I'm agree. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 My brother depends of me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I am bored for my job: it's always the same. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do you ask for money your parents? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do you care at the clothes you wear? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I live by two friends – we have a flat together. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I'm not interested in speak other languages. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb or adjective.

- ▶ I'm not very good at English. I make lots of mistakes.
- 1 I must \_\_\_\_\_ my aunt for the \_\_\_\_\_ she gave me for my birthday.
- 2 My boss is great. He really \_\_\_\_\_ about his workers and wants them to do well.
- 3 He's new in the job so he still \_\_\_\_\_ on other people for help and advice.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ \$500 on a new tablet.
- 5 I know you used to take lots of photos. Are you still \_\_\_\_\_ in photography?
- 6 If you can't do this, why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher for help?

#### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- ▶ She spent all her money on that computer.
- 1 I quickly get bored \_\_\_\_\_ housework.
- 2 Did you ask them \_\_\_\_\_ help?
- 3 I'm not interested \_\_\_\_\_ cooking.
- 4 I forgot to thank him \_\_\_\_\_ helping me.
- 5 They all depend \_\_\_\_\_ Maxine for help.
- 6 My mother cares \_\_\_\_\_ other people.
- 7 Why are you so good \_\_\_\_\_ maths?
- 8 Does she live \_\_\_\_\_ her family?
- 9 I disagree \_\_\_\_\_ the others – I think it's a wonderful book.

#### 4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questionnaire above, or ask another student. Use the new vocabulary in your answers.

- ▶ I don't live with my parents because I'm married. I live with my wife.



#### TEST YOURSELF



## B Verb + preposition

Read about Caroline, and some of the things she does and thinks.

I often **listen to** the radio in the morning.  
I usually **hear about** things for the first time on social media.  
When I **look at** people, I don't **notice** what they're wearing.  
I like films that are **based on** true stories.  
I like furniture **made of** wood.  
I hate **waiting for** buses and trains, but don't like **paying for** taxis.  
I haven't **applied for** a job yet.  
I don't **think about** the future very much.



### GLOSSARY

<b>hear about sth</b>	If you <b>hear about</b> sth, sb tells you sth or you read about it.
<b>notice</b>	see or pay attention to sb or sth
<b>base sth on sth</b>	make sth using another thing as the beginning: <i>We <b>based</b> the book <b>on</b> her diaries and letters.</i> <i>The book is <b>based on</b> her letters and diaries.</i>
<b>apply for sth</b>	write to ask for sth, e.g. for a job

### SPOTLIGHT *think about and think of*

- I **always think about** my grandmother when I see that photo. = I have thoughts about her in my head.
- What did you **think of** the film? = What was your opinion of the film?

### 5 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- |                              |       |   |                                 |
|------------------------------|-------|---|---------------------------------|
| ▶ Have you listened to       | ..... | a | the photo I sent you?           |
| 1 Did you apply for          | ..... | b | the new TV yet?                 |
| 2 Have you looked at         | ..... | c | their new song? ✓               |
| 3 Are you waiting for        | ..... | d | leather?                        |
| 4 Have you paid for          | ..... | e | somebody to phone you?          |
| 5 Did you base your story on | ..... | f | the job?                        |
| 6 Is the coat made of        | ..... | g | something that happened to you? |

### 6 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| ▶ I wasn't listening <u>to</u> her.          | 5 Is the film based ..... a book?     |
| 1 What are you looking ..... ?               | 6 Who are you waiting ..... ?         |
| 2 Who paid ..... the meal?                   | 7 How did you hear ..... the party?   |
| 3 Did you apply ..... a place on the course? | 8 What did you think ..... the book?  |
| 4 Why are you thinking ..... Ali?            | 9 I think this is made ..... plastic. |

### 7 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- ▶ I'm thinking about the weather. Is it warm enough to go swimming?
- 1 My story is ..... on something I read in the newspaper.
- 2 Have you ..... about Marta? She's getting married.
- 3 The food was free, but we had to ..... for drinks.
- 4 I've just seen Mia, and I ..... that she had a new hairstyle. It's very short.
- 5 I don't know why she ..... for that job – it isn't very interesting.
- 6 I liked the film. What did you ..... of it?

### 8 ABOUT YOU Look at the sentences at the top of the page. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student. Use the new vocabulary in your answers.

- ▶ I never listen to the radio. In the morning I sometimes listen to music on my phone.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 23 Routines

## A Weekdays (Monday to Friday)

What's your daily routine?



I wake up at 7.00.  
I get up immediately.



I have a shower.



I get dressed.



I have breakfast.



I usually leave home  
at 8.00.



I get to work/arrive  
at work at 8.30.



I finish work/  
go home at 5.00.



I have dinner at 8.00.



I normally go to bed  
at about 11.30.



I sleep about seven  
hours a night.

### GLOSSARY

daily	happening every day
routine	your usual way of doing things
wake up	stop sleeping
immediately	now, without waiting
have + meal	e.g. <i>have breakfast, have lunch, have dinner</i>
usually	most often SYN normally

### 1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ get dressed / get up D
- 1 I go home at 6.00. / I leave home at 6.00. ....
- 2 I have lunch at 1.00. / I eat lunch at 1.00. ....
- 3 He finishes work early. / He gets to work early. ....
- 4 I get up immediately. / I get up daily. ....
- 5 We usually leave / We normally leave at 7.00. ....
- 6 Do you wake up early? / Do you get up early? ....

### 2 A word is missing in each line. What is it and where does it go? Write it after the sentence.

- ▶ I normally / up at 6.30. wake
- 1 I usually get immediately. ....
- 2 I have a before breakfast. ....
- 3 I get after my shower. ....
- 4 I at work before 8.30. ....
- 5 I work and go home at 6.00. ....
- 6 I dinner with my family. ....
- 7 I go bed when I'm tired. ....
- 8 I usually six hours a night. ....
- 9 My daily is what I do every day. ....

### 3 Complete the questions with the correct verb.

- ▶ What time do you usually wake up in the morning? I usually wake up early at 6.00.
- 1 Do you ..... dressed before or after breakfast?
- 2 Do you ..... a shower in the morning?
- 3 Where do you usually ..... breakfast?
- 4 What time do you ..... home in the morning?
- 5 What time do you ..... school/university/work?
- 6 Who do you have ..... with in the evening?
- 7 What time do you normally ..... to bed?
- 8 How many hours a night do you ..... ?

### ABOUT YOU

I usually wake up early at 6.00.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF



## B Weekends (Saturdays and Sundays)

During the week I usually **stay in** after school and study, watch TV, or just talk to my family. **Once or twice** a week, my boyfriend **comes round** and we have dinner together or play video games. But **at the weekend**, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning, I usually **go shopping** with a friend, and then my boyfriend and I go out in the evening. Sometimes we go to the cinema or a concert. On Sundays, I **always** get up late. We often **go for a walk**, and in the summer we **play tennis** or **go for a swim**.



### GLOSSARY

during the week	from Monday to Friday
stay in	stay at home <b>OPP go out</b>
once a week	one time in every week
twice a week	two times in every week
come round	visit sb at their home
at the weekend	on Saturday and Sunday
go shopping	go to the shops to buy clothes, books, etc.
<b>ALSO do the shopping</b>	buy food
late <i>adv</i>	after the usual time <b>late</b> <i>adj</i> <b>OPP early</b>
go for a walk/swim	have a short walk/swim to enjoy yourself
play tennis	(see picture)

### SPOTLIGHT adverbs of frequency

100% **always** usually/normally often sometimes never 0%

These adverbs go before the main verb, e.g. *get up*, but after **be**, modals, e.g. *can*, *will*, and auxiliaries, e.g. *does*, *doesn't*.

- I **always** get up early on Saturdays.
- Do you **often** go out in the evening?
- He **can** **sometimes** meet his friends on Fridays
- I'm **never** late for school.

### 5 Write the words in the correct order.

- twice / John / a / see / I / week. I see John twice a week
- shopping / do / the / do / often / you do you go shopping often?
  - school / never / late / is / he / for is he late for school?
  - early / up / we / tennis / get / play / sometimes / and do we play tennis sometimes?
  - weekend / at / shopping / the / you / always / do / go do you go shopping at the weekend?
  - the / goes / during / often / out / week / Martha does Martha go out during the week?
  - week / or / sister / a / once / see / my / I / twice do you see my sister once a week?

### 6 Complete the phrases with one word.

- go out = go to the cinema, a restaurant, etc.
- not go out = stay in in
  - buy clothes, books, etc. = go shopping
  - have a game of tennis = play tennis
  - have a short walk = go for a walk
  - buy food = go the shopping
  - on Saturday and Sunday = go the weekend
  - from Monday to Friday = go the week
  - on Tuesdays only = go a week
  - on Mondays and Fridays only = go a week

### 7 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write T or F. If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.

- I **often** get to work or school late. F - I never get to school late.
- I **always** play tennis in the summer. \_\_\_\_\_
  - In my family, I **never** do the shopping. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I **often** go for a long walk during the week. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I **sometimes** play video games at the weekend. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I **never** have dinner with my family. \_\_\_\_\_
  - During the week**, I go out a lot in the evenings. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I like to get up **early** at the weekend. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I **often** go shopping with a friend. \_\_\_\_\_

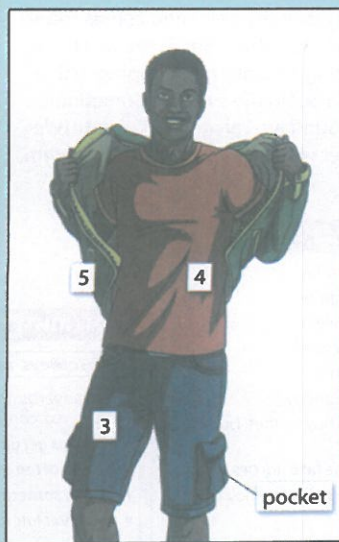


### TEST YOURSELF

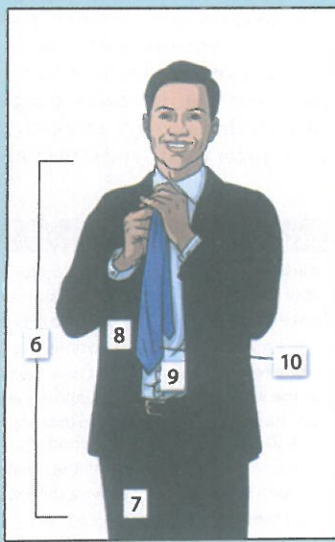
## 24 Clothes



Milla



Enzo

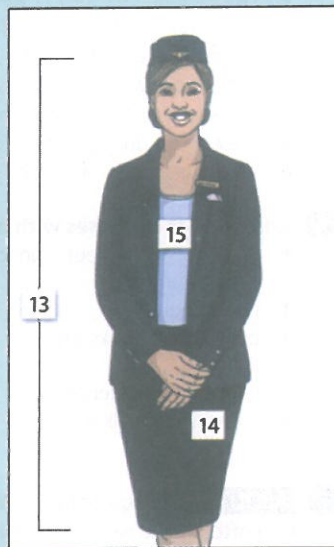


Osman

- 1 dress
- 2 coat
- 3 shorts
- 4 T-shirt
- 5 jacket
- 6 suit
- 7 trousers
- 8 jacket
- 9 shirt
- 10 tie
- 11 jeans
- 12 jumper/sweater
- 13 uniform
- 14 skirt
- 15 top



Kim



Megan

These are all items of clothing.

### GLOSSARY

**clothes**

things like *trousers*, *shirts* and *coats* that you wear to cover your body

**item of clothing**

a thing that you wear, e.g. a *skirt*, a *tie*

**wear** *pt wore pp worn*

have clothes on your body

**put sth on**

take clothes and wear them: **Put on** your shoes. **Put** your coat **on**. **Opp** **take sth off**

**uniform**

the special clothes that everybody in the same job, school, etc. wears



1 Complete the words.

► sui\_t

1 j\_\_\_\_\_t

2 t\_\_\_\_\_s

3 j\_\_\_\_\_r

4 b\_\_\_\_\_n

5 c\_\_\_\_\_t

6 T-\_\_\_\_\_t

7 d\_\_\_\_\_s

8 p\_\_\_\_\_t

9 j\_\_\_\_\_s

10 t\_\_\_\_\_

11 sh\_\_\_\_\_t

12 sk\_\_\_\_\_t

13 sh\_\_\_\_\_s

14 sw\_\_\_\_\_t\_r

2 Look at the pictures on page 54 and answer the questions.

► Who's wearing jeans and a jumper? Kim

1 Who's wearing a uniform? .....

2 Who's wearing shorts? .....

3 Who's wearing a suit? .....

4 Who's wearing a dress? .....

5 Who's wearing a skirt and top? .....

6 Who's taking off a jacket? .....

7 Who's putting a coat on? .....

8 Who's putting on a tie? .....

9 Who isn't wearing trousers? .....

10 Who's wearing a jumper? .....

11 Who's wearing a jacket with pockets? .....

12 Who's wearing an item of clothing with buttons? .....

13 Who's wearing three items of clothing? .....

14 Is anybody taking a coat off? .....

3 Put the words in the correct column.

jacket ✓ top suit trousers skirt shorts dress jeans tie T-shirt coat shirt jumper uniform

WHOLE BODY	ABOVE THE WAIST	BELOW THE WAIST
	jacket	

4 Circle the correct word or words. Be careful: more than one answer may be correct.

► You wear shorts / a jacket / a jumper on a hot day.

1 Men don't usually wear skirts / dresses / suits.

2 When you go out, you take your coat off / put your coat on.

3 Women often wear ties / trousers / jeans.

4 You take your coat off when it's cold / hot.

5 Police officers usually wear jeans / a uniform at work.

6 A top is an item of clothing / a dress / a uniform.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

► clothes / top D

1 wear / jeans .....

2 skirt / shirt .....

3 uniform / clothes .....

4 tie / item .....

5 jumper / uniform .....

6 clothing / coat .....

7 jumper / put on .....

8 suit / uniform .....

9 jacket / take off .....

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What are you wearing today? .....

2 What did you wear yesterday? .....

3 Do you wear the same clothes at the weekend? If not, what is different? .....

4 What do you usually wear to parties? .....

5 Have you ever worn a uniform? If so, what was it for? .....



TEST YOURSELF

## 25 Accessories



scarf (pl scarves)



hat



belt



handbag



umbrella



watch



a pair of shoes



a pair of boots



trainers



socks



tights



glasses



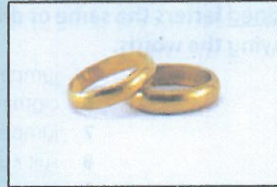
sunglasses



gloves



some jewellery



rings



necklace

### GLOSSARY

<b>accessory</b>	(usually <i>pl</i> ) a thing you carry or wear with clothes, e.g. <i>a watch, a bag, a belt</i>
<b>wear</b>	You <b>wear</b> items of clothing, glasses or jewellery, e.g. <i>a scarf, sunglasses, a ring</i> .
<b>carry</b>	You <b>carry</b> a bag, a handbag or an umbrella.
<b>gold</b>	The <i>rings</i> in the picture are made of <b>gold</b> .
<b>silver</b>	The <i>necklace</i> is made of <b>silver</b> .
<b>plastic</b>	The <i>umbrella</i> is made of <b>plastic</b> .
<b>leather</b>	The <i>boots</i> are made of <b>leather</b> .

### SPOTLIGHT plural nouns and pairs

**Trousers, jeans, tights, clothes** and **(sun)glasses** are always plural. They take a plural verb form.

■ *These tights are* very warm. (NOT *The tights is...*)

We use **a pair of** in two ways:

- two things of the same kind that we use together:  
**a pair of shoes/boots/trainers/socks/gloves**, etc.
- a thing with two parts that are together:  
**a pair of glasses/sunglasses a pair of tights**



1 True or false? Write T or F.

- You can wear a watch. T
- 1 Jewellery is often made of gold or silver.
- 2 Glasses are made of leather.
- 3 You can wear a belt.
- 4 You can wear an umbrella on your shoulder.
- 5 You can carry a handbag on your arm or shoulder.
- 6 A necklace can be made of plastic.
- 7 A pair of tights has two parts called legs.
- 8 Most people wear a pair of scarves.

2 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

watch hat scarf socks belt glasses umbrella handbag ring boots tights

- You wear it round your waist. belt
- 1 You wear them inside your shoes.
- 2 You wear it on your head.
- 3 You wear it on your finger.
- 4 You wear them on your feet.
- 5 You wear them over your legs and feet.
- 6 You wear them on your nose.
- 7 You wear it round your neck.
- 8 You wear it on your wrist.
- 9 You carry it when it's raining.
- 10 You carry things in it.

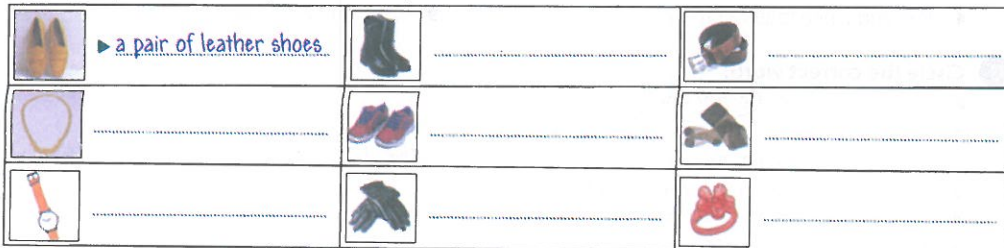
3 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the app to help you. Practise saying the words.

- hat / necklace D
- 1 watch / socks
- 2 tights / ring
- 3 boots / jewellery
- 4 gloves / gold
- hat / handbag S
- 5 scarf / sunglasses
- 6 leather / belt
- 7 pair / trainers
- 8 carry / plastic

4 Make the sentences singular if possible.

- Are these your boots? Is this your boot?
- 1 Give me the socks.
- 2 Where are my tights?
- 3 I've got two pairs of trainers.
- 4 Where are my gloves?
- 5 She's got my scarves.
- 6 Where are my shoes?
- 7 The jeans cost €30.
- 8 I don't like these sunglasses.
- Her glasses are nice. Not possible.

5 Label the pictures. Use a pair of where possible.



6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Which accessories do you always wear?
- 2 Which accessories do you never wear?
- 3 Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear?
- 4 Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why?
- 5 When do you wear: jewellery? a watch? a hat? a scarf?



TEST YOURSELF

## 26 Colours, size and appearance

### A Colours and adjectives

- 1 long
- 2 short
- 3 large/big
- 4 small/little
- 5 cheap
- 6 expensive
- 7 comfortable
- 8 uncomfortable



#### Colours



#### SPOTLIGHT order of adjectives

Adjectives describing size or opinion go before colour adjectives.

- We say *a big blue umbrella* (NOT *a blue big umbrella*)
- *large brown eyes* ■ *a cheap black suit*

1 Find the end of each word.

red/green/pink/purple/orange/grey/dark blue/cream/brown/light blue/black/yellow/white

2 Write your answers.

▶ Red and yellow together make orange.

1 Red and blue together make \_\_\_\_\_.

2 White and blue together make \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Blue and yellow together make \_\_\_\_\_.

4 Red and white together make \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Black and white together make \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Black and blue together make \_\_\_\_\_.

7 Red and green together make \_\_\_\_\_.

8 Yellow and white together make \_\_\_\_\_.

9 Blue, yellow and purple are all \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Circle the correct word.

▶ My handbag's very large / *small*, so I can put lots in it.

1 I like these trainers, but they're very *comfortable* / *uncomfortable*.

2 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear *cheap* / *expensive* clothes.

3 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a *small* / *large* T-shirt.

4 You need your *long* / *short* coat today – it's really cold.

5 The good thing about the school café is that it's *cheap* / *expensive*.

6 You need *comfortable* / *uncomfortable* clothes when you are travelling.

4 Look at the pictures at the top of the page and describe the clothes and accessories.

▶ a cheap grey tie

1 a s skirt

2 c \_\_\_\_\_ shoes

3 a l \_\_\_\_\_ handbag

4 a l \_\_\_\_\_ skirt

5 u \_\_\_\_\_ shoes

6 an e \_\_\_\_\_ tie

7 a s \_\_\_\_\_ handbag



TEST YOURSELF



## B Size and appearance

What size are you?  
What size do you take?

I'm a (size) 12.  
I take size 40.

Is it OK?

No, it's the wrong size.  
It doesn't fit.

Yes, it's the right size.  
It fits well.

What's the matter?

It's too long / too big.

It looks nice/lovely/great.

Do you like it?

It looks awful/terrible.

Yes, I like the style.



### SPOTLIGHT too and very

There is a difference in meaning between **too** and **very**.

- Her coat is **very** long. (But maybe it's OK.)
- Her coat is **too** long. (It's not OK.)
- These trousers are **very** expensive, but I'm going to buy them.
- These boots are **too** small – I can't wear them.

### GLOSSARY

<b>appearance</b>	the way that sb or sth looks
<b>look</b>	If sth <b>looks</b> good, you think it's good.
<b>nice</b>	good
<b>lovely</b>	very good <b>syn</b> great
<b>awful</b>	very bad <b>syn</b> terrible
<b>style</b>	the shape, colour and way sth is

### 5 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

► It looks terrible. / It looks nice.

1 It fits. / It's the right size.

2 It looks great. / It looks lovely.

3 They're the right size. / They don't fit.

4 I like the style. / It looks awful.

5 They're too big. / They don't fit.

6 What size does he take? / What size is he?

7 They're very short. / They're too short.

8 It's the wrong size. / It doesn't fit.

### 6 Complete the dialogues.

1 What **size** are you? ~ I size 34.

2 What do you think of these trousers? ~ I like the – they're very nice.

3 Is the shirt OK for you? ~ I'm sorry. It's the size.

4 What size do you ? ~ 42.

5 Is that top comfortable? ~ No, it doesn't. It's small.

6 What do you think of these jeans? ~ Oh, they terrible. Don't buy them.

7 Are the shoes OK for you? ~ I take 40, but these are small.

8 That suit looks ! ~ Yes, it's, isn't it? I'm going to buy it.

9 Did this jumper ? ~ No, it was big for me.

10 Do you like the trousers? ~ Yes, and they're also the size.

11 Christa thinks about her a lot. ~ Well, she's a teenager. That's normal.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 27 Money

## A Money in shops

You go into a shop to **buy** three books. They **cost** £9.50 each, so a **total** of £28.50. You think you have some **cash** (**notes** and **coins**) in your **wallet**, but when you look, you haven't got **enough** money with you to **pay** in cash, so you **pay** by card.

### GLOSSARY

<b>buy</b> <i>pt</i> <b>bought</b>	give money to get sth
<b>cost</b> <i>pt</i> <b>cost</b>	How much does it <b>cost</b> ? = How much is it?
<b>(£9.50) each</b>	(£9.50) for one
<b>total</b>	the number you have when you add everything together
<b>enough</b>	(sounds like <i>stuff</i> ) as much or as many as you need
<b>pay</b> <i>pt</i> <b>paid</b>	give sb money for sth. You <b>pay</b> in cash, but <b>pay</b> by debit/credit card.
<b>debit card</b>	If you use a <b>debit card</b> , the money comes out of your <b>bank account</b> (where you put money in and take it out).
<b>credit card</b>	A <b>credit card</b> is a bank card you use to buy sth and pay for it later.

### SPOTLIGHT amounts of money

£10.99	ten <b>pounds</b> ninety-nine ( <i>pence</i> ) / ten ninety-nine
€5.30	five <b>euros</b> thirty ( <i>cents</i> ) / five thirty
■ a one- <b>pound</b> coin	■ a ten- <b>dollar</b> note (NOT a ten-dollars note)



cash



notes



coins



debit card



wallet



purses

### 1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ You can pay for things in cash or by credit or debit card. **T**
- 1 If you pay in cash, you use coins and notes. ....
- 2 If you buy two things for £30 each, the total is £30. ....
- 3 If a cake costs \$5 and you have a ten-dollar note, you haven't got enough. ....
- 4 You can put a debit card in a wallet. ....
- 5 Things cost more if you pay in cash. ....
- 6 When you pay by debit card, the money comes from your bank account. ....
- 7 The past tense of *cost* is *cost*. ....

### 2 Complete the sentences using a word from the box.

cost coins cash enough -dollar purse total dollars credit card bought ✓ each

- ▶ She **bought** a new car yesterday.
- 1 I paid in .....
- 2 I put the notes in my .....
- 3 I paid by .....
- 4 I've got a few notes and .....
- 5 The ticket ..... €50.
- 6 I need a ten ..... note.
- 7 It cost five ..... twenty.
- 8 That's a ..... of £100.
- 9 Have you got ..... money?
- 10 The peaches cost 50c .....

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you always have a lot of cash with you? Why? / Why not? .....
- 2 Where do you keep your money when you go out? .....
- 3 Do you have enough money with you today to buy a coffee? A book? Some jewellery? .....
- 4 Do you pay at the supermarket in cash or by debit/credit card? .....



### TEST YOURSELF




## B Money in adverts



**Sell your car**  
for a great **price**  
on eSellers.com!



**Spend £50**  
on food and get  
a **FREE** drink.



**Pay your gas bill**  
**online** and **save** £40.

**Earn \$30 an hour**  
in your own home.  
☎ RING 0990 557731

**Win cash**  
and **prizes!**  
CALL US TODAY.



**SALE**  
all products  
**50% off**

### GLOSSARY

<b>sell pt sold</b>	give sth to sb who pays you money for it <b>OPP buy</b>
<b>pt bought</b>	
<b>price</b>	the money you have to pay for sth
<b>spend money (on sth) pt spent</b>	pay money for sth
<b>free</b>	If sth is <b>free</b> , you don't pay for it.
<b>bill</b>	a piece of paper which shows how much you must pay
<b>online</b>	on the internet
<b>save</b>	If you <b>save</b> £40 on a bill, you pay £40 less.
<b>earn</b>	get money by working
<b>win pt won</b>	get money or a prize, often because you are better than others or lucky
<b>prize</b>	sth that you give to a person who wins a game, race, etc.
<b>sale</b>	a time when a shop sells sth for less money than usual
<b>product</b>	sth that people make or grow to sell
<b>(50%) off</b>	50% (= 50 <b>per cent</b> ) taken off the normal price

#### 4 Circle the correct answer.

- They're going to sell a new product / price.
- What's the **price** / **bill** of these shoes?
  - I don't **spend** / **buy** a lot on food.
  - I bought ten boxes and **earned** / **saved** £3.
  - I **won** / **earned** £100 in a card game.
  - The **prize** / **price** of the classes was \$400.
  - I bought this table **online** / **free**.
  - Doctors can **win** / **earn** a lot of money.
  - I **bought** / **sold** my old car and got a new one.
  - She paid the restaurant **bill** / **price**.
  - The shoes are 15% **out** / **off**.

#### 5 Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.

- pay paid
- |         |        |        |
|---------|--------|--------|
| 1 buy   | 3 sell | 5 win  |
| 2 spend | 4 earn | 6 save |

#### 6 Complete the questions with a word from the glossary.

- How much do you spend on food every week?
- Do you ever shop \_\_\_\_\_?
  - Do you pay restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ in cash?
  - Is water \_\_\_\_\_ in restaurants?
  - What's the \_\_\_\_\_ of a litre of milk?
  - Do you often buy things cheaper in a \_\_\_\_\_?
  - Do women \_\_\_\_\_ more than men?
  - What kind of \_\_\_\_\_ do men buy a lot?
  - Have you ever won a \_\_\_\_\_?

### ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

#### 7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



#### TEST YOURSELF

# 28 Shopping

## A Places

PLACES	WHAT THEY SELL
shopping centre	everything
department store	everything (e.g. clothes, furniture, books, etc.) except food
supermarket	food, drinks, soap, cleaning products, etc.
chemist's/pharmacy	medicine, soap
baker's	bread and cakes
electrical store	TVs, computers, coffee machines, etc.
toy shop	dolls, model aeroplanes, building blocks
gift shop	T-shirts, toys, cups, etc.

toys



### GLOSSARY

<b>everything</b>	all things
<b>except</b>	but not; not including
<b>medicine</b>	special liquids and pills to make you get better when you are ill
<b>gift</b>	sth that you give to or get from sb <b>syn</b> present
<b>toy</b>	a thing for a child to play with

### SPOTLIGHT **noun + shop**

For many shops, we often use a **noun + shop**, e.g. a shop where you buy books is a **bookshop**. **ALSO shoe shop, clothes shop, furniture shop, music shop** (for CDs, etc.), **fruit and vegetable shop**, etc.

#### 1 Correct any spelling mistakes.

- ▶ furnishure shop furniture  
 1 cemist's .....  
 2 farmacy .....

- 3 departement store .....  
 4 shoping centre .....  
 5 medecine .....

- 6 cloths shop .....  
 7 pressent .....  
 8 elektrical store .....

#### 2 Underline the stressed part of the word. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ shopping centre    bookshop    department store    clothes shop    pharmacy  
 supermarket    electrical store    furniture shop    everything    medicine    except

#### 3 Cross out the one wrong answer.

- ▶ I got the vegetables from the  
 a) supermarket  
 b) baker's  
 c) fruit and vegetable shop
- 1 I got the medicine from the  
 a) chemist's  
 b) toy shop  
 c) pharmacy
- 2 I got these jeans from the  
 a) department store  
 b) gift shop  
 c) clothes shop
- 3 I got these boots from the ...  
 a) shoe shop  
 b) department store  
 c) furniture shop
- 4 I got Gemma's present from the ...  
 a) bookshop  
 b) fruit and vegetable shop  
 c) gift shop
- 5 I got this coffee machine from the ...  
 a) shopping centre  
 b) electrical store  
 c) music shop
- 6 I got the bread from the ...  
 a) baker's  
 b) shopping centre  
 c) chemist's

#### 4 Where can you buy the following things? More than one answer is possible.

A shop where you can buy ...

- ▶ sugar, rice and soap: a supermarket  
 1 cakes and bread: .....  
 2 something for a child to play with: .....  
 3 something for somebody's birthday: .....  
 4 a CD: .....

- 5 medicine: .....  
 6 new shoes: .....  
 7 a chair and a bed: .....  
 8 trousers and a shirt: .....  
 9 a TV and a fridge: .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Why go shopping?

### Why go shopping?

A lot of people **shop online**, but sometimes they **prefer to** go shopping. Here's why:

- In the shops, you can **touch** and feel things, like clothes, and **try them on**.
- You can **choose particular** items, like fresh fruit or fish.
- You can see and **compare** the **quality** of items.
- You get a more **personal service** from a shop assistant than you do online.
- Often shops **reduce** the prices of items in the **sales**, which is very popular.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>online</b>	using a computer or the internet <b>shop online</b>
<b>prefer</b>	like one thing or person better than another: <i>Would you <b>prefer</b> juice or water?</i> <i>I <b>prefer to</b> buy fruit in a shop.</i>
<b>touch</b>	(sounds like <i>much</i> ) put your hand or finger on sth or sb
<b>try sth on</b>	put sth on to see if you like it and it is the right size: <i>I <b>tried</b> the shoes <b>on</b>, but they were too small.</i>
<b>choose</b>	decide which thing you want <b>choice</b> <i>n</i>
<b>particular</b>	one only, and not any other: <i>She eats a <b>particular</b> kind of bread.</i>
<b>compare</b>	think about or look at things together so that you can see how they are different
<b>quality</b>	how good or bad sth is
<b>service</b>	the work that sb does for customers in a shop, restaurant, etc. <b>serve</b> <i>v</i> , <b>personal service</b> service for one person
<b>reduce</b>	make sth smaller or less
<b>sale(s)</b>	a time when a shop sells things for less money than usual

#### 5 Underline the correct word or phrase.

- good / big quality  
1 compare *two things* / a choice  
2 prefer *to* / or go home  
3 try *the shoes* / the shoes on  
4 a choice *of two things* / shop online

- 5 *person* / *personal* service  
6 shop *the sales* / online  
7 a particular *shop* / sales  
8 reduce *the sales* / the price  
9 touch *the sky* / somebody's face

#### 6 Match 1–8 with a–h.

- They gave more choice  
1 He tried the coat on  
2 She reduced the price for me  
3 We compared the prices  
4 The shop assistant had to  
5 The quality of clothes was terrible  
6 I touched the jacket  
7 I shop online

f

- a so I was very happy.  
b and it felt very nice.  
c when I can't find what I want in the shops.  
d but it was too small.  
e so I didn't buy anything.  
f to their customers. ✓  
g serve three customers at the same time.  
h and bought the cheapest chair.

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Complete the words in the questions.

- 1 Do you p..... supermarkets or small shops?  
2 Is it easy for you to c..... clothes in shops?  
3 Is good s..... in shops very important to you?  
4 Is there a p..... kind of shoe that you wear?  
5 When you buy new clothes, do you always t..... them .....?  
6 Do you prefer to go to the shops, or shop o.....?  
7 What time of year are the s..... in your country?  
8 Do you like to t..... and feel things before you buy them?

#### 8 Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

# 29 Possessions

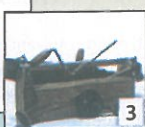
## A Family possessions



One of my favourite **possessions** is a **diary**<sup>1</sup> that **belonged** to my aunt.



A **recording**<sup>5</sup> of my grandmother's **voice**. She was quite a famous singer. It has very happy **memories** for me.



My grandfather's old **camera**<sup>2</sup>. I've also got some of his old **tools**<sup>3</sup>. I had his **gun**, but I haven't got it **any more** – I gave it to a museum.



A book of my mother's **recipes**<sup>4</sup>. I use it a lot.

### GLOSSARY

<b>possessions</b>	the things that you have or own
<b>belong to sb</b>	That book <b>belongs to</b> me. = It is my book.
<b>gun</b>	a weapon that shoots out pieces of metal to kill or hurt people or animals
<b>(not) any more</b>	used at the end of negative sentences and questions to mean 'now'
<b>recording</b>	sounds on CD, video or film
<b>voice</b>	the sounds that you make when you speak or sing
<b>memory</b>	sth that you remember

- 1 These words all have the same weak sound in them, as in **important**, **remember** and **comfortable**. **Underline** the sound in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ family      1 recipe      2 memory      3 diary      4 camera      5 possession

- 2 Write the name of the possession that matches the definition.

- ▶ You use this when you do a special job with your hands. a tool
- 1 You take photos with this.      5 You use this when you're singing or talking.      6 You write what you're going to do in this.      7 sounds on a computer file, CD, etc.      8 something that you remember
- 2 You read these when you're cooking.      3 things that belong to you      4 This can kill people or animals.

- 3 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Do you know the date of the party?      ~ Yes, I wrote it in my diary.
- 1 Do you still sing?      ~ I did a few years ago, but I don't.
- 2 How are you going to cut that wood?      ~ I have a special tool for it.
- 3 How did you make that pasta dish?      ~ I used a recipe from my Italian cookbook.
- 4 Have you still got that photo of grandfather?      ~ Yes, it brings back happy memories.
- 5 That man looks very dangerous.      ~ Yes! He's got a gun!
- 6 I can't hear what she's saying.      ~ No, she's got a very quiet voice.
- 7 Whose car is that?      ~ It belongs to my brother.
- 8 You love that old diary of grandmother's.      ~ I do. It's one of my favourite possessions.

- 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Have you got any important family possessions? If so, what are they?
- 2 Have you got happy memories of school? What did you like?
- 3 Do you use a camera, or do you use the camera on your phone? Why?
- 4 Have you got a recording of a family member's voice? If so, who and why?



TEST YOURSELF



## B Describing possessions



fan



electric fan



phone (ALSO telephone)




phone / mobile (phone)

A **fan** is an **unusual shape** and is used to make you cooler. It's made of **wood** and **material** or paper. There are also **electric fans**.

A **mobile phone** is a **device** made of **metal** and **plastic**. Modern phones are **flat** and thin. It has a lot of different **purposes** – a phone, an **alarm clock**, a **digital camera**, or a device for playing games.

### GLOSSARY

<b>unusual</b>	If sth is <b>unusual</b> , you do not see it often or it does not happen often.
<b>shape</b>	A circle ○ and a square □ are two different <b>shapes</b> .
<b>wood</b>	<b>Wood</b> comes from trees.
<b>material</b>	cloth you use for making clothes, curtains, etc.
<b>device</b>	a piece of equipment you use for doing a special job
<b>metal</b>	Gold, silver and iron are types of <b>metal</b> .

<b>plastic</b>	an artificial substance that is used for making many different things, e.g. <b>plastic flowers</b> , <b>plastic cups</b>
<b>flat</b>	thin and wide and with no parts higher than the rest
<b>purpose</b>	the reason for doing sth
<b>alarm clock</b>	a clock that makes a noise to wake you up
<b>digital</b>	this is a <b>digital</b> clock —  ALSO <b>digital camera</b> /TV

### 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ Chairs are often made of wood. T
- 1 Clothes are often made of plastic. .....
- 2 Trousers are made of material. .....
- 3 A digital television is flat. .....
- 4 An alarm clock is often made of material. .....
- 5 A circle and a square are different shapes. .....

- 6 The purpose tells you why you are doing something. .....
- 7 If something is unusual, it's normal. .....
- 8 An electric fan is useful if it's very cold. .....
- 9 Mobile phones and digital cameras are devices. .....

### 6 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ The / of that big electric fan is to make the room cooler. purpose
- 1 I use my mobile as an clock in the mornings. .....
- 2 My desk is made of and is very old. .....
- 3 What is the table? ~ I think it's round. .....
- 4 He's got a very alarm clock – it's made of wood. .....
- 5 The garden chairs are made of white and they're very hard. .....
- 6 A computer is made of and plastic. .....
- 7 What do you call the that turns the TV on and off? .....

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What shape is the table in your living room / dining room? .....
- 2 Do you use the alarm clock on your mobile phone? .....
- 3 What can you see in front of you that is made of wood? Plastic? Metal? .....
- 4 Have you got a digital TV? .....
- 5 Do you ever use a fan or an electric fan? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

## A TV report



Police have **found** the **body** of a 19-year-old man in a park in East London. The **dead** body was **discovered** by a woman walking her dog early this morning. The police have **not named** the man, but there has been a **series** of **crimes** in the **area** in **recent** weeks. They think the man was **killed** and the **attack** was **planned**.

<b>find</b>	<i>pt/pp found</i>	see or get sth after looking
<b>body</b>		the whole form of a person or animal
<b>dead</b>		not living <i>opp</i> <b>alive</b>
<b>discover</b>		find or learn sth for the first time
		<b>discovery</b> <i>n</i>
<b>name</b>		tell people sb's name
<b>series</b>		a number of things of the same kind that come one after another: <i>a series of accidents</i>
<b>crime</b>		sth that sb does that is wrong and against the law, e.g. if you attack or kill sb. A person who does this is a <b>criminal</b> .
<b>area</b>		a part of a town, a country or the world
<b>recent</b>		that happened or began only a short time ago
<b>kill</b>		make sb die
<b>attack</b>		an act which is done to hurt sb or damage sth <b>attack</b> <i>v</i> : <i>He attacked the man with a knife.</i>
<b>plan</b>		decide what you are going to do and how you are going to do it <b>plan</b> <i>n</i>

- ▶ The girl was alive. / The girl was a criminal.
- 1 They found the body. / They discovered the body.
- 2 The dog was dead. / The dog was alive.
- 3 They named him. / They said who he was.
- 4 He attacked someone. / He killed someone.

► Does a person have a **body**? Yes

1 If someone is **dead**, can they speak?

2 Can a **body** be a dead person?

3 If you **kill** somebody, are they dead?

4 Do the police look for **criminals**?

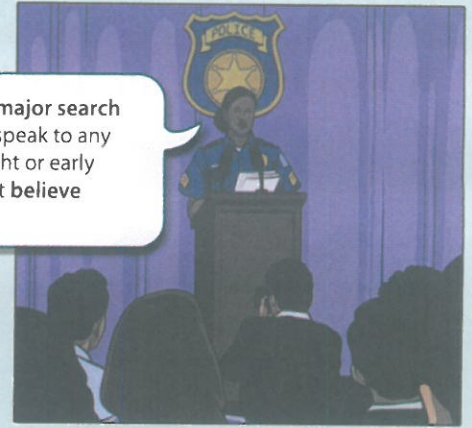
- ▶ There were purple marks on the body.
- ▶ The police have found a body in the woods outside town.
- ▶ I never go there because it's a dangerous part of town at night.
- ▶ The woman was identified by the police as Josephine Smith.
- ▶ Two men beat an old man in a bar, and he had to go to hospital.
- ▶ The man died later in hospital but the police don't know who did it to him.
- ▶ The police are worried about the number of serious injuries in the town.
- ▶ There has been a lot of car accidents on that road.
- ▶ The old man was still alive when they found him, and he was taken to hospital.





## B Police statement

... We think the crime **happened** late last night, so a **major search** of the area is now **taking place** and we would like to speak to any **members of the public** who were in that area last night or early this morning. I would also like to **stress** that we do not **believe** there is any **danger** to the public.



### GLOSSARY

<b>statement</b>	sth you say or write, which is often formal
<b>late</b>	near the end of a period of time: <i>He's in his late 20s</i> (= 27-29).
<b>major</b>	large or important
<b>search</b>	when you try to find sb or sth <b>search v</b>
<b>member</b>	sb who is part of a group or team
<b>the public</b>	people in general; everybody
<b>stress</b>	say sth strongly to show that it is important
<b>believe</b>	think that sth is true or possible
<b>danger</b>	the possibility that sth bad may happen: <i>You may be in danger if you are alone.</i> <b>dangerous adj</b> <b>OPP safe</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *happen and take place*

These words have the same basic meaning, but **happen** usually describes something that is not planned:

■ *How did the accident **happen**?*

**Take place** usually describes something that is planned:

■ *The meeting **took place** yesterday evening.*

### 4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ a member of the team / one person in the team
- 1 a major problem / a small problem
- 2 They believe it's true. / They think it's true.
- 3 The place is dangerous. / The place is safe.
- 4 It was late last night. / It was early last night.
- 5 members of the public / members of the police
- 6 They're searching for him. / They're trying to find him.
- 7 They made a statement. / They made a decision.
- 8 It happens every year. / It takes place every year.

S

### 5 Complete the definitions.

- ▶ A statement is something you say or write.
- 1 If you search an area, you try to find somebody or something.
- 2 A member is somebody who is part of a group.
- 3 If you stress something, you are saying it is important.
- 4 *If you believe something is true, then you think it is true.*
- 5 The public are people in general.
- 6 If something takes place, it happens.

### 6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Have the police spoken to anyone? ~ Yes, they're talking to the public now.
- 1 He's about 28, isn't he? ~ Yeah, he's in his late 20s.
- 2 Have the police said anything? ~ Yes, they've made a formal statement.
- 3 Is he safe? ~ No, he could be in danger.
- 4 Have the police found anything? ~ No, but they're searching the area now.
- 5 Is it important? ~ Yes, it's a major problem.
- 6 Do you think they'll find the boy? ~ Yes, I believe they will.
- 7 How did the fire happen? ~ I think it was a cigarette that started it.
- 8 Are the police talking to people? ~ Yes, they're interviewing members of the public.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 31 Illness

## A Common health problems

What's the matter?

I don't feel well.

I've got ...



a headache



toothache



stomach ache



backache



a cold



a cough



(the) flu



a temperature



I feel sick.

### GLOSSARY

<b>common</b>	If sth is <b>common</b> , it happens often.
<b>health</b>	If you are in good <b>health</b> , you are well, not often ill. <b>healthy</b> <i>adj</i> <b>unhealthy</b>
<b>a cold</b>	a common illness of the nose and throat
<b>(the) flu</b> [U]	an illness like a very bad cold, and often with a temperature

### SPOTLIGHT *be ill and be sick*

**Ill** means not well. An **illness** is a period of feeling ill.

■ *Rafa's not here today: he's ill. He didn't go to school because of illness.*

To **be sick** usually means to bring up food from your stomach (ALSO **vomit**). If you **feel sick**, you think you are going to **be sick**.

■ *I felt sick, so I ran to the bathroom. I was sick on the floor.*

### 1 Circle the correct answer.

► I'm / I've got a temperature.

1 What / What's the matter?

2 She feels / 's got a cold.

3 He doesn't feel / be well.

4 I feel / 've got toothache.

5 I've got headache / a headache.

6 Is / Has she got a temperature?

7 She's a healthy / health person.

8 I don't feel / be ill.

9 Do you feel / be sick?

10 A cold is a common / an often illness.

11 She is / 's got backache.

12 He's got flu / a flu.

13 I don't feel / haven't got a cough.

14 Does he feel / Has he got stomach ache?

### 2 Complete the sentences.

► I had to stand up for ten hours. Now I've got backache.

1 She smokes a lot, and now she's got a bad

~ Yes, and she doesn't do any exercise. She's very

2 He's got a . Look, it's 39 degrees.

3 What's the ? You look terrible.

~ I don't feel and I've got : I need to see a dentist.

4 I ate too much at lunch, and now I've got

5 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels

6 I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got

7 She's often ill. She's not in good

8 Flu is a horrible , and it's very in winter.

9 I don't think he's got flu. It's probably just a bad



### TEST YOURSELF



## B What should I do?



If you need **medical advice**, you **should** go to the **chemist's**.

Take some of those **tablets** to help you **rest** and sleep well.

You **should** **stay in bed** for a **couple of days**. You'll soon **get better**.

Have soup and hot drinks to **keep** you warm.

### SPOTLIGHT **should** + verb

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. **Should** is used for giving advice.

- I feel terrible. ~ You **should** go to bed.
- ~ You **shouldn't** go to work today.

### GLOSSARY

<b>weak</b>	If you don't eat for a few days, you feel <b>weak</b> . OPP <b>strong</b>	<b>advice</b>	words you say that help sb decide what to do
<b>catch an illness</b> <i>pt caught</i>	get an illness, e.g. a cold, a virus	<b>chemist's</b>	a shop where you get medicine <b>ALSO</b> <b>pharmacy</b>
<b>virus</b>	a living thing that is too small to see but can make you ill. Flu is caused by a <b>virus</b> .	<b>rest</b>	relax, sleep or do nothing
<b>medical</b>	connected to doctors, hospitals and medicine	<b>stay in bed</b>	go to bed and not get up
		<b>a couple</b>	two or a small number: <b>a couple of days/weeks</b> , etc.
		<b>get better</b>	feel less ill SYN <b>improve</b>
		<b>keep (warm)</b>	stay (warm)

### 3 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you.

Practise saying the words.

▶ illness / medical D

1 virus / advice

2 should / couple

3 weak / keep

4 couple / improve

5 catch / chemist's

6 advice / caught

### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ If you stay in bed, you can rest.

1 If you get better, you feel weaker.

2 A couple of weeks is about four weeks.

3 You can get tablets at the chemist's.

4 If you don't sleep for a week, you feel strong.

5 A chemist's is the same as a pharmacy.

T

6 A doctor can give you medical advice.

7 You shouldn't keep warm if you have flu.

8 If you stay in bed, you get up.

9 You shouldn't go to work if you have a virus.

10 If you start to improve, you get better.

### 5 Complete the text.

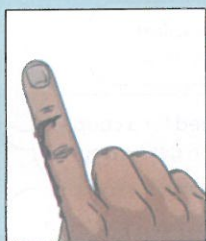
Last week, I got home from travelling around Europe and I felt really ill. I probably ▶ caught a virus on the plane. I (1) ..... in bed for a (2) ..... of days, but I didn't (3) ..... I was worried, so I phoned my doctor to get some medical (4) ..... She gave me the name of some (5) ..... and told me I (6) ..... go to the (7) ..... and get some. She also said I had to stay in bed and (8) ..... as much as possible. I had hot drinks to (9) ..... me warm. I think I'm (10) ..... better now, but I still feel quite (11) .....

Send



TEST YOURSELF

# 32 Injuries



I cut my finger and there was a lot of blood!



I fell over and now I've got a terrible pain in my leg.



My arm really hurts. I hit it on the table.



I burnt my hand when I picked up the pan.



We were in a car accident and I broke my leg – my friend also had serious injuries. We've been put on drugs for the pain.

## GLOSSARY

cut pt cut	(see picture) cut n	accident	sth bad that happens, but not because you planned it
pain (in your back, leg, etc.)	the feeling that you have in your body when you are hurt or ill	break pt broke	(see picture) broken adj a broken arm, leg, etc.
hurt pt hurt	feel pain	serious	very bad
hit pt hit	touch sth very hard	injury	A cut finger, a broken arm, etc. are injuries to your body.
burn pt burnt/ burned	(see picture)	drug	medicine you take to make you feel well again
	SYN knock		

## SPOTLIGHT injuries

We say:

- I cut my finger. (NOT I cut the finger.)
- She hurt her knee. (NOT She hurt the knee.)
- I burnt my arm. (NOT I burnt the arm.)

## 1 Complete the sentences.

- Did he break his leg in the accident?
- I hit my shoulder on the door, and it really .....
- She fell off her bike and has a small ..... on her knee.
- Dad was driving at night in the rain and had a bad .....
- I fell and hurt my ankle and the pain is terrible. I think it's probably .....
- She's in hospital and they're giving her a lot of ..... for the pain.
- Joe was in a terrible accident and had a really bad ..... to his back.
- He went to the doctor because he had a terrible ..... in his stomach.
- He had to go to hospital because he ..... his hand with a bread knife.
- She had a car accident, but she's OK and it's not .....

## 2 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

- He's got a break arm. broken
- She had a pain on her arm. ....
- He had a serious injury. ....
- I hit my head at the door. ....
- I knocked in my head on the wall. ....
- I burnt the mouth on the hot soup. ....
- She cutted her foot on the broken glass. ....
- My arm is hurt a lot. ....
- The doctor gave me some drogs for the pain. ....
- I broken a bone in my ankle. ....

## 3 Complete the questions.

- Have you ever had a ..... arm or leg?
- Have you ever taken ..... for pain?
- Do you ever have bad ..... in your back?
- When did you last cut ..... finger or hand?
- Have you ever ..... your hand when you were cooking?

## ABOUT YOU

## 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



## TEST YOURSELF



## ARE YOU GOOD at geography?



- 1 How many **islands** are there in the **world**?  
1,000 / 2,000 / 3,000
- 2 Which is the largest **desert**?  
the Gobi Desert / the Arabian Desert / the Sahara Desert
- 3 How old are the **rocks**<sup>1</sup> at the bottom of the Grand Canyon?  
half a billion / a billion / two billion years old
- 4 Which is the **deepest** ocean?  
the Atlantic Ocean / the Pacific Ocean / the Indian Ocean
- 5 Which **region** of the Earth has the largest area of **forest**?  
Siberia in Russia / the Amazon in Brazil / Quebec in Canada
- 6 Is there **anywhere** on Earth where **humans** have never walked?  
Yes, a few places. / No, **nowhere**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>island</b>	a piece of land with water all around it
<b>world</b>	the Earth with all its countries and people
<b>desert</b>	a large, dry area of land, e.g. the Sahara
<b>deep</b>	Sth that is <b>deep</b> goes down a long way.
<b>region</b>	a part of a country or the world
<b>forest</b>	a large area of land covered by trees
<b>human</b>	a person <b>human</b> <i>adj</i>

### SPOTLIGHT *somewhere, anywhere, nowhere, everywhere*

- Somewhere** means 'in or to a place', but you do not say or know where.
- They are **somewhere** in the Sahara Desert.
- Anywhere** is used in questions and negative sentences.
- Is there a house **anywhere** on the island? I can't see a house **anywhere**.
- Nowhere** means 'in no place'.
- There is **nowhere** to stay in this region.
- Everywhere** means 'in every place'.
- There are rocks **everywhere** on the beach.

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.  
Use the **key** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ rock / everywhere **D**

1 desert / anywhere

2 island / somewhere

3 world / forest

4 desert / region

5 desert / forest

6 somewhere / nowhere

7 island / human

8 human / nowhere

- 2 Write Yes or No.

▶ Is the world bigger than the sun? **No**

1 Is Sicily an island?

2 Does it rain a lot in the desert?

3 Are there trees in a forest?

4 Is a region the same as a country?

5 Are trees human?

6 Do you find rocks in the sea?

7 Is a river as deep as the middle of the sea?

8 Is everywhere the same as somewhere?

- 3 Complete the sentences with **anywhere/somewhere/nowhere/everywhere**.

▶ **Everywhere** in the world, there are good people and bad people.

1 Is there \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest where we can buy a coffee?

2 Are there any seas in the desert?

~ No, \_\_\_\_\_

3 Are there any humans on the island?

~ Yes, they live \_\_\_\_\_ in the north.

4 The rocks are \_\_\_\_\_ under the water.  
I can see hundreds of them.

5 There was \_\_\_\_\_ quiet in the forest; there were noises everywhere.

6 Ali is \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest, but I'm not sure where exactly.

7 There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ in the region where humans live.

8 The deepest river in the world is \_\_\_\_\_ in Africa, I think.

- 4 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the quiz at the top of the page, or talk to another student.



# 34 The environment

## A Environmental problems



Every year, we are **destroying** more and more forests. 15 billion trees are **disappearing** every year. As the world population **increases**, the **land** is being used to **build** cities, grow food and make furniture. This will be a **disaster** for **the environment** and will bring more **extreme** weather. **Governments** around the world need to work together to stop this disaster.

### GLOSSARY

<b>destroy</b>	break sth completely so that you can't use it again or it is gone
<b>disappear</b>	If sth <b>disappears</b> , it goes away so that people can't see it.
<b>increase</b>	become bigger or more <b>increase</b> <i>n</i>
<b>land</b>	the part of the Earth that is not the sea
<b>build</b> <i>pt/pp built</i>	make sth by putting parts together: <b>build</b> houses
<b>disaster</b>	sth very bad that happens, and may hurt a lot of people
<b>the environment</b>	the air, water, land, animals, and plants around us <b>environmental</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>extreme</b>	very great or strong
<b>government</b>	<b>The government</b> is the group of people who control a country and decide what laws it will have.

### 1 Underline the stressed syllable. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ to increase                      2 disaster                      4 disappear  
1 government                      3 environment                      5 destroy

### 2 Circle the correct word.

▶ Extreme weather is a disaster / land for growing food.

- 1 The number of people in the world is **destroying** / **increasing**.  
2 Forests around the world are **building** / **disappearing**.  
3 The **government** / **environment** has to do something quickly.  
4 We need to **build** / **destroy** more cities for people to live in.  
5 Unfortunately, we are **increasing** / **destroying** more forests every year.  
6 People need **land** / **the environment** to build houses on.

### 3 Cover the glossary and complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you make something like a house or factory, you build it.  
1 If something gets bigger, it .....  
2 The people who are in control of a country are the .....  
3 Something very bad that happens and hurts people is a .....  
4 The place where people build homes or grow food is the .....  
5 The water, air, land, animals and plants are all the .....  
6 If something goes away and you can't see it any more, it .....  
7 If you break something and can't use it again, you ..... it.  
8 In the desert, you can have ..... heat and cold.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Talking about the environment



coal



petrol



electricity



gas

Word	Example	Meaning
source	<i>The forests are a <b>source</b> of wood.</i>	a place, person or thing that you get sth from
energy	<i>Coal, petrol, gas and electricity are all <b>sources</b> of <b>energy</b>.</i>	<b>Energy</b> comes from <i>gas, electricity, coal, petrol</i> , etc. and is used to make machines work and to make heat and light.
develop	<i>Scientists are <b>developing</b> cleaner ways to use coal.</i>	think of or produce a new idea or product, etc.
pollution	<i>There is a lot of <b>pollution</b> in rivers and oceans.</i>	the act of making the air, rivers, etc. dirty and dangerous
cause	<i>What is the <b>cause</b> of the oceans getting warmer?</i>	the thing or person that makes sth happen <b>cause v</b>
recycle	<i>If we <b>recycle</b> more, we help the environment because we don't make so many products from new materials.</i>	do sth to paper, glass, etc. so that they can be used again

### 4 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- polution pollution  
 1 recicle .....  
 2 energie .....

- 3 gaz .....  
 4 cole .....  
 5 petrole .....

- 6 elektricity .....  
 7 develope .....  
 8 cuase .....

### 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- You can't see electricity. T  
 1 Pollution is a good thing. ....  
 2 Smoking cigarettes causes illness. ....  
 3 If you recycle something, you use it again. ....  
 4 Coal is black and hard. ....  
 5 You can see gas. ....

- 6 You put petrol in cars. ....  
 7 If you develop something, you destroy it. ....  
 8 We use coal to get energy. ....  
 9 Pollution is good for fish and animals. ....  
 10 Humans are one cause of pollution. ....

### 6 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- We should recycle e  
 1 Gas is a .....  
 2 We need to develop .....  
 3 We use electricity .....  
 4 Pollution is the cause .....  
 5 Coal is used to .....  
 6 Petrol in cars causes .....

- a of serious illness.  
 b a lot of pollution.  
 c make a fire.  
 d new types of energy.  
 e more bottles. ✓  
 f source of energy.  
 g to keep our houses warm.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 In your home, what type of energy do you use? .....  
 2 In your country, which is more expensive: gas, electricity or coal? .....  
 3 Is there a lot of air pollution where you live? .....  
 4 What causes pollution in your home town? .....  
 5 Do you recycle a lot? If so, what do you recycle? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 35 Countries and nationalities

Where are you from?

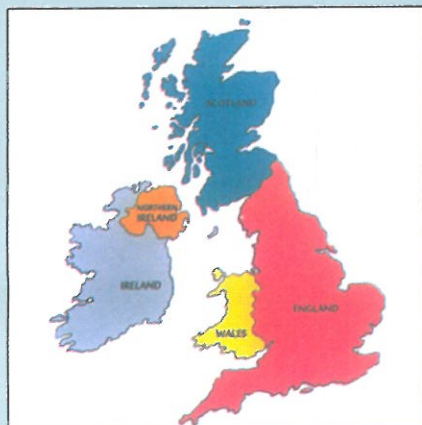
Where do you come from?

Continents and areas in the world	Country <i>I'm from / I come from ...</i>	Nationality (and language) <i>I'm ...</i>
Europe	the Czech Republic	Czech
	France	French
	Germany	German
	Greece	Greek
	Hungary	Hungarian
	Italy	Italian
	Poland	Polish
	Portugal	Portuguese
	Russia	Russian
	Spain	Spanish
	Switzerland	Swiss (German, French, Italian)
Asia	Turkey	Turkish
	India	Indian (Hindi)
	China	Chinese
	Japan	Japanese
	South Korea	Korean
North America	Thailand	Thai
	Canada	Canadian (English, French)
Central America ALSO Latin America	the United States (of America)	American (English)
	Mexico	Mexican (Spanish)
South America ALSO Latin America	Argentina	Argentinian (Spanish)
	Brazil	Brazilian (Portuguese)
Africa and the Middle East	Egypt	Egyptian (Arabic)
	Saudi Arabia	Saudi (Arabic)
Australia	Australia	Australian (English)

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same word, e.g. *Czech*.

*Jana is Czech. Do you speak Czech?*

Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from *Mexico* are *Mexican*, but the language they speak is *Spanish*. Countries, nationalities and languages begin with capital letters: *Japan* (NOT *japan*).



## GLOSSARY

country	e.g. <i>France, China, Brazil</i>
nationality	e.g. <i>American, Swiss, French</i>
language	e.g. <i>German, Japanese, Arabic</i>
continent	e.g. <i>Asia, Europe, Africa</i>
(Great) Britain	= <i>England, Wales and Scotland</i>
the United Kingdom / the UK	= <i>England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland</i>

## SPOTLIGHT people from a country

To talk about people from a country, we often add *s* to the nationality.

■ *Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks*

Some plural forms are irregular.

■ *The British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss*



1 **Underline the stressed syllable for the nationalities. Use the app to help you. Practise saying the words.**

- Poland / Polish  
1 China / Chinese  
2 Hungary / Hungarian  
3 Germany / German  
4 Italy / Italian  
5 Portugal / Portuguese  
6 Japan / Japanese  
7 Canada / Canadian  
8 Korea / Korean  
8 Egypt / Egyptian

2 **True or false? Write T or F.**

- Argentinians speak Spanish T  
1 Saudis speak Arabic.  
2 Mexicans speak Spanish.  
3 Thais speak Japanese.  
4 Hungarians speak Hungarian.  
5 Australians speak Australian.  
6 Brazilians speak Portuguese.  
7 Americans speak English.  
8 The Swiss speak French, Spanish or German.

3 **Complete the sentences.**

- Northern Ireland is in the UK.  
1 Scotland is in Great Britain.  
2 Hungary is in Central Europe.  
3 Mexico is in North America.  
4 Africa is a continent.  
5 Argentina is in South America.  
6 Egypt is in North Africa.  
7 Saudi Arabia is in the Middle East.  
8 India is in South Asia.  
9 Asia is a continent.

4 **Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with CAPITAL LETTERS. Then write C (country) or N (nationality) next to each one.**

- S audi N  
1 Italy C  
2 Hungary C  
3 Mexico C  
4 Swiss C  
5 China C  
6 British C  
7 Czech C  
8 Egyptian C  
9 Spanish C  
10 Brazilian C  
11 Greek C  
12 French C  
13 German C  
14 Russian C  
15 Argentinian C  
16 Portuguese C

5 **Complete the text.**

My name's Magda, and I'm studying ► English in London at the moment. I'm from (1) Poland, and I live with two students: Silvia, who's (2) British, and Irina who's from (3) Russia. Irina speaks (4) Russian and (5) Polish. We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two (6) Japanese students, a (7) Korean man, three (8) Turkish women, a young (9) Italian girl, a (10) Chinese boy and four students from (11) Spain. Our teacher is Dennis, and he's (12) Australian.

6 **Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.**

-ian	-ish	-an	-ese
► Italian			

7 **ABOUT YOU** Do you know people from any of these countries? Put a (✓) next to the country if you do. If possible, tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

# 36 My country

## A Geography

Brazil is **enormous**. The Atlantic Ocean<sup>1</sup> is in the **east**. The **coast**<sup>2</sup> is 3,000 **kilometres long**. In the **north, south and west**, there are **borders**<sup>3</sup> with ten different countries. The longest **river**<sup>4</sup> is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 metres **high**: it's the **highest mountain**<sup>5</sup> in Brazil. Many of the **major** cities are **on the coast**, but not the **capital**, Brasilia. The most **famous** city is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugarloaf Mountain and Corcovada, plus some great **beaches**, like Copacabana. It is very **popular** with tourists.



### GLOSSARY

<b>enormous</b>	very big SYN huge
3,000 <b>kilometres (km) long</b>	3,000 km from one end to the other
3,000 <b>metres (m) high</b>	3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is <b>high</b> , NOT <b>tall</b> )
<b>major</b>	large and important

<b>capital</b>	a city where a country has its government
<b>famous</b>	If sth is <b>famous</b> , many people know about it: <i>Rio is famous for Carnival.</i>
<b>beach</b>	an area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana
<b>popular</b>	If sth is <b>popular</b> , many people like it.

### 1 Study the map of Brazil and the text, then complete the sentences.

- Brasilia is the capital.
- 1 The Amazon is the longest .....
- 2 Pico de Neblina is the highest .....
- 3 Porto Alegre is on the .....
- 4 Pico de Neblina is 3,000 m .....
- 5 The Amazon is nearly 7,000 km .....
- 6 There's a ..... between Brazil and Argentina.
- 7 The Atlantic ..... is on the ..... coast.
- 8 Sao Paulo is a ..... city.
- 9 The Amazon is in the ..... of Brazil.
- 10 Brazil is an ..... country.
- 11 Rio's beaches are ..... with tourists.

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is Porto Alegre a small place? ~ No, it's a major city.
- 1 Is Iguape .....? ~ No, most people don't know about it.
- 2 China's enormous. ~ Yes, it's ....., isn't it?
- 3 Is California on the east coast? ~ No, it's on the ..... coast.
- 4 Is New York in the south? ~ No, it's in the ..... of the USA.
- 5 Is the Pacific a sea? ~ No, it's an .....
- 6 How ..... is the Nile? ~ It's 6,853 kilometres .....
- 7 Is Copacabana the capital? ~ No, it's a famous .....
- 8 Do people go there a lot? ~ Yes, it's very .....

### 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What's the capital, and where is it? .....
- 2 What are some of the other major cities? .....
- 3 Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they? .....
- 4 What's the longest river? .....
- 5 What's the highest mountain? .....
- 6 Which are the most famous places in your country? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Weather in the seasons



hot

warm  
cool

cold

### GLOSSARY

<b>change</b>	become sth different
<b>all the time</b>	always or very often
<b>dry</b>	with no rain <b>OPP wet</b>
<b>shower</b>	a short period of rain
<b>suddenly</b>	quickly and often in a very surprising way
<b>storm</b>	(see picture)
<b>better (than)</b>	comparative form of <b>good</b> (here = nicer) <b>OPP worse (than)</b> : <i>The weather here is quite good, but the weather in the south is <b>better</b>.</i>
<b>strong winds</b>	A 50 kph wind is a <b>strong wind</b> .
<b>heavy rain</b>	a lot of rain
<b>sky</b>	the sky is above you when you look up into the air; <b>clear skies</b> are blue with no clouds in them
<b>extremely</b>	very

In my country, the weather in spring **changes all the time**. It can be **dry** and **warm**, but we often have **showers**. It can get very hot in the cities in summer and then **suddenly** we have a **storm**. It's a lot **better** on the coast, where it's cooler. In autumn, we have **strong winds** and **heavy rain**. Winter brings clear skies and sunny days, but it's **extremely** cold.

### 4 Circle the correct word.

► Warm weather is very nice / uncomfortable.

1 It was very sunny between the *showers* / *storm*.

2 *Suddenly* / *Extremely*, it started raining.

3 The sky is very *warm* / *clear* this morning.

4 Showers usually last a few *hours* / *minutes*.

5 We had some very *big* / *strong* winds last night.

6 The weather *changes* / *rains* all the time.

### 5 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right and the word IN CAPITALS.

► It's wet outside.

RAIN It's raining outside.

1 It rained a lot last night.

HEAVY There was

2 The weather here isn't as good as Spain. BETTER The weather in Spain

3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. SHOWER There

4 The weather's different every day. CHANGE The weather

5 It isn't wet today.

DRY It

6 We had heavy rain and strong winds. STORM We had

7 There are no clouds in the sky. CLEAR There are

8 There's snow every day in winter. ALL THE TIME It

### 6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Does your country have ...

► storms in summer? We often have storms in summer.

1 a lot of showers in spring?

2 much snow?

3 good weather in summer?

4 dry winters?

5 heavy rain in spring?

6 strong winds?



### TEST YOURSELF



## A What's the weather like?



It's sunny. The sun's shining. It's a bright day.



It's cloudy. There are a lot of grey clouds.



It's raining. The roads are wet. There's a lot of rain.



It's windy. The wind is blowing. *pt* blew



There's snow on the mountains and ice on the river. *icy adj*

### SPOTLIGHT *a lot (of)* and *a bit (of)*

**a lot of / a bit of + noun**    **verb + a lot / a bit**    **a bit + adjective**  
 ■ We had **a lot of** rain.    ■ It snowed **a lot**.    ■ It's **a bit** cold today.  
 ■ There's **a bit of** snow.    ■ It's raining **a bit**.    ■ It was **a bit** windy.  
 We don't usually use **a bit** with positive adjectives: NOT ~~a bit~~ sunny/good.

### 1 Match 1-9 with a-j.

- ▶ It's ..... *d*
- 1 It ..... ..
- 2 The wind ..... ..
- 3 It isn't ..... ..
- 4 The sun ..... ..
- 5 Is ..... ..
- 6 There's a bit ..... ..
- 7 There are lots of ..... ..
- 8 It doesn't ..... ..
- 9 What's ..... ..

- a clouds in the sky today.
- b it bright and sunny outside?
- c isn't raining.
- d cold this morning. ✓
- e of snow on the roads.
- f rain a lot here.
- g the weather like?
- h very windy.
- i blew my hat off.
- j is shining.

### 2 Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning.

- ▶ There was a lot of rain. It rained a lot .....
- 1 It isn't wet outside. It isn't ..... .
- 2 Is the sun shining? Is it ..... ?
- 3 We often have snow. It often ..... .
- 4 She doesn't like wind. She doesn't like ..... weather.

- 5 Is it hot or cold today? What's the ..... like?
- 6 There are a few clouds. It's a bit ..... .
- 7 Is there any ice on the roads? Is it ..... ?
- 8 It's windy today. The wind is ..... today.

### 3 Write *a lot*, *a lot of*, *a bit* or *a bit of*.

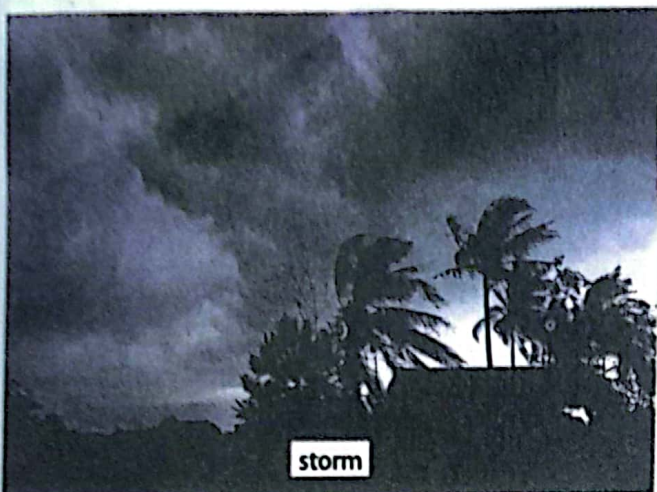
- ▶ We had a lot of ..... rain this morning, but it's good for the garden.
- 1 It's ..... wet today.
- 2 There was ..... wind this morning. I couldn't use my umbrella.
- 3 It snows ..... in the mountains – sometimes over twenty centimetres a day.
- 4 There's ..... rain, but not much. You don't need your umbrella.
- 5 It snowed ..... last night – only two centimetres.
- 6 It rained ..... yesterday – I couldn't go out.
- 7 It's not a bad day. It's ..... cloudy but with some sun.
- 8 Don't go out in your car. There's ..... ice on the roads.



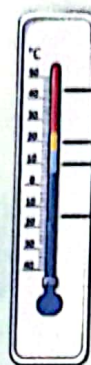
### TEST YOURSELF



## B Weather in the seasons



In my country, the weather in spring **changes** all the time. It can be **dry** and **warm**, but we often have **showers**. It can get very hot in the cities in summer and then **suddenly** we have a **storm**. It's a lot **better** on the coast, where it's cooler. In autumn, we have **strong winds** and **heavy rain**. Winter brings clear skies and sunny days, but it's **extremely** cold.



hot

warm  
cool

cold

### GLOSSARY

<b>change</b>	become sth different
<b>all the time</b>	always or very often
<b>dry</b>	with no rain <b>OPP</b> <b>wet</b>
<b>shower</b>	a short period of rain
<b>suddenly</b>	quickly and often in a very surprising way
<b>storm</b>	(see picture)
<b>better (than)</b>	comparative form of <b>good</b> (here = nicer) <b>OPP</b> <b>worse (than)</b> : The weather here is quite good, but the weather in the south is <b>better</b> .
<b>strong winds</b>	A 50 kph wind is a <b>strong</b> wind.
<b>heavy rain</b>	a lot of rain
<b>sky</b>	the sky is above you when you look up into the air; <b>clear skies</b> are blue with no clouds in them
<b>extremely</b>	very

### 4 Circle the correct word.

► Warm weather is very nice / uncomfortable.

1 It was very sunny between the **showers** / **storm**.

2 **Suddenly** / **Extremely**, it started raining.

3 The sky is very **warm** / **clear** this morning.

4 Showers usually last a few **hours** / **minutes**.

5 We had some very **big** / **strong** winds last night.

6 The weather **changes** / **rains** all the time.

### 5 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right and the word IN CAPITALS.

► It's wet outside.

RAIN It's raining outside.

1 It rained a lot last night.

HEAVY There was .....

2 The weather here isn't as good as Spain. **BETTER** The weather in Spain .....

3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. **SHOWER** There .....

4 The weather's different every day. **CHANGE** The weather .....

5 It isn't wet today.

DRY It .....

6 We had heavy rain and strong winds. **STORM** We had .....

7 There are no clouds in the sky. **CLEAR** There are .....

8 There's snow every day in winter. **ALL THE TIME** It .....

### 6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Does your country have ...

► storms in summer? We often have storms in summer.

1 a lot of showers in spring? .....

2 much snow? .....

3 good weather in summer? .....

4 dry winters? .....

5 heavy rain in spring? .....

6 strong winds? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



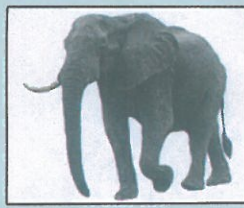
## 38 Animals, insects and birds



lion



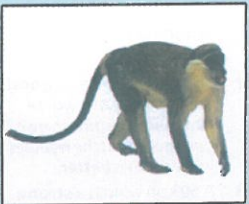
tiger



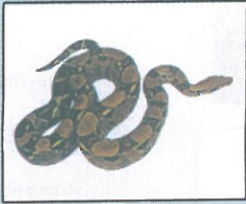
elephant



bear



monkey



snake



whale



bird



horse



cow



sheep (p/ sheep)



pig



dog



cat



mouse (p/ mice)



spider



fly



bee

wing

### GLOSSARY

<b>animal</b>	any living thing that can move or feel. <b>Animal</b> is sometimes used to talk only about <i>cats, dogs, cows, etc.</i> and not about <i>people, birds, fish or insects</i> .
<b>wild animal</b>	A <b>wild animal</b> lives in nature, not with people, e.g. <i>a lion or an elephant</i> .
<b>pet</b>	an animal or bird that lives with people in their home. <i>Dogs and cats</i> are common <b>pets</b> in Britain.
<b>insect</b>	a small animal with six legs and usually wings, e.g. <i>a bee, a fly</i>
<b>zoo</b>	(sounds like <i>you</i> ) a place, often in or near a town, where people can go and look at wild animals
<b>farm</b>	land and buildings where people keep animals and grow things. The person who does this is a <b>farmer</b> . <i>Pigs and cows</i> are <b>farm</b> animals.

### SPOTLIGHT *both*

**Both** means 'each of two'.

- *Dogs and cats are **both** common in England.* (= Dogs are common and cats are also common in England.)
- *Do lions swim? Yes, and tigers. They can **both** swim.*
- *Do you like cows and sheep? Yes, I like **both of them**.*



1 Write the names of these animals and insects in order from big to small.

bear cat fly whale ✓ monkey sheep elephant lion mouse  
big whale small

2 Put the animals in the correct column.

PETS	FARM ANIMALS	INSECTS	WILD ANIMALS
	▶ sheep		

3 Think about the pronunciation of the underlined letters, then answer the questions.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ Is cow the same as now or know? now  
1 Is both the same as most or dog?  
2 Is tiger the same as sit or lion?  
3 Is snake the same as back or whale?  
4 Is monkey the same as son or gone?  
5 Is bear the same as hair or hear?  
6 Is elephant the same as cat or tiger?  
7 Is spider the same as wild or miss?

4 Complete each sentence with one word.

- ▶ Lions and tigers can both swim.  
1 Dogs usually live with .....  
2 People often sit on .....  
3 Whales live in the .....  
4 Birds often eat .....  
5 Birds and bees can both .....  
6 Cats sometimes catch and eat .....  
7 Pigs live on .....  
8 People often see wild animals in a .....  
9 Flies have two .....

5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Elephants are one of the biggest animals in the world.  
1 Are dogs and cats common ..... in your country?  
2 My uncle is a ..... He has a ..... with over 500 sheep and cows.  
3 You can see lots of ..... animals in parts of Africa.  
4 Did you see a lion or tiger at the zoo? Yes, I saw ..... of them.  
5 A spider is not an ..... because it has eight legs.  
6 I've seen wild animals in the ..... near where I live.  
7 The bird had a problem with one of its ..... and it couldn't fly.  
8 I often go to the zoo with my brother: we ..... like wild animals.

6 Which animal(s) or insect(s) has/have:

- ▶ eight legs? spider  
1 four legs? .....  
2 two legs? .....  
3 six legs? .....  
4 no legs? .....

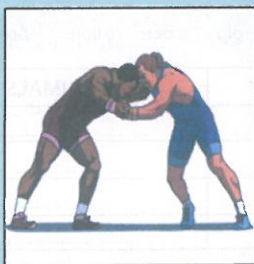
7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you have any pets? If so, what? .....  
2 Have you ever seen wild animals (not on TV)? If so, where? .....  
3 Are you afraid of any animals or insects? .....  
4 What animals are usually used as farm animals in your country? .....  
5 Do people often go to zoos in your country? What do you think about zoos? .....  
6 Is there an animal or insect on the opposite page that you especially like or dislike? .....



## 39 Irregular verbs

Here are some common irregular verbs in English, which follow similar patterns. They are all taught in different parts of the book, so use the Word List or APP to help you if necessary. A more complete list is on page 198.



fight



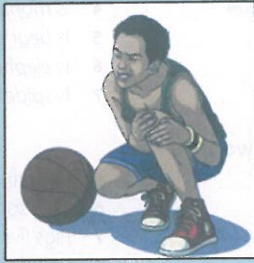
ring



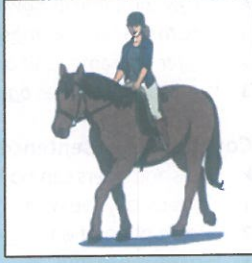
build



hold



hurt



ride

pt/pp -a/-u	pt/pp – one vowel change	pt/pp -o/-en
sing/sang/sung	get/got/got	write/wrote/written
swim/swam/swum	forget/forgot/forgotten	drive/drove/driven
ring/rang/rung	sit/sat/sat	ride/rode/ridden
drink/drank/drunk	come/came/come	break/broke/broken
begin/began/begun	hold/held/held	speak/spoke/spoken
run/ran/run	fall/fell/fallen	wake (up)/woke/woken
	win/won/won	

pt/pp -ought/-ought	pt/pp -t	pt/pp – no change
bring/brought/brought	lend/lent/lent	put/put/put
think/thought/thought	send/sent/sent	cut/cut/cut
buy/bought/bought	spend/spent/spent	hurt/hurt/hurt
fight/fought/fought	build/built/built	cost/cost/cost
<b>pt/pp -aught/-aught</b>	spell/spelt/spelt ALSO spelled	shut/shut/shut
catch/caught/caught	lose/lost/lost	let/let/let
teach/taught/taught	burn/burnt/burnt ALSO burned	hit/hit/hit

### SPOTLIGHT *ever*

We often use **ever** (= any time before now) in questions in the present perfect (*has/have + past participle*).

- Have you **ever** bought a car? ~ No, I haven't. OR No, I've never bought one.
- Has your sister **ever** written a blog? ~ Yes, she has. (NOT Yes, she ~~ever~~ has.)



1 Cover the left-hand page, then write the past tense of the verbs.

- |                  |               |                |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| ▶ sit <u>sat</u> | 5 buy _____   | 10 hold _____  |
| 1 teach _____    | 6 sing _____  | 11 spell _____ |
| 2 put _____      | 7 spend _____ | 12 ring _____  |
| 3 let _____      | 8 drive _____ | 13 sit _____   |
| 4 bring _____    | 9 speak _____ | 14 burn _____  |

2 For each question, which two verbs ...

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| ▶ don't change in the past tense?                     | hurt / fight / shut |
| 1 change <i>i</i> to <i>a</i> in the past tense?      | swim / begin / hit  |
| 2 change <i>i</i> to <i>o</i> in the past tense?      | write / sit / drive |
| 3 change to <b>-ought</b> in the past tense?          | buy / catch / think |
| 4 change from <i>d</i> to <i>t</i> in the past tense? | hold / send / build |
| 5 don't change in the past tense?                     | put / forget / cut  |
| 6 have one vowel change in the past tense?            | get / fall / cost   |

3 Answer the questions using the same verb in the past tense.

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| ▶ What did Olivia sing?                | ~ She <u>sang a pop song</u> |
| 1 How far did you swim?                | ~ I _____                    |
| 2 What did the teacher forget?         | ~ He _____                   |
| 3 What did Ava send?                   | ~ She _____                  |
| 4 What did Mason lend you?             | ~ He _____                   |
| 5 Where did your sister put the books? | ~ She _____                  |
| 6 Where did Liam fall?                 | ~ He _____                   |
| 7 How much money did Isabella lose?    | ~ She _____                  |
| 8 How far did the children run?        | ~ They _____                 |

4 Complete the sentences with verbs in the past tense from page 82.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ▶ My sister <u>taught</u> _____ in a school for five years.                   | 7 This book only _____ £3.99.  |
| 1 I _____ across the river.   | 8 The children _____ home at 10.00 and went to bed.                      |
| 2 My dad _____ a fish in the lake last week.                                  | 9 Darius _____ me early this morning to tell me the good news.           |
| 3 I _____ the horse, and Ben _____ his bike.                                  | 10 I went shopping and _____ a pair of shoes.                            |
| 4 When Esther _____ her finger, she said it really _____.                     | 11 Martina _____ her new Italian course yesterday and really enjoyed it. |
| 5 My grandmother _____ a car until she was 90.                                | 12 I _____ at 6 a.m. because I had to get up early.                      |
| 6 I _____ an email to my aunt last week to thank her for my birthday present. |  |

5 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions with the past participle of verbs from page 82. Then answer the questions about you.

Have you ever ...

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| ▶ <u>got</u> _____ ill from eating eggs?      | <u>No, I haven't</u> |
| 1 _____ a very fast car?                      | _____                |
| 2 _____ a horse?                              | _____                |
| 3 _____ your own hair?                        | _____                |
| 4 _____ a large amount of money?              | _____                |
| 5 _____ to a famous person? What did you say? | _____                |
| 6 _____ somebody because you were very angry? | _____                |
| 7 _____ a bone in your body?                  | _____                |
| 8 _____ from a tree?                          | _____                |



TEST YOURSELF

# 40 have got and have

## A have got and have



My brother **has got** a small car.



His wife **has got** a large motorbike.



They **'ve got** two daughters.



The girls **haven't got** boyfriends yet.

### SPOTLIGHT have got and have

You can use **have got** or **have** to talk about something that is yours (= belongs to you). You can also use **have (got)** to describe illness, relationships and appearance. **Have got** is the usual form in spoken British English.

■ **Have you got a car?** ~ Yes, I **have**. (NOT Yes, I have got.)

OR

■ **Do you have a car?** ~ Yes, I **do**.

### 1 Change have to the correct form of have got in each sentence.

► I have an old car.

I've got an old car.

1 She has blue eyes.

2 They have a small dog.

3 I don't have a smartphone.

4 He doesn't have any money.

5 Do you have any sisters?

6 Does she have a flat in town?

7 They don't have a shop now.

8 Do they have a big office?

### 2 Correct the mistakes.

► He have a car.

He's got a car. OR He has a car.

1 She got any children?

2 They has got a lovely garden.

3 Have she got long hair?

4 My sister no have a boyfriend.

5 Have you a computer?

6 We don't got any friends here.

### 3 Complete the questions.

► Have you got a car? If so, what kind?

1 Have you a bike? If so, when do you use it?

2 you have a computer? If so, what kind?

3 your parents got a dog? If so, what's its name?

4 your parents have a house in the country? If so, where?

5 you got an English dictionary? If so, what's it called?

6 you have any English-speaking friends? If so, who are they?

### ABOUT YOU

Yes, I have. It's a Ford.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF



## B have + noun

We use **have + noun** (NOT ~~have got~~) in a number of common expressions in English.

have a wash/shower/bath (NOT <del>have got a wash</del> , etc.)	I had a quick shower before I left.
have breakfast/lunch/dinner (NOT <del>the breakfast</del> , etc.)	We had lunch in a pizzeria.
have a drink/sth to eat	I had a drink with Leo last night. Let's have something to eat.
have a swim/walk/run (activities you do because you enjoy them)	I didn't have a run this morning. We had a nice walk yesterday.
have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day	We had a great time in Kyoto.
have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey	Have a nice weekend! Have a good journey.
have a look (at sth) look at sth to see it closely or read it	Can I have a look at your camera?
have a break stop working for a short period and relax	OK, let's have a break for 10 minutes.
have a rest relax and do nothing	I had a rest in the afternoon.

5 Cover the table above. Make four more groups of phrases with **have** from the words below.

Cover the table above. Make four more groups of phrases with have						
swim shower	breakfast weekend	holiday break ✓	bath dinner	journey walk	rest ✓ wash	lunch run
GROUP 1	GROUP 2	GROUP 3	GROUP 4	GROUP 5		
rest break						

6 Complete the email.

Dear Carla,

We're having a great ▶ time here in Parati. The hotel's nice, and we've got a lovely view of an old church from our room. Yesterday we had a (1) ..... round the town and bought a few things. In the evening, we had a (2) ..... in the bar you recommended. Afterwards, we had (3) ..... in a very nice fish restaurant. We're going to spend this morning on the beach so I can have a (4) ..... in the sea, then maybe do some more shopping this afternoon. I think we'll have a (5) ..... after that. I hope you're enjoying yourself in Rio, and have a good (6) ..... back to Buenos Aires on Saturday. See you in two weeks' time.

Love, Nicky

Send

7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I got up late and didn't have any breakfast.
- Would you like to have something to ..... ? We've got lots of food.
  - We often have a ..... after lunch – along the river or in the park.
  - We have a twenty-minute ..... between the lessons.
  - I want to have a ..... round town this afternoon, maybe buy a few things.
  - Did you have a good ..... in London yesterday?
  - Have a nice ..... See you on Monday.
  - They had a fantastic ..... in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
  - I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a .....



TEST YOURSELF

Language section :



# 41) make or do

## A make and do: general differences

Here are two common meanings of **make**:

### 1 produce or create sth:

*The factory makes cars.*  
*I'm making a cake for Tom's birthday.*  
*This shirt is made of cotton.*



### 2 produce a change in sb or sth:

*Chocolate makes you fat.*  
*Romantic films sometimes make me cry.*  
*The book made them laugh.*



Here are two common meanings of **do** as an ordinary verb (not an auxiliary verb):

### 1 used about activities:

*What are you doing this evening?*  
*I didn't do much at the weekend.*



### 2 have a job, or study sth:

*What do you do?*  
*~ I'm a doctor.*  
*I want to do medicine at university.*



### 1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- ▶ did / what / do / yesterday / you What did you do yesterday
- 1 does / his / wife / do / what .....
- 2 makes / his / software / company / programs .....
- 3 make / does / you / why / English / tired .....
- 4 school / Spanish / to / I / next / want / year / do / at .....
- 5 is / jumper / of / made / this / wool .....
- 6 you / night / did / do / what / last .....

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of **do** or **make**.

- ▶ The long walk made the children tired.
- 1 These shoes are ..... of leather.
- 2 She doesn't work at the bank any more. ~ Oh. What does she ..... now?
- 3 Matthew wants to ..... law when he goes to university.
- 4 Flying ..... me nervous.
- 5 I've just ..... sandwiches for lunch. Is that OK?
- 6 Cheese is ..... from milk.
- 7 What are you going to ..... next year?
- 8 My nephew wants to ..... a film about his school.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What kinds of things are made in your country? .....
- 2 Do you ever make things for other people, e.g. clothes? .....
- 3 Do films or music ever make you cry? .....
- 4 What subjects did you do at school? (or are you doing at school?) .....
- 5 What are you doing this evening? .....
- 6 What did you do last weekend? .....

### 4 Look at the example sentences at the top of the page. How would you translate **make** and **do** in each sentence? If possible, talk to somebody who speaks your own language.



TEST YOURSELF



## B Do or make?

Both **do** and **make** are used with a number of nouns with the meaning 'perform an action'.

do + action:	make + action:
your best	the bed
exercise [U] (in the gym)	a decision
exercises (in class)	a mistake
the housework [U]	money
your homework [U]	a noise
the shopping	sense



do exercise



do the housework



do your homework

### GLOSSARY

do your best	do all that you can: <i>I may not finish the work today, but I'll <b>do my best</b>.</i>
make a decision	choose what you want to do
make money	get money, often from work: <i>She <b>made</b> a lot of <b>money</b> when she worked in America.</i>
make a noise	make a sound, especially one that is loud and not nice
make sense	be possible to understand: <i>This sentence doesn't <b>make sense</b>.</i>

### 5 Underline the correct verb.

- ▶ I always try to do / make my best.
- 1 Have you done / made the shopping?
- 2 I make / do most of the housework at the weekend.
- 3 Don't become a teacher if you want to do / make a lot of money.
- 4 The children did / made a lot of noise last night.
- 5 We did / made a couple of grammar exercises in class.
- 6 Mia did / made a terrible mistake in her essay.
- 7 This exercise doesn't do / make sense.
- 8 I have to do / make a decision soon about the flat.

### 6 Match 1-5 with a-f.

- |                   |       |                                      |
|-------------------|-------|--------------------------------------|
| ▶ do exercise     | d     | a try as much as you can             |
| 1 make sense      | ..... | b buy food                           |
| 2 make a mistake  | ..... | c choose what you want to do         |
| 3 do the shopping | ..... | d move your body to keep it strong ✓ |
| 4 do your best    | ..... | e be possible to understand          |
| 5 make a decision | ..... | f do something wrong                 |

### 7 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions.

- ▶ Do you do ..... many written exercises in class? No, we usually do written exercises for homework.
- 1 Do you ..... your own bed? .....
- 2 Do you often ..... mistakes with English? .....
- 3 Do your neighbours often ..... a lot of noise? .....
- 4 Do you ..... much housework? .....
- 5 Do you often ..... the shopping? .....
- 6 Is it important for you to ..... a lot of money? .....
- 7 Do you always try to ..... your best? .....

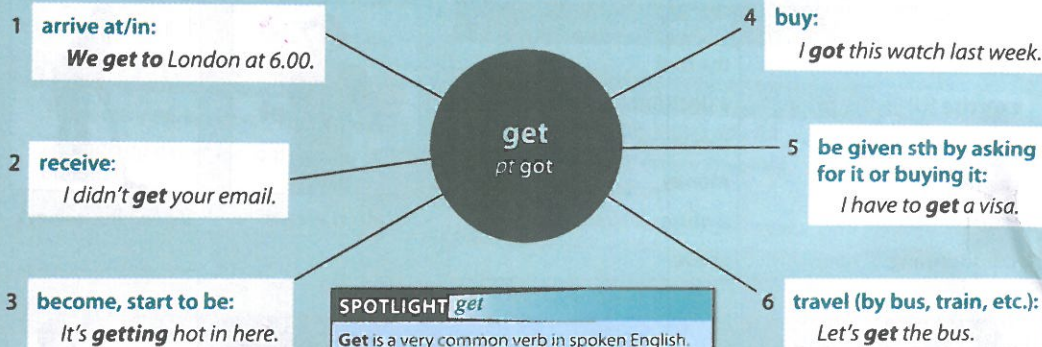
### 8 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student. If possible, also explain why / why not in your answers.



#### TEST YOURSELF



# 42) get



**SPOTLIGHT** *get*  
Get is a very common verb in spoken English. It has many meanings, and you need to write down new examples when you meet them. We don't usually use it in formal written English.

## 1 In column 2, rewrite each sentence with the correct form of get.

▶ I must buy some new clothes.	I must <u>get</u> some new clothes.	buy
1 Did you receive my message?		
2 He becomes angry if you're late.		
3 We arrived home late last night.		
4 It's becoming cold.		
5 I received three letters today.		
6 Where did you buy that bag?		
7 He needs to be given a job.		
8 Do you want to travel by train?		

## 2 Cover sentences 1–8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does get mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.

▶ I must get some new clothes. buy

## 3 Complete the sentences in a logical way using get.

- ▶ There weren't any buses, so we got the train.
- 1 Could you close the window? It's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 What time did you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Those shoes are lovely. Where did you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 Do you want to walk or \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 I need a map of the town. Where can I \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 She sent me an email but I didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 I must go now, it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 Tom worked hard for his maths and he \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 How many text messages do you \_\_\_\_\_?

## 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- ▶ What time do you get home from work/college/school? I get home from school at 5 o'clock each day.
- 1 How often do you get the bus? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 How cold does it get in your country? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 How many texts do you get every day? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What was the last new item of clothing you got? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Where can you get information about your town/city? \_\_\_\_\_



TEST YOURSELF



- 1 know or notice sth with your eyes:  
*Can you **see** that church over there?*



- 2 find out about sth by looking, asking, etc:  
*I'll **see** what time the train leaves.*



- 3 visit or spend time with sb:  
*I went to **see** my parents at the weekend.*



- 4 watch a film / TV programme / game:  
*I **saw** a film at the cinema.*



- 5 understand sth:  
*Do you **see** what I mean?*



**see**  
pt saw pp seen

#### SPOTLIGHT **see and watch**

When you **see** something, you know about it with your eyes.

- Can you **see** that bird in the tree? (NOT **watch**)

When you **watch** something, you look at it for a long time.

- We **watched** a spider for about 15 minutes. (NOT **saw**)

You can **see** or **watch** a film, TV programme or game.

- I **saw/watched** a football match in the park yesterday.

### 1 Write down the meaning (1-5) of **see** in each of the sentences.

- ▶ I saw them at the show last night.

1 I can't see the road from here.

2 Martin wants to see if he can buy tickets for the concert.

3 I want to see the new Spielberg film.

4 We're going to see friends this evening.

5 I may go, but it depends on the weather. ~ OK. I see.

6 It was so dark I couldn't see.

7 Did you see the news on TV?

8 I can't see why he wants to leave his job.

### 2 Underline the correct verb. Be careful: both verbs are correct in two of the sentences.

- ▶ Come and see / watch us for coffee next week.

1 I looked for Will, but I couldn't see / watch him.

2 The police know where the criminal lives, so they're going to see / watch his house.

3 Did you see / watch that new detective series on TV?

4 I must see / watch how much the tickets cost.

5 I have to see / watch the children carefully when they're in the street.

6 When are you going to see / watch the doctor?

7 I saw / watched in the paper that they're building a new theatre.

8 We saw / watched a great basketball game on Saturday.

### 3 Complete the questions with the correct form of **see** or **watch** or **either**.

- ▶ Can you see any trees from where you live?

1 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ very well without glasses? Why? / Why not?

2 Do you ever \_\_\_\_\_ your father when he's working?

3 Are there some programmes on TV that you always \_\_\_\_\_? If so, what?

4 What was the last TV programme you \_\_\_\_\_?

5 How often do you \_\_\_\_\_ your best friend?

6 How often do you \_\_\_\_\_ your parents?

7 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ why *get* is a difficult verb for students learning English?

#### ABOUT YOU

Yes, I can see lots. We're opposite a park.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



#### TEST YOURSELF



## 44 Verbs and nouns with the same form

- Many verbs in English can be used as nouns, with the same form and a similar meaning.  
Did you **promise** to help him? Did you **make a promise** to help him?
- When the verbs are used as nouns, you need to learn which verb to use with the noun.  
She **surprised** me. She **gave** me a surprise.  
Could I **look** at your paper? Could I **have a look** at your paper?  
What **caused** the accident? What **was** the cause of the accident?



The boys were **fighting**.  
The boys were **having a fight**.



I **called** Jim.  
I **gave** Jim a call.



I **slept** well.  
I **had** a good sleep.



Does it **smell** nice?  
Does it **have** a nice smell?



I **dream** about Ava.  
I **have** dreams about Ava.



She **smiled** at me.  
She **gave** me a smile.

Here are some more examples.

Did you **reply**?  
Did they **comment** on your work?  
He can't **control** that dog.  
I **emailed** you yesterday.  
We often **chat**.  
How much did the hotel **cost**?  
Can you **copy** this?

Did you **write/send** Jana a reply?  
Did they **make** a comment on your work?  
He **has** no control over that dog.  
I **sent** you an email yesterday.  
We often **have** a chat.  
What **was** the cost of the hotel?  
Can you **make** a copy of this?

### GLOSSARY

**promise** say you will certainly do or not do sth **promise** *n*  
**surprise** do sth that sb does not think you are going to do **surprise** *n*  
**cause** be the reason why sth happens **cause** *n*  
**comment (on sth)** say or write what you think about sth **comment** *n*

**control** make sb/sth do what you want **control** *n*  
**chat (to sb)** talk in a friendly informal way to sb **chat** *n*  
**copy** write, draw or make sth exactly the same as sth else: We **copied** a list of words into our notebooks. **copy** *n*



1 Circle the sound that is different. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |           |          |         |            |          |         |
|-----------|----------|---------|------------|----------|---------|
| ▶ promise | surprise | cause   | 3 over     | comment  | cost    |
| 1 comment | control  | promise | 4 surprise | smell    | cause   |
| 2 promise | surprise | write   | 5 copy     | surprise | control |

2 Do you need your hands and/or your mouth? Write H, or M, or H and M.

- |                        |       |                       |       |
|------------------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|
| ▶ make a promise       | M     | ▶ send an email       | H     |
| 1 make a copy          | ..... | 4 give someone a call | ..... |
| 2 give someone a smile | ..... | 5 send a reply        | ..... |
| 3 have a fight         | ..... | 6 have a chat         | ..... |

3 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

control	dream	fight	sleep	surprise	cost
cause	promise	smell	comment ✓	chat	

- ▶ The boss commented on your work – he was very pleased with it.
- 1 The hotel was expensive, but I don't know exactly how much it .....  
 2 The police caught the young men – they were ..... outside a night club.  
 3 It's a very big dog, and I'm afraid my wife can't ..... it.  
 4 I can't come tomorrow because I ..... to take my children to the zoo.  
 5 I stopped to ..... with a couple of friends. We talked about the game last Saturday.  
 6 Molly expected me at 8.00, so I arrived at 7.30 to ..... her.  
 7 I could ..... something wonderful coming from the kitchen: roast beef.  
 8 I was ..... about our holiday when I woke up.  
 9 There was something wrong with the computer, but I don't know what ..... the problem.  
 10 I went to bed early but I couldn't .....

4 Rewrite the sentences using the verb as a noun.

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ▶ She emailed me.                 | She <u>sent me an email</u> |
| 1 I dreamt about you.             | I .....                     |
| 2 Did he comment on the report?   | Did he .....?               |
| 3 She promised to help me.        | She .....                   |
| 4 Does this soap smell nice?      | Does this soap .....?       |
| 5 They surprised him.             | They .....                  |
| 6 I must reply to Jilly's letter. | I must .....                |
| 7 Did you call Mo?                | Did you .....?              |
| 8 I looked at her newspaper.      | I .....                     |
| 9 Could you copy this?            | Could you .....?            |
| 10 He smiled at me this morning   | He .....                    |

5 ABOUT YOU Write down something that ...

- ▶ you promised to do I promised to help my father at the weekend.  
 you sometimes dream about .....  
 ..... costs a lot of money in your country .....  
 ..... has a strong smell .....  
 ..... is the main cause of problems in your country .....  
 ..... surprises you about people in your country .....  
 ..... the world cannot control .....



TEST YOURSELF

# 45 Shopping for food

## A Food



milk [U]



bread [U]



butter [U]



cheese [U]



eggs



sugar [U]



cake [U]



a cake



jam [U]



biscuits



olives



olive oil [U]



rice [U]



pasta [U]

### SPOTLIGHT uncountable nouns

The nouns with a [U] are usually uncountable.

- **butter** OR **some butter** (NOT ~~a butter~~ / ~~butters~~)
- *This bread is nice.* (NOT ~~These breads are nice.~~)

We can use phrases to count or talk about an amount of an uncountable noun.

- **a piece of cheese**      ■ **two bars of chocolate**

Some nouns can be countable or uncountable. Uncountable is for the food, etc. generally. Countable is for a small unit of it.

- *I like chocolate.* [U]      ■ *Would you like a chocolate?* [C]



chocolate [U]  
a bar of chocolate



a box of chocolates

- 1 Tick (✓) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong. Use the APP to help you.  
Practise saying the words.

- |                        |                             |                |       |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-------|
| ▶ a butter             | <u>butter / some butter</u> | 6 some sugar   | ..... |
| 1 biscuits             | .....                       | 7 an olive oil | ..... |
| 2 a piece of cheese    | .....                       | 8 rices        | ..... |
| 3 two butters          | .....                       | 9 a jam        | ..... |
| 4 a piece of chocolate | .....                       | 10 olives      | ..... |
| 5 a bread              | .....                       | 11 a cheese    | ..... |

- 2 Circle the correct word.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ▶ There <u>is</u> / are sugar in jam.                    | 5 There's no sugar in <i>chocolate</i> / <i>pasta</i> . |
| 1 You make <i>cheese</i> / <i>pasta</i> with eggs.       | 6 I've got a box of <i>milk</i> / <i>chocolates</i> .   |
| 2 You can put <i>cheese</i> / <i>cake</i> on bread.      | 7 <i>Butter</i> / <i>Pasta</i> comes from milk.         |
| 3 There's a lot of sugar in <i>cake</i> / <i>bread</i> . | 8 We have <i>olives</i> / <i>biscuits</i> with coffee.  |
| 4 You can eat <i>rice</i> / <i>biscuits</i> with meat.   |   |

- 3 ABOUT YOU Look at the pictures. Which things do you: often buy? sometimes buy? never buy?  
Write your answers, or tell another student.

- ▶ I often buy eggs.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Buying food



**Customer** Could I have a kilo of onions, please?  
**Shop assistant** OK. Do you need a bag?  
**Customer** No, I've got one, thanks. And have you got any peaches?  
**Shop assistant** Yes. How many do you want?  
**Customer** Four, please.  
**Shop assistant** Are they ready to eat?  
**Customer** Yes, they're lovely.  
**Shop assistant** Great. That's all, thanks.

**Customer** I need some cheese, please.  
**Shop assistant** Sure. How much?  
**Customer** Oh, half a kilo. And some of those olives, please. About 200 grams.  
**Shop assistant** Right. This is just over.  
**Customer** That's fine, thanks.

### GLOSSARY

**Could I have ..., please?** This is a polite way of saying 'I want'.  
**kilogram** = 1,000 grams. Kilo is short for kilogram. Half a kilo = 500 grams.  
**bag** (see picture)  
**Have you got any ...?** = Do you have any ...? (Any is usually used in questions.)  
**ready** If sth is **ready to eat**, you can eat it now.  
**That's all, thanks.** = I don't want any more things.  
**need** If you **need** sth, you must have it.  
**right** OK. This means 'Yes, I understand you'.  
**just over** (a kilo) a little more than (a kilo) **opp just under**  
**That's fine.** = That's OK.

### SPOTLIGHT *how much? and how many?*

We use **how much** with uncountable nouns and **how many** with countable nouns:

- **How much** butter do you want?
- **How many** apples do we need?



### 4 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- ▶ Right. **d**  
 1 shop assistant .....  
 2 customer .....  
 3 that's all .....  
 4 ready to eat .....  
 5 need something .....  
 6 just under .....

- a a person who works in a shop  
 b I don't want to buy any other things.  
 c OK to have it now  
 e must have something  
 d I understand what you mean. ✓  
 f a little less than  
 g a person who buys things in a shop or on the internet

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

▶ all / that's / thanks **That's all, thanks. / Thanks. That's all.**

- 1 twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I .....?  
 2 need / you / a / do / bag .....?  
 3 got / French / you / cheese / any / have .....?  
 4 much / do / pasta / how / need / you .....?  
 5 kilo / just / half / a / over / that's .....?  
 6 oranges / many / need / do / how / you .....?

### 6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ A Yes? B I'd **like** ..... six lemons, please.  
 1 A Have you ..... any apples?  
 B Yes. How ..... would you like?  
 2 A Could I ..... some cheese, please.  
 B Sure, how .....?  
 A Oh, about 100 ..... . And that's ..... , thank you.

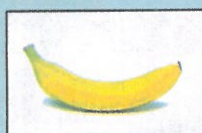
- 3 A ..... I have a kilo of potatoes, please?  
 B Sure. That's ..... under a kilo.  
 A ..... fine.  
 4 A These bananas don't look ..... to eat.  
 B No, they ..... two or three more days.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 46 Fruit and vegetables

## A Fruit



banana



orange



peach



apple



pear



lemon



strawberry



grapes



pineapple



nuts

### GLOSSARY

**fruit** [U] Oranges, pears and nuts are types of fruit: I buy my **fruit** at the supermarket.  
**taste** If sth **tastes** of lemon, it's like lemon when you eat or drink it: This ice cream **tastes of** orange. It **tastes** sweet.  
**sweet** tasting of sugar: These strawberries are very **sweet**.

### 1 Find the end of each word.

banana / grapes / lemon / nuts / strawberries / pineapple / pear / orange / peach / apple

### 2 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ Which fruit is green: strawberries or apples?
- 1 Which taste sweet: oranges or nuts?      4 Which are big: pineapples or grapes?
- 2 Which are yellow: grapes or lemons?      5 Which are long: bananas or apples?
- 3 Which are round: peaches or pears?      6 Which are hard: strawberries or nuts?

### 3 Complete the definitions.

- ▶ Apples can be green, red or yellow, and are round.
- 1 ..... are long and yellow.
- 2 ..... are like lemons but are sweet and round.
- 3 ..... are yellow inside and have green leaves on top.
- 4 ..... are small and dry, and hard on the outside.
- 5 ..... things taste of sugar.
- 6 ..... are green or red/purple, and we use them to make wine.
- 7 ..... are small, soft and red.
- 8 ..... are soft and round, with a big stone in the centre.
- 9 Pears and lemons are types of .....

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student.

Which fruit do you ...  
 eat every week? ..... eat every month? .....  
 often eat in summer? ..... never eat? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Vegetables



potato



beans



onion



carrot



peas



cabbage



mushroom



garlic



lettuce



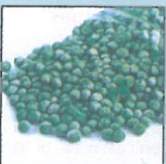
tomato



cucumber



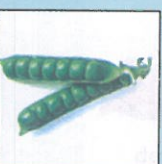
red pepper /  
green pepper



frozen



cooked



fresh

### SPOTLIGHT *salad*

A **salad** can have different fresh **vegetables**. It usually has *lettuce*, and often has *tomatoes* and *cucumber*. *Red pepper*, *carrots* or *onion* are also possible.

### 5 Make vegetables from the letters. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

► ladas

salad

1 sape

2 nonio

3 prepep

4 oatotp

5 gacabeb

6 ecultte

7 naseb

8 meuccrub

9 oouhsmrm

10 motaot

11 ragcil

12 ractor

### 6 True or false? Write T or F.

- Carrots are small and round.
- 1 Potatoes and onions are vegetables.
- 2 Fresh peas are good to eat.
- 3 Lettuce is often frozen.
- 4 Garlic is usually cooked.
- 5 Mushrooms are green.

F

- 6 People eat frozen beans.
- 7 You often have tomatoes in a salad.
- 8 Salad is often cooked.
- 9 You need to cook carrots.
- 10 Cucumbers are long and green.

### 7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

#### Questionnaire

Do you eat these things in your country? *Yes, we do. / Yes, a lot. / Yes, but not much. / No, we don't.*

cabbage \_\_\_\_\_

fresh tomatoes \_\_\_\_\_

fresh cucumber \_\_\_\_\_

beans \_\_\_\_\_

mushrooms \_\_\_\_\_

frozen peas \_\_\_\_\_

lettuce \_\_\_\_\_

cold potatoes \_\_\_\_\_

red peppers \_\_\_\_\_

cooked onions \_\_\_\_\_




















frozen carrots \_\_\_\_\_

garlic \_\_\_\_\_



TEST YOURSELF

# 47 Meat and fish

animal	 cow	 sheep	 lamb	 chicken	 duck	 pig
types of meat (part of the animal or bird that you eat)	 beef	 lamb	 chicken	 duck	 pork	 ham
fish	 salmon	 tuna			 bacon	 sausages
seafood	 squid	 prawns	 crab			

## SPOTLIGHT saying what you eat

- I eat meat. = Meat is OK for me.
- I don't eat pork. = Pork is no good for me.
- I'm (a) vegetarian. = I don't eat meat or fish.

### 1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ Tuna is a kind of meat. F
- 1 Vegetarians eat salmon. ....
- 2 Lamb is an animal and a type of meat. ....
- 3 Duck is a type of fish. ....
- 4 You get bacon from cows. ....
- 5 You can make sausages from pork. ....
- 6 Prawns are smaller than crab. ....
- 7 Salmon and squid are both fish. ....
- 8 Pig is a type of meat. ....
- 9 Chicken is a type of bird. ....
- 10 You get ham from sheep. ....

### 2 Complete the names of meat, fish or seafood

- ▶ lam, b
- 1 ee 2 a 3 un 4 uc 5 ra
- 6 qui 7 aco 8 ausa 9 or 10 raw

### 3 Which one is different? Why?

- ▶ cow sheep salmon pig Salmon, because it's a type of fish, not an animal
- 1 cow pig pork sheep, because
- 2 ham lamb sausages bacon, because
- 3 lamb pork beef tuna, because
- 4 vegetarian squid chicken tuna, because
- 5 sausage beef pork cow, because
- 6 crab salmon prawns squid, because

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

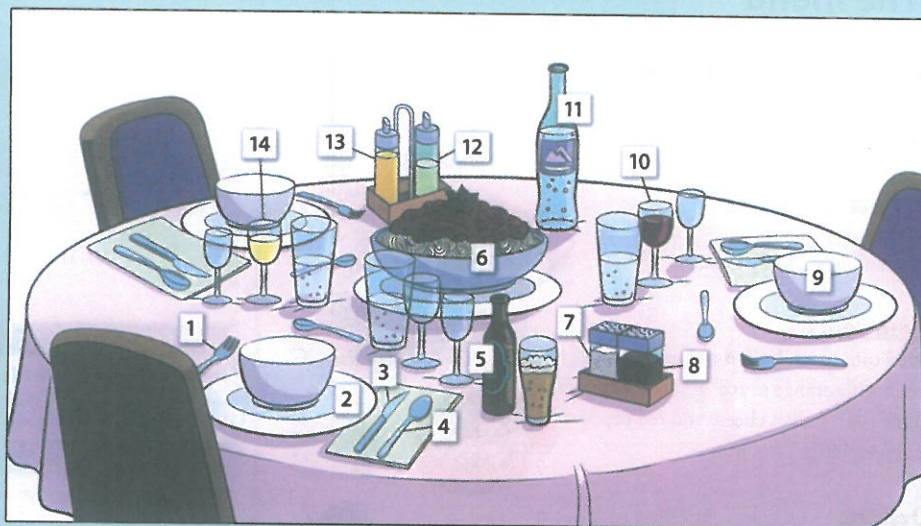
Do you eat these things? Why? / Why not?

- ▶ bacon Yes, I like bacon. / No, I'm vegetarian. / No, I don't eat bacon because I don't eat meat from pigs.
- 1 beef 4 crab 7 duck
- 2 squid 5 tuna 8 lamb
- 3 salmon 6 prawns



TEST YOURSELF





- |   |                 |    |                       |
|---|-----------------|----|-----------------------|
| 1 | fork            | 8  | (black) pepper        |
| 2 | plate           | 9  | bowl                  |
| 3 | knife           | 10 | glass of red wine     |
| 4 | spoon           | 11 | bottle of fizzy water |
| 5 | bottle of beer  | 12 | vinegar               |
| 6 | dish (of pasta) | 13 | oil                   |
| 7 | salt            | 14 | glass of white wine   |

## SPOTLIGHT plural forms of nouns

For nouns ending in -sh, -ch, -s and -x, add -es in the plural.

- dish/dishes      ■ church/churches
- glass/glasses      ■ box/boxes

For nouns ending in -f or -fe, change to -ves in the plural.

- wife/wives      ■ knife/knives

### 1 Look at the picture. Write the numbers.

- How many glasses are there? 9
- 1 How many knives are there? 4
- 2 How many bowls? 2
- 3 How many spoons? 4
- 4 How many wine glasses? 2

- 5 How many plates? 4
- 6 How many bottles? 3
- 7 How many large dishes? 1
- 8 How many forks? 4

### 2 Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a ► knife, (1) fork, and (2) spoon. They each have a white (3) plate and a (4) bowl. To drink, there's a (5) bottle of (6) fizzy water, and two (7) glasses of (8) wine: one (9) red and the other (10) white, plus a (11) bottle of (12) vinegar. There is also some (13) salt and (14) black pepper, and little (15) bits of (16) oil and (17) vinegar.

### 4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Think about the things on the table, in the picture and complete the sentences.

On restaurant tables in my country, we usually or sometimes have \_\_\_\_\_

We don't usually have \_\_\_\_\_

We never have \_\_\_\_\_

### TEST YOURSELF

# 49 Eating in a restaurant

## A The menu

### MENU

**Starters**  
tomato soup<sup>1</sup>  
cold salmon with soy sauce<sup>2</sup>

**Main courses**  
Fried tuna<sup>3</sup> with boiled rice and salad<sup>4</sup>  
Duck with orange sauce<sup>5</sup> and boiled<sup>6</sup> potatoes  
Pizza<sup>7</sup> with Italian cheese and red peppers  
Sausages, chips<sup>8</sup> and peas

**Desserts**  
Apple pie<sup>9</sup> with cream<sup>10</sup>  
Ice cream<sup>11</sup> with chocolate sauce

### GLOSSARY

<b>fried</b>	cooked in hot oil <b>fry</b> v
<b>boiled</b>	cooked in hot water <b>boil</b> v

### SPOTLIGHT *menus*

A **menu** is a list of food you can have in a restaurant.  
The **starter** (or **first course**) is usually small. The **main course** is the most important part of the meal.  
**Desserts** are sweet and come at the end of the meal.

### 1 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ Chips aren't a start. starter
- 1 It's boil rice. boiled
- 2 The potatoes are fry. fried
- 3 A cheese sorce. sauce
- 4 The first course was salade. salad

- 5 Did you have ice creme? cream
- 6 There was fruit for desert. dessert
- 7 I had tomato soap. sauce
- 8 How was the apple pea? pie

### 2 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ You eat the starter after the main course. F
- 1 You eat ice cream with a knife and fork. F
- 2 You eat the main course before dessert. F
- 3 You can have eggs fried or boiled. T
- 4 You eat chips in a bowl of soup. F
- 5 The list of food to eat is called a menu. T

- 6 The starter is the first thing you eat. T
- 7 People often have cream on pizza. F
- 8 Chips are fried. T
- 9 Pasta usually has a sauce on it. T
- 10 Apple pie is a starter. F

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I'd like fried fish.
- 1 Do you like cheese s auce on pasta?
- 2 Could I have the apple p ie, please?
- 3 I don't like f ried chicken.
- 4 My starter was fish s oup.
- 5 What's your main c ourse?
- 6 I love ice c ream.
- 7 I had chicken with b oiled rice.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Look at the menu. Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Which starter would you like? tomato soup
- Which main course would you like? duck with orange sauce
- Which dessert would you like? apple pie



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Ordering the meal

- Waiter** Are you ready to order?  
**Customer** Yes, I'll have the duck, please, but without the potatoes.  
**Waiter** Sure. Would you like rice instead?  
**Customer** Yes, please. And a glass of red wine, and some water.  
**Waiter** Fizzy or still?  
**Customer** Oh, still is fine.  
*(Later...)*  
**Customer** Could I have another bottle of water, please? Oh, and some more bread.  
**Waiter** Yes, of course.  
*(Later...)*  
**Waiter** Was everything all right with your meal?  
**Customer** Yes – the duck was delicious. Could I have the bill, please?  
**Waiter** Certainly.



### SPOTLIGHT *another and some more*

Say **another** (= one more) with countable nouns.

■ **another** glass/biscuit/apple

Say **some more** with nouns in the plural and uncountable nouns.

■ **some more** biscuits/glasses

■ **some more** water/wine/bread

### GLOSSARY

**Are you ready to order?** = Do you know what you want to eat? ask for food or drinks in a restaurant, bar, etc.  
**I'll have** tuna. = I'd like/I want tuna.  
**without** without sugar = with no sugar  
**sure / of course / certainly** These phrases all mean 'Yes, no problem!'

**instead** in the place of sth or sb  
**still water** water without gas (**fizzy water** = water with gas)  
**all right** OK  
**meal** Breakfast, lunch and dinner are **meals**.  
**delicious** very good to eat  
**the bill** a piece of paper that shows how much money you must pay for sth

### 5 Circle the correct word.

► I like I'd like a coffee, please.

1 Could I have **some more** / **another** potatoes?

2 Are you ready **order** / **to order**?

3 Do you want **another** / **some more** bottle?

4 We had a delicious **meal** / **food** last night.

5 Is everything **right** / **all right** with your meal?

6 There's no salmon. Would you like **some more** / **tuna instead**?

7 Yes, **course** / **of course**.

8 Could I have **a** / **the** bill, please?

9 I / I'll have the prawns, please.

10 Yes, **certainly** / **certain**.

11 You order from the **customer** / **waiter**.

12 Black coffee is **with** / **without** milk.

### 6 Complete the conversations.

#### Conversation 1

W Are you ► **ready** to order?

C Yes, I'll **(1)** the chicken, please.

W And is that with or **(2)** cream sauce?

C With, please. And a bottle of water.

W Yes, of **(3)** Fizzy **(4)** ?

C Fizzy, please.

#### Conversation 2

C Could I have **(5)** more water, please?

W **(6)** And would you like a dessert?

C Er, yes, I **(7)** have the ice cream. Then could I have the **(8)** ?

W Yes, **(9)**



### TEST YOURSELF

# 50 In a café

## A Food and drinks

### DRINKS

- 1 (white) coffee
- 2 black coffee
- 3 tea (with milk or lemon)
- 4 hot chocolate
- 5 orange juice (with ice)
- 6 a fizzy drink

### SNACKS

- 7 a sandwich (white bread)
- 8 a sandwich (brown bread)
- 9 a toasted sandwich
- 10 a roll
- 11 crisps
- 12 cakes



### SPOTLIGHT *café, bar, pub*

In a **café**, you can have a *drink* or a *snack*. In a **bar** or **pub**, you can have *drinks*, e.g. *juice*, but also *alcoholic drinks*, e.g. *beer* or *wine*. People go to pubs in Britain to have a drink, meet people and often eat food.

### 1 Find the end of each drink or snack.

You can have a ► roll/crisps/snack/cheesesandwich/cake/toasted sandwich  
 You can have a ► hot chocolate/tea/with lemon/drink/black coffee/fizzy drink/orange juice

### 2 True or false? Write T or F.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ► White coffee has milk in it. <span style="float: right;">T</span>          |   |
| 1 Ice is a drink. <span style="float: right;">.....</span>                   | 6 You can eat in a café or some pubs. <span style="float: right;">.....</span>  |
| 2 Crisps and rolls are snacks. <span style="float: right;">.....</span>      | 7 You can have wine in a café. <span style="float: right;">.....</span>         |
| 3 Beer is an alcoholic drink. <span style="float: right;">.....</span>       | 8 You can have a fizzy drink in a bar. <span style="float: right;">.....</span> |
| 4 Hot chocolate is a snack. <span style="float: right;">.....</span>         | 9 Crisps are sweet. <span style="float: right;">.....</span>                    |
| 5 Cakes and orange juice are sweet. <span style="float: right;">.....</span> | 10 A toasted sandwich is hot. <span style="float: right;">.....</span>          |

### 3 Complete the phrases.

- |                         |                        |                           |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| ► a ham <u>sandwich</u> |                        |                           |
| 1 brown .....           | 5 black .....          | 9 brown or ..... bread?   |
| 2 a toasted .....       | 6 alcoholic .....      | 10 ..... or white coffee? |
| 3 hot .....             | 7 ..... drinks         | 11 apple .....            |
| 4 juice with .....      | 8 bar, café or ..... ? | 12 ..... with milk        |

### 4 ABOUT YOU Look at the drinks and snacks. Which do you like most? Which don't you like? Write a list, or tell another student.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Buying food and drinks

- A Hi, what can I get you?  
 B I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread and two cheese rolls, please.  
 A Is that to have here or take away?  
 B To have here, please.  
 A Fine. Anything else?  
 B Yes, can I have two coffees and an apple juice?  
 A Would you like ice in the juice?  
 B No, thanks.  
 A Is that everything?  
 B Yes, that's all, thanks.  
 A OK, the food will be a couple of minutes.  
 Take a seat.

### SPOTLIGHT *please and thanks*

You use **please** when you ask for something politely.  
 ■ Can I have a coffee, **please**?

**Yes, please** is a polite way of saying 'yes'.

**No, thanks/thank you** is a polite way of saying 'no'.

■ Would you like a drink? **Yes, please.** / **No, thanks.**

**That's all, thanks.** = I don't want anything else.

### GLOSSARY

<b>What can I get you?</b>	a polite way to ask 'What do you want?'
<b>I'd like</b>	ALSO <b>What would you like?</b>
<b>have</b>	= I would like; a polite way to say 'I want'
<b>take away</b>	You <b>have</b> (= eat) a sandwich. You <b>have</b> (= drink) a coffee.
<b>fine</b>	eat in another place, not the café
<b>anything else?</b>	= OK
<b>Can I have ...?</b>	= Do you want any more things?
<b>two coffees</b>	ALSO <b>Is that everything?</b>
<b>food</b>	a polite way to say 'I want' ALSO <b>Can I get ...?</b>
<b>a couple of</b>	two cups of coffee ALSO <b>three teas</b> , etc.
<b>take a seat</b>	things that people or animals eat
	two or three (e.g. minutes)
	sit down ALSO <b>have a seat</b>



### 5 The same or different? Write S or D.

- Would you like a drink? / Do you want a drink? **S**  
 1 a couple of minutes / two or three minutes .....  
 2 Please sit down. / Please have a seat. ....  
 3 Do you want some food? / Do you want something to drink? .....  
 4 No, thanks. / No, thank you. ....  
 5 What can I get you? / What would you like? .....  
 6 That's fine. / No, thanks. ....  
 7 Two teas, please. / Two cups of tea, please. ....  
 8 I'd like a beer, please. / I like beer. ....  
 9 Can I get a coffee, please? / Would you like a coffee? .....  
 10 Anything else? / Is that everything? .....

### 6 Put the words in the correct order to complete the conversation.

- A please / yes **Yes, please** .....  
 B two / sandwiches / ham / please / toasted / like / I'd .....  
 A that / have / is / here / to / away / take / or ..... ?  
 B have / please / to / here ..... ?  
 A everything / that / is ..... ?  
 B teas / get / can / two / I / please .....  
 A be / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple .....  
 please / seat / a / take .....

### 7 One word is missing in each line of the conversation. What is it and where does it go?

- A Hi, What / I get you? Hi, what **can** ..... I get you?  
 B Can I a tea with lemon, please.  
 A To drink here or away?  
 B To here. And a chicken sandwich, please.  
 A Would you brown bread?  
 B Yes.  
 A OK, anything?  
 B Thanks.  
 A Fine. It will be a couple minutes.  
 a seat, please.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 51 Vehicles and roads

## A Vehicles and public transport



car



bus



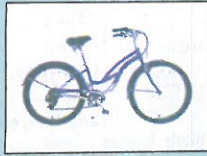
coach



van



lorry/truck



bicycle/bike



motorbike/  
motorcycle



taxi



the underground

### GLOSSARY

<b>vehicle</b>	A car, a bus, a lorry, etc. are all types of <b>vehicles</b> .
<b>public transport</b>	buses, trains, etc. that everybody can use
<b>coach</b>	in Britain, a comfortable bus that takes people on long journeys
<b>truck</b>	is more common than <b>lorry</b> in American English.
<b>motorcycle</b>	is more common than <b>motorbike</b> in American English.
<b>the underground</b>	is called <b>the subway</b> in America.

### SPOTLIGHT verbs used with vehicles

We **drive** a car, bus or taxi, but **ride** a bike or motorbike.  
We often use **go** and **take** when we say how we travel.  
■ I **go to work by** bus or **by** car. (BUT I **go to work on foot** = walk)  
■ My children **take** the bus or the underground to school.

### 1 Underline the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

- You don't see much if you take the bus / the underground.  
1 I go for / to work by bus.      5 Can you ride / drive a motorcycle?  
2 She often drives her brother's car / bike.      6 We often use public transport / the underground.  
3 He's just bought a new motorcycle / motorbike.      7 My uncle drives a lorry / truck.  
4 Do you often go by / on foot?      8 I went from London to Scotland by bus / coach.

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- When it's late, I take a taxi but they can be very expensive.  
1 He never ..... his bike in the winter: it's too cold.  
2 I can take the train from Paris to Amsterdam but the ..... is cheaper.  
3 You often see very large ..... on the motorways and other big roads.  
4 I like taking the bus in big cities but the ..... is usually quicker.  
5 I'm too afraid to ride a big .....  
6 I could drive, but I prefer to go on ..... – and it's good exercise.  
7 All ..... can be dangerous, but especially large lorries.  
8 Workmen often have ..... so they can carry everything they need for their work.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences. If possible, ask someone else the questions.

- 1 Can you drive? If so, when did you learn? .....  
2 When did you learn to ride a bike? .....  
3 How do you get to school, college or work? Are there different ways you can go? .....  
4 Can you ride a motorbike? If not, would you like to ride one? .....  
5 Is public transport good in your country? Is it expensive? .....  
6 Do you go anywhere by coach? Why? / Why not? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B On the road

Beth and Marco, who is from Italy, are talking about a journey.

**Marco** Beth, how far is it from London to Bath?

**Beth** Oh, about 110 miles. That's about 180 kilometres, Marco.

**Marco** And what's the best way to get there?

**Beth** I think the best way is the M4 motorway from London. Then, at exit 18, keep on the main road, the A46 – and that goes all the way to Bath. It's about ten miles.

**Marco** Right. And are the motorways very busy?

**Beth** Yes, unfortunately they are – there's a lot of traffic, especially in the rush hour, or if there is an accident.

**Marco** OK. And how fast can you go on motorways here?

**Beth** Well, the speed limit is 70 miles per hour, but lots of people go faster.

### GLOSSARY

<b>journey</b>	an act of travelling from one place to another
<b>How far is it?</b>	= How many kilometres/miles is it?
<b>get there / to a place</b>	arrive at a place
<b>motorway</b>	a large and wide fast road between towns
<b>exit</b>	the place where you leave, e.g. a motorway, a cinema, etc.
<b>main road</b>	a large, important road
<b>busy</b>	A busy road has a lot of cars on it.
	OPP <b>quiet</b>
<b>unfortunately</b>	a word that shows you are not happy about sth
<b>traffic [U]</b>	all the cars and vehicles that are on a road
<b>rush hour</b>	the busy time when people are going to and from work
<b>speed limit</b>	the fastest that you are allowed to travel on a road
<b>miles per hour (mph)</b>	how fast sb is travelling (ALSO kilometres per hour OR kph)

#### 4 Cover the glossary, then write your answers.

- ▶ the place where you leave somewhere such as a motorway
- 1 all the cars and vehicles that are on a road
- 2 a busy time when people go to and from work
- 3 an important road in or around a town
- 4 What does *mph* mean?
- 5 the fastest you can travel on a road
- 6 the opposite of a *busy road*
- 7 a very large fast road between big towns and cities

exit

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ You can take a country road, but the motorway is quicker.
- 1 It's a very ..... road in the rush .....
- 2 I saw an accident this morning on the ..... road into town.
- 3 How ..... is it from Paris to Marseille? ~ It's 740 kms.
- 4 Does it take long to ..... there? ~ Yes, ..... it does. It's very tiring.
- 5 It's a long ..... and takes about five hours.

#### 6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Is there a lot of traffic on motorways? If so, why? .....
- 2 How fast can cars travel on motorways? .....
- 3 Do you use motorways a lot? Why? / Why not? .....
- 4 Do you drive on the left in your country? .....
- 5 What time is the rush hour in the morning and evening? .....
- 6 What was the last long journey you went on? .....

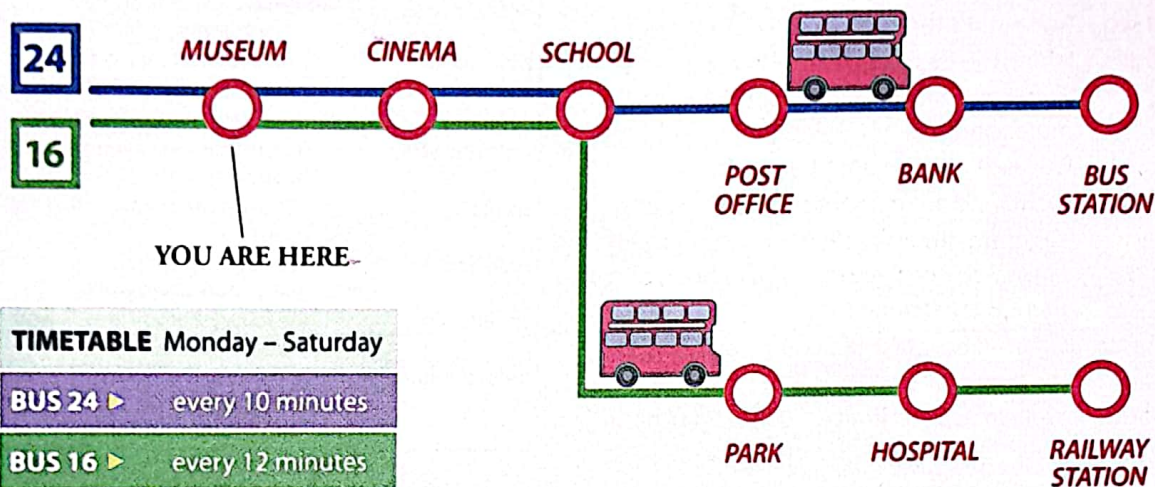


#### TEST YOURSELF



# 52 Buses

## BUS ROUTES 24 and 16



### TIMETABLE Monday – Saturday

**BUS 24** ▶ every 10 minutes

**BUS 16** ▶ every 12 minutes

3 minutes from stop to stop

Questions	Answers
Excuse me, which bus do I get to the park?	The 16.
Does the 24 go to the railway station?	No, it doesn't.
Does the 24 stop near the bank?	Yes, it does.
Does the 16 stop outside the park?	Yes, it does.
How often does the 16 run?	Every 12 minutes.
How many stops is it to the park?	Three.
Which is the last stop for the 24?	The bus station.
Where do I get off for the cinema?	At the next stop.
How long does it take to the bus station?	It takes about 15 minutes.

### GLOSSARY

**route**

the way you take to go somewhere. A **bus route** is the way a bus usually takes.

**timetable**

a list of times when sth happens: **a bus/train timetable**

**excuse me**

We say **excuse me** when we start talking to sb we don't know, especially in the street to ask a question.

**get a train, bus, etc.**

travel on a bus, train, etc. ALSO **take a train, bus, etc.**

**go**

travel to a place

**near the bank**

**outside the bank**



**run**

take passengers on a bus, train, etc.

**every (12 minutes)**

e.g. 9.00, 9.12, 9.24, etc.

**(bus) stop**

the place where you get on or off a bus

**last stop**

the bus stop at the end of the route

**get off**

leave the bus OPP **get on**

**next stop**

the first stop after now

### SPOTLIGHT How long does it take?

**How long?** = how much time? (NOT **how long time?**)

■ **How long does it take (to get) to the station?**

~ It takes about 10 minutes.

~ It takes a long time.

~ It doesn't take long. = It takes a short time.



- 1 Match a word or phrase from group A to a word or phrase from group B to make a new phrase or sentence.

A	bus ✓	get off	How long	the next	It doesn't	Excuse
B	the bus	stop	me	take long	route ✓	does it take?

► bus route

- 2 Write the words in the correct order to make questions.

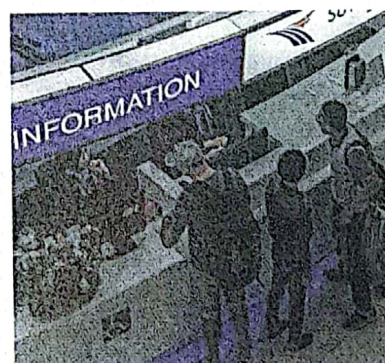
- near / bank / stop / does / the 24 / the Does the 24 stop near the bank ?
- 1 post office / the 24 / does / outside / stop / the ..... ?
- 2 off / do / get / I / where / cinema / for / the ..... ?
- 3 park / the 24 / does / to / go / the ..... ?
- 4 often / run / does / the 24 / how ..... ?
- 5 which / stop / last / is / for / the 16 ..... ?
- 6 stops / many / to / how / it / railway station / is / the ..... ?
- 7 school / me / bus / which / excuse / get / I / to / do / the ..... ?
- 8 take / the / long / how / does / to / railway station / it ..... ?

- 3 Answer the questions in Exercise 2, using the bus information on page 104. Remember, you are at the museum.

- Yes, it does.
- 1 ..... 5 ..... minutes.
- 2 ..... 6 ..... minutes.
- 3 ..... 7 ..... minutes.
- 4 ..... 8 ..... minutes.

- 4 Complete the text, using the bus map information on page 104.

If you ► get ..... a bus from the museum, there are two bus (1) ..... you can take: the 24 and the 16. For the 24, the first (2) ..... is the museum, and the (3) ..... stop is the cinema. The (4) ..... stop is the bus station, where everybody has to (5) ..... the bus. The 16 starts at the museum too, but it (6) ..... to the railway station. The (7) ..... tells you how often the buses (8) ..... The 24 route is very frequent: it runs (9) ..... ten minutes. It only (10) ..... two or three minutes to get from the school to the park, and it stops (11) ..... the park. After that, it goes to the hospital. And it doesn't take (12) ..... - only another three or four minutes.



- 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

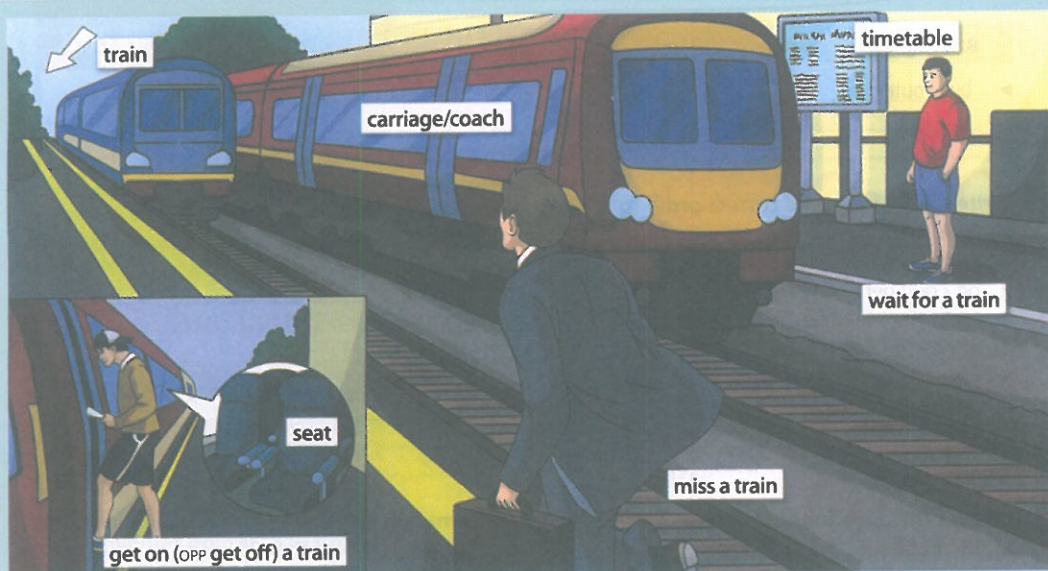
- 1 Is there a bus stop near your house? If so, where is it? .....
- 2 Which bus routes stop there? .....
- 3 Where do they go? .....
- 4 How often do they run? .....
- 5 Do you often get the bus? If so, where to? .....
- 6 How many stops is it? .....
- 7 How long does it take? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 53 Trains

## A At the station



### GLOSSARY

<b>get/take a train</b>	travel by train
<b>the 12 o'clock train</b>	= the train that leaves at 12.00
<b>journey</b>	an act of travelling from one place to another
<b>fare</b>	money that you pay to travel by train, and also by bus, taxi, etc.
<b>a fast train</b>	a train that goes very quickly <b>OPP</b> a slow train
<b>railway/train station</b>	a place where trains stop and people get on and off. People meet <b>at</b> a station.

### SPOTLIGHT *Last*

**Last** has different meanings:

- 1 final: *The **last** train leaves at 11.30 p.m.*  
(= there are no trains after 11.30 p.m.)  
*Marseille is the **last** stop.*
- 2 most recent, the one before now:  
*My **last** train journey was two weeks ago.*

### 1 Answer the questions.

- ▶ What's another verb for *get a train*?
- 1 What's the opposite of a *slow train*?
- 2 What's the opposite of *get on the train*?
- 3 What do you call the money you pay to travel by train?
- 4 What's another way of saying *the train that leaves at 7*?
- 5 What do you sit on in a train?
- 6 Where do you get a train?
- 7 Where do you look for the train times?
- 8 What's another word for a *coach* on a train?

take a train

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We can get the 7.45 train.
- 1 How much was the train                     ?
- 2 Our seats are in the second                     .
- 3 I'm sorry I'm late. I                      the train.
- 4 We can                      a train from Zug to Bern.
- 5 The                      train is just after midnight.
- 6 Quickly,                      the train before it goes.
- 7 We                      for the train in the café.
- 8 Look at the                      for a later train.
- 9 They had to wait                      the last train.
- 10 Don't take the 7.15 – that's a                      train.
- 11 It's long train                      from Rome to Paris.

### TEST YOURSELF



## B Buying a ticket

It's now 9.30. A **passenger** is talking to someone at the **ticket office** in the station.

- Passenger** A **return** to Cardiff, please.  
**Ticket office** That's £21.40.  
*(The passenger takes the ticket.)*  
**Passenger** Thank you ... when's the **next** train?  
**Ticket office** There's one that **leaves** at 10.07.  
**Passenger** OK. Do I have to **change**?  
**Ticket office** No, it's **direct**.  
**Passenger** That's good. And when does it **get to** Cardiff?  
**Ticket office** 10.56.  
**Passenger** Right. And which **platform** is it?  
**Ticket office** Platform 6, **over there**.  
**Passenger** OK. Thanks a lot.



### GLOSSARY

<b>passenger</b>	a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, etc.
<b>ticket office</b>	the place where you buy tickets at a station
<b>return (ticket)</b>	a ticket to travel from a place and back again OPP <b>single</b> one way only
<b>next</b>	The <b>next</b> train is the first one after now.
<b>leave</b>	go away from a place or person OPP <b>get to / arrive at</b> (Oxford, the station, etc.)
<b>change (trains)</b>	get off one train and get on another
<b>direct</b>	A journey is <b>direct</b> if you don't need to change trains.
<b>platform</b>	the part of the station where you get on and off the train
<b>over there</b>	(see picture) OPP <b>over here</b> a place or position near you

### SPOTLIGHT *book/reserve something*

If you **book/reserve a seat**, you buy a train ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. For a hotel, you can **book/reserve a room**, and in a restaurant you can **book/reserve a table**.

### 3 Complete the sentences using words from the box.

direct London office change train is it ✓ there return passengers seat

- Which platform **is it**?  
 1 Can I book a \_\_\_\_\_?  
 2 Do I have to \_\_\_\_\_?  
 3 Do you want a single or \_\_\_\_\_?  
 4 Is the train \_\_\_\_\_?  
 5 Were there many \_\_\_\_\_?  
 6 When do we get to \_\_\_\_\_?  
 7 Where's the ticket \_\_\_\_\_?  
 8 When's the next \_\_\_\_\_?  
 9 The ticket office is over \_\_\_\_\_.

### 4 Look at the timetable and complete the text.

Platform	Cheltenham	Kemble	London Paddington
2	dep 8.35	9.08	
		9.22	arr 10.45

I'm going from Cheltenham to London Paddington next month. There isn't a **direct** train around 8.30, so I have to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ at Kemble. The train (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Cheltenham at 8.35 from (3) \_\_\_\_\_, and it (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to Kemble at 9.08. Then I have to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the 9.22, which gets (6) \_\_\_\_\_ London Paddington at 10.45. A (7) \_\_\_\_\_ costs £22, but if I want to come back the same day, I'll get a (8) \_\_\_\_\_. I'll probably (9) \_\_\_\_\_ my seat because it will be very busy at that time in the morning.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- When was your last train journey?
- Was it a single or a return?
- Where did you go, and why?
- Can you remember the train fare?
- Did you book a seat before you travelled?
- Was it direct, or did you have to change trains?



### TEST YOURSELF



Excuse me. How do I get to the river from here?

Excuse me. Do you know the way to the nearest bank?

Excuse me. Is there a bookshop near here?

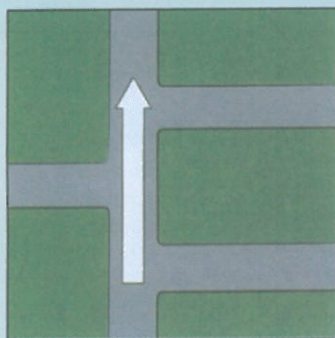
Thanks very much.

Go straight on.

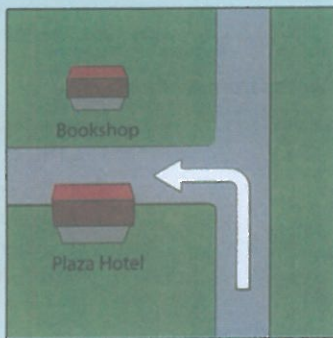
That's OK. No problem.

## GLOSSARY

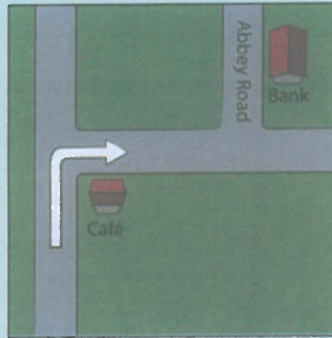
<b>directions</b>	words that tell you how to get to a place
<b>excuse me</b>	When you want to talk to sb you don't know, especially in the street, it is polite to say <b>Excuse me</b> .
<b>near</b>	not far away, close to sb or sth
<b>nearest</b>	the first one from where you are
<b>way</b>	a road that you must take to get to a place



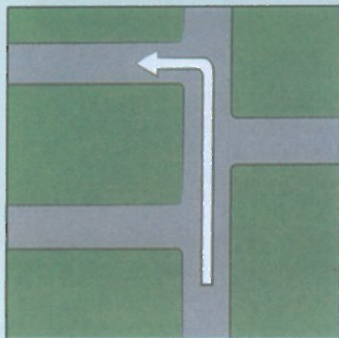
Go straight on. OR Keep going. It's about ten minutes.



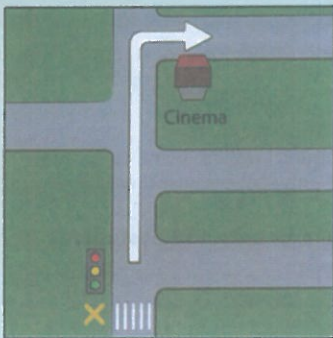
Go along here and turn left. The bookshop is **opposite** the Plaza Hotel.



Turn right at the café, then left into Abbey Road, and the bank is **on your right**.



Go along here and take the **second turning on the left**.



OK. Cross the road at the **traffic lights**, then go straight on and it's the **third turning on the right**. There's a cinema on the corner.



**1 Cross out one word in each sentence.**

- Turn right into ~~the~~ Duke Street.  
 1 The bookshop is opposite of the hotel.  
 2 Go straight on and keep to going.  
 3 Is there a cinema near from here?  
 4 It's on your left side.  
 5 Turn to left and go straight on.  
 6 It's the third road turning on the right.  
 7 Where's the most nearest post office?

**2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.**  
 Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- here / there D  
 1 cross / coroner .....  
 2 third / turnirng .....  
 3 second / opposite .....  
 ► here / near S  
 4 straight / way .....  
 5 right / opposite .....  
 6 there / thanks .....

**3 Make sentences from the words.**

- turn / and / go / right / here / along Go along here and turn right  
 1 excuse / I / get / do / museum / the / me / how / to .....?  
 2 here / left / along / and / turn / go .....?  
 3 post office / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here .....?  
 4 the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third .....?  
 5 way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / station / the / you .....?  
 6 traffic / the / lights / road / at / the / cross .....

**4 Complete the phrases with a single word.**

- turn left (or right)  
 1 Take the second .....  
 2 Thanks very .....  
 3 It's on the .....  
 4 Excuse .....  
 5 Cross the .....  
 6 Keep .....  
 7 Go straight .....  
 8 Go along .....  
 9 I want to go to the bank. Do you know the .....?  
 10 Turn left at the traffic .....

**5 Complete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.**

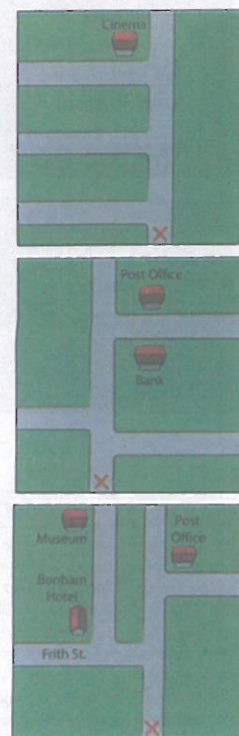
- A Excuse me me ..... How do I (1) ..... to the cinema from here?  
 B OK. Go (2) ..... on, and it's the second ... no, the third (3) ..... on the (4) .....  
 A Thanks very (5) .....  
 B That's OK, no (6) .....  
 2 A (1) ..... me. Is there a post office (2) ..... here?  
 B Yes. Go (3) ..... here and (4) ..... the second (5) ..... on the (6) ..... The post office is (7) ..... the bank.  
 A (8) ..... very much.  
 B (9) ..... OK. No problem.

**6 Look at the map. Give directions.**

- 1 A Excuse me. Do you know the way to the Bonham Hotel?  
 YOU Yes. Go straight on, then .....  
 2 A Excuse me. How do I get to the museum?  
 YOU .....  
 3 A Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?  
 YOU .....

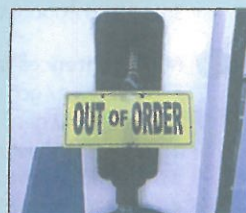


TEST YOURSELF





## 55 Signs and notices



### SPOTLIGHT *allow and let*

If you **allow** somebody to do something, you say that they can do something **syn let**.

- My parents **allow me to go** on holiday with friends.
- My parents **let me go** on holiday with friends.

**Allow** is often used in the negative.

- Smoking **is not allowed** = no smoking.

In spoken English, you can say.

- You **aren't allowed to smoke** in cinemas. (NOT ~~it's not allowed to smoke in cinemas~~.)

### GLOSSARY

<b>sign</b>	a small piece of writing or a picture that tells you sth
<b>notice</b>	a piece of writing that tells you sth, usually information
<b>closed</b>	not open <b>syn shut</b>
<b>toilet</b>	(see picture)
<b>exit</b>	a way to go out of a building <b>syn way out</b>
<b>sale</b>	a time when a shop sells things for less money than usual
<b>keep left</b>	stay on the left <b>also keep right</b>
<b>out of order</b>	broken; not working correctly
<b>no parking</b>	= do not leave your car here
<b>danger</b>	the possibility that sth bad may happen
<b>entrance</b>	a way to go into a building <b>enter v</b>
<b>feed</b>	give food to sb or sth
<b>no vacancies</b>	In a hotel window, <b>no vacancies</b> means that the hotel is full.
<b>queue</b>	wait in a line of people
<b>mind</b>	be careful of sb or sth: <b>mind the step</b> ; <b>mind your head</b> (above a low door)
<b>gap</b>	the space between two things (here, the space between a train and the platform)
<b>keep off</b> (the grass)	do no go on (the grass)



1 Match 1-9 with a-j.

▶ NO SMOKING

1 No parking

2 Exit

3 Please queue here

4 OUT OF ORDER

5 Mind the gap

6 SALE

7 Entrance

8 No vacancies

9 DANGER

a The hotel is full.

b It's broken.

c It's not safe here.

d You can go in here.

e Everything is cheaper at the moment.

f You can't leave your car here.

g Do not smoke here. ✓

h This is the way out.

i Be careful when you get off the train.

j Wait in a line here.

2 Where can you see these signs? Circle the correct answer.

▶ Keep left: in the underground / in a supermarket

1 No Parking: in a road / in a shop

2 Toilets: in a restaurant / in a kitchen

3 Entrance: in a school / in a house

4 SALE: in a shop window / in a restaurant

5 OUT OF ORDER: on a menu / on a drinks machine

6 No vacancies: on a bridge / in a hotel window

7 DANGER: near the sea / near a shopping centre

8 Please queue this side: in a bank / on a telephone

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ It clearly says no parking in front of the garage doors.

1 There are NO SMOKING everywhere on the underground.

2 Did you read that sign? It said, dogs are not allowed on the beach.

3 There was a big sign for a sale in the window of that clothes shop.

4 The notice says that you aren't allowed to walk on the grass.

5 It said CLOSED on the door, but the sales assistant asked me go in and buy something.

6 You have to mind the gap when you get off the train.

7 I'm afraid the shop is closed for lunch at the moment. It doesn't open again until 2.30.

8 The sign says: 'Don't feed the ducks.' Bread is bad for them.

9 Mind the step when you go out of the door.

10 We found the sign for women, but we couldn't find one for men.

4 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Can we go up on the right side?

~ No, the sign says keep left.

1 Can I leave my car here?

~ No, it says

2 Can we go out here?

~ No, it says

3 Can I have a cigarette?

~ No, the sign says

4 Can we walk across the park here?

~ No, look, the sign says

5 Can we use the machine over there?

~ No, it says

6 Can we give this bread to the monkeys?

~ No, the sign says

7 Can we take the dog in the park?

~ No, it says that dogs aren't

8 Can we stand and wait over there?

~ No, it says, please

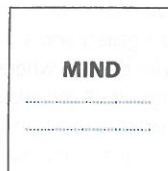
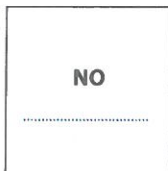
9 Is it safe to swim here?

~ No, it says

10 Can we walk up the left side?

~ No, it says

5 Complete these notices.



TEST YOURSELF

# 56 My town

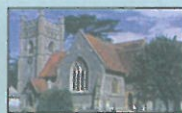
## A Buildings and places in a town



castle



palace



church



museum



art gallery



market



park



library



post office



tower



square



bridge

### GLOSSARY

**building** e.g. a shop, a church, a castle (*NOT square, park, etc.*)

**place** a particular building, shop, town, country or area. *This is a good place to eat. Prague is a lovely place to visit. The park is a nice place to go for a walk.*

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.  
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                              |       |                             |
|------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| ▶ place / <u>park</u>        | D     |                             |
| 1 castle / <u>market</u>     | ..... | 4 library / <u>bridge</u>   |
| 2 square / <u>park</u>       | ..... | 5 palace / <u>bridge</u>    |
| 3 tower / <u>post office</u> | ..... | 6 church / <u>museum</u>    |
|                              |       | 7 park / <u>art gallery</u> |
|                              |       | 8 church / <u>bridge</u>    |
|                              |       | 9 market / <u>castle</u>    |

- 2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. More than one answer is possible.

- ▶ You can see all the main town buildings in the square.
- 1 You can see pictures and paintings in an .....
- 2 You can buy fruit and vegetables at a .....
- 3 You can read and study in a .....
- 4 You can learn about how people lived in the past in a .....
- 5 Children enjoy playing in the .....
- 6 You can see the city below from the top of the .....
- 7 You can buy stamps at the .....
- 8 The best place to see the river is if you stand on the .....
- 9 Some people get married in a .....
- 10 Churches, libraries and post offices are different kinds of .....
- 11 Squares, bridges and parks are different ..... in a town.

- 3 **ABOUT YOU** Are the sentences true for you? If not, write true sentences about where you live, or tell another student.

- ▶ There are no bridges where I live. False. There are three bridges in my town.
- 1 There is one post office where I live. ....
- 2 There's a good library and I often go there. ....
- 3 There's an art gallery and a museum. ....
- 4 There are a lot of parks where I live. ....
- 5 The buildings are all very old. ....
- 6 There's a market where I live every day. ....
- 7 There's a big square where people sit. ....
- 8 It's a terrible place to live. ....



TEST YOURSELF



## B In a garden

### WHY I LOVE my garden (Joel, 38)

My **garden** is so important to me because it's the place where I can be **creative**. I love being out there in the **fresh air**, enjoying the beauty of **nature**. In one **area** of my garden, I grow fruit and vegetables. My children love to get their fingers dirty in the **earth** when they **plant** our strawberries. They **water** the strawberry plants and **pick** the strawberries in summer. Another area is full of **flowers**, but I leave another part **wild** and **natural** to help birds and insects.



flowers



earth



garden



plant v plant n

water v

pick v

#### GLOSSARY

<b>creative</b>	Someone who is <b>creative</b> has a lot of ideas or is good at making new things. <b>create v</b>
<b>fresh air</b>	clean and cool air
<b>nature</b>	all the plants, animals, etc. in the world, and all the things that happen in it that are not made or caused by people <b>natural adj</b>
<b>area</b>	part of a place that you use for a particular activity
<b>wild</b>	Plants or animals that live and grow in nature are <b>wild</b> .

#### 5 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- |                   |          |                       |
|-------------------|----------|-----------------------|
| ► Plants grow in  | <u>e</u> | a flowers.            |
| 1 Don't pick the  | .....    | b some beans.         |
| 2 I need fresh    | .....    | c a beautiful garden. |
| 3 Please water    | .....    | d area in my garden.  |
| 4 I've planted    | .....    | e earth. ✓            |
| 5 She created     | .....    | f air.                |
| 6 I've got a wild | .....    | g the plants.         |

#### 6 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

water nature creative pick earth garden ✓ natural area fresh

- Do you grow fruit and vegetables in your garden?
- You have to ..... plants in the summer if it doesn't rain.
- ..... air is good for you; get as much as possible.
- Some people like to have an ..... where they can grow vegetables.
- You grow plants in the .....; then they just need water.
- Nowadays, people like gardens which are .....
- Freida's garden is full of interesting ideas – she's very .....
- The strawberries in dad's garden are ready to eat. Let's go and ..... them.
- My sister is very interested in .....: trees, plants, animals, etc.

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Do you ever pick flowers from a garden? .....
- Do you ever pick fruit? .....
- Do you grow any plants – inside or outside your home? If so, what? .....
- How important are these things to you?  
 fresh air ..... the beauty of nature .....  
 wild flowers ..... areas in towns with plants and grasses .....

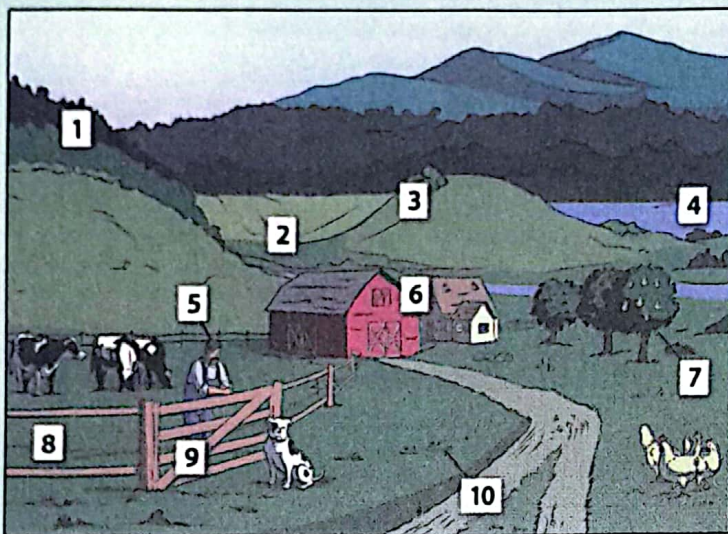


#### TEST YOURSELF



# 57 The countryside

## A On a farm



- 1 wood
- 2 valley
- 3 hill
- 4 lake
- 5 farmer
- 6 farm (the house and the fields)
- 7 tree
- 8 field
- 9 gate
- 10 grass

Jack Robson's family have been in farming for over a hundred years, and Jack now **owns** Eatwell Farm. He keeps cows and **produces** about a million litres of milk a year. He also grows fruit: pears and apples.

### GLOSSARY

**farming** managing a **farm**, or working on it  
**own** If you **own** sth, it is yours. The person who **owns** sth is the **owner**.  
**produce** make or grow sth, e.g. milk, cheese, cars  
**grow** Farmers **grow** potatoes, rice, fruit, etc. to sell.

### 1 Circle the verbs.

wood have valley own gate grass field produce tree farmer lake grow hill

### 2 Look at the picture. Are the sentences true or false? Write T or F.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ▶ There's a lake near the trees. <u>T</u> | 6 Some of the cows are eating grass. ....        |
| 1 There is nothing in the field. ....     | 7 The owner of the farm produces milk. ....      |
| 2 The dog's next to the gate. ....        | 8 There are a lot of trees near the farmer. .... |
| 3 The farmer owns fruit trees. ....       | 9 The farmer grows vegetables. ....              |
| 4 The wood is on the hill. ....           | 10 The lake's in the valley. ....                |
| 5 A dog lives on the farm. ....           |  |

### 3 ABOUT YOU Complete the words.

- ▶ Do you live near a w o \_ o \_ d?
- 1 Do you live in a v \_ \_ \_ l \_ \_ \_ y or on a h \_ \_ \_ \_ l?
- 2 Is there a l \_ \_ \_ k \_ \_ \_ near your home?
- 3 Can you see any gra \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ where you are now?
- 4 Can you see a g \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e where you are now?
- 5 Are there any f \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ ds near your home?
- 6 Do you \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ wn a dog?
- 7 Is fa \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ g very important in your area?
- 8 What do farmers gr \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ w or pr \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ d \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ e in your country?

Yes, I do. There's one up the hill.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.





## B In a garden

### WHY I LOVE **my garden** (Joel, 38)

My **garden** is so important to me because it's the place where I can be **creative**. I love being out there in the **fresh air**, enjoying the beauty of **nature**. In one **area** of my garden, I grow fruit and vegetables. My children love to get their fingers dirty in the **earth** when they **plant** our strawberries. They **water** the strawberry plants and **pick** the strawberries in summer. Another area is full of **flowers**, but I leave another part **wild** and **natural** to help birds and insects.



garden



plant v plant n



water v



pick v

#### GLOSSARY

<b>creative</b>	Someone who is <b>creative</b> has a lot of ideas or is good at making new things. <b>create v</b>
<b>fresh air</b>	clean and cool air
<b>nature</b>	all the plants, animals, etc. in the world, and all the things that happen in it that are not made or caused by people <b>natural adj</b>
<b>area</b>	part of a place that you use for a particular activity
<b>wild</b>	Plants or animals that live and grow in nature are <b>wild</b> .

#### 5 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- |                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| ▶ Plants grow in <u>e</u> | a flowers.            |
| 1 Don't pick the _____    | b some beans.         |
| 2 I need fresh _____      | c a beautiful garden. |
| 3 Please water _____      | d area in my garden.  |
| 4 I've planted _____      | e earth. ✓            |
| 5 She created _____       | f air.                |
| 6 I've got a wild _____   | g the plants.         |

#### 6 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

water nature creative pick earth garden ✓ natural area fresh

- Do you grow fruit and vegetables in your garden?
- You have to \_\_\_\_\_ plants in the summer if it doesn't rain.
- \_\_\_\_\_ air is good for you; get as much as possible.
- Some people like to have an \_\_\_\_\_ where they can grow vegetables.
- You grow plants in the \_\_\_\_\_; then they just need water.
- Nowadays, people like gardens which are \_\_\_\_\_.
- Freida's garden is full of interesting ideas – she's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- The strawberries in dad's garden are ready to eat. Let's go and \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- My sister is very interested in \_\_\_\_\_: trees, plants, animals, etc.

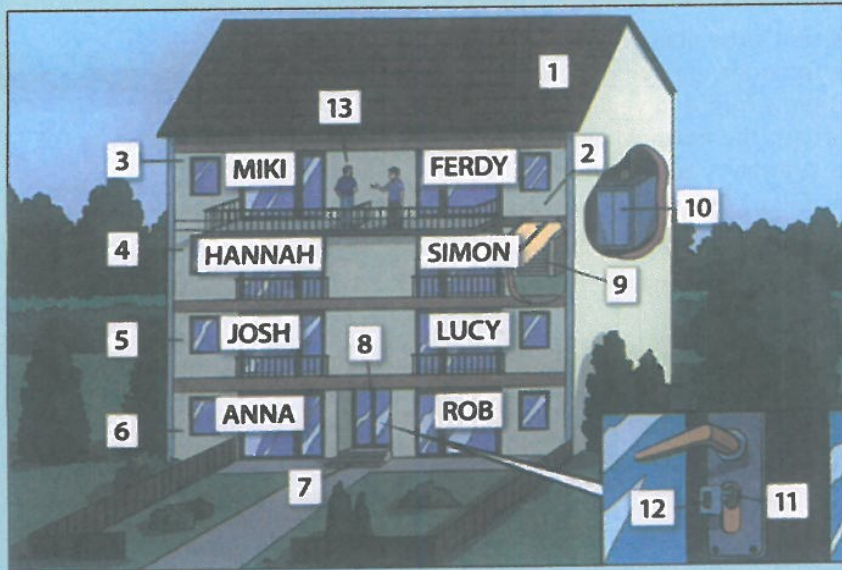
#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Do you ever pick flowers from a garden? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you ever pick fruit? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you grow any plants – inside or outside your home? If so, what? \_\_\_\_\_
- How important are these things to you?  
 fresh air \_\_\_\_\_ the beauty of nature \_\_\_\_\_  
 wild flowers \_\_\_\_\_ areas in towns with plants and grasses \_\_\_\_\_

#### TEST YOURSELF



## A Flats



- 1 roof
- 2 flat/apartment
- 3 (on) the top floor
- 4 (on) the second floor
- 5 (on) the first floor
- 6 (on) the ground floor
- 7 steps pl
- 8 front door
- 9 stairs pl
- 10 lift
- 11 lock
- 12 key (Put the key in the lock to open the door.)
- 13 neighbour (Miki and Ferdy are neighbours.)

### 1 Look at the picture. Write your answers.

- ▶ Who lives on the second floor?
- 1 Who lives on the ground floor?
- 2 Where does Miki live?
- 3 Who is Josh's neighbour on the first floor?
- 4 Which floor does Ferdy live on?
- 5 What is above the top floor?
- 6 How many flats are there?
- 7 Where are the steps?
- 8 What's below the top floor?
- 9 Where does Lucy live?
- 10 How does Ferdy get up to his flat?
- 11 How do you get in the front door?

Hannah and Simon

At the

He uses

or

### 2 Complete the words.

▶ k e y

1 l \_ \_ \_ t

2 ap \_ \_ \_ \_ nt

3 g \_ \_ \_ \_ d f \_ \_ \_ \_ r

4 f \_ \_ \_ \_ t d \_ \_ \_ r

5 s \_ \_ \_ \_ s

6 ne \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ r

7 r \_ \_ \_ f

8 s \_ \_ \_ \_ s

9 t \_ p f \_ \_ \_ r

### 3 Complete the words.

- 1 Do you live in a flat/apartment? If so, which f \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ do you live on?
- 2 What's on the g \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ floor?
- 3 Who are your n \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ ?
- 4 Has the building got a l \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ , or just s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ ?
- 5 Are there s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ to the front door?
- 6 Do you need a k \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ to open the front door?

### ABOUT YOU

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Houses



### BATHFORD

**Modern family home** in this quiet village with lovely **views** of the countryside. Through the **hall**<sup>1</sup>, you come to the **living room**<sup>2</sup>, **dining room**<sup>3</sup>, **study**<sup>4</sup> and a **kitchen**<sup>5</sup>. **Upstairs** there are four good-sized **bedrooms**<sup>6</sup> and a family **bathroom**<sup>7</sup>. **Outside** there is a large garden and **parking** for two cars.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>modern</b>	of the present time <b>OPP</b> old
<b>view</b>	what you can see from a place
<b>upstairs</b>	to or on a higher level in a building <b>OPP</b> downstairs
<b>outside</b>	not in a house or other building <b>OPP</b> inside
<b>parking</b> [U]	a place where you can <b>park</b> (= leave) your car

#### SPOTLIGHT *flat, house, home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.

**SYN** apartment

A **house** is a building that is made for people to live in. It can have more than one floor.

**Home** is where you live (in a flat or a house).

#### 5 Find the end of each word.

study / view modern living room hall kitchen home dining room upstairs bedroom parking bathroom

#### 6 Complete the texts.

I live in a small ► **modern** house – it's only four years old. It's got a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ room, dining room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) \_\_\_\_\_. It's in the town centre, and from the living room I've only got a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of the railway station, which is not very nice. To the left of the house, I've got a space to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ my car, and there's a beautiful, small garden, so I can eat (5) \_\_\_\_\_ when the weather is nice.

My brother's got a big house in a village near me, and from the house you can see fantastic (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of the countryside. Through the front door, you come into the (7) \_\_\_\_\_, and from there you can see the living room, dining room, large (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and a (9) \_\_\_\_\_, where my brother works. (10) \_\_\_\_\_, there are four (11) \_\_\_\_\_ and two (12) \_\_\_\_\_, so there's lots of space when I visit with friends. There's also enough (13) \_\_\_\_\_ for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer, they eat (14) \_\_\_\_\_ all the time, and I think that's better than being (15) \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

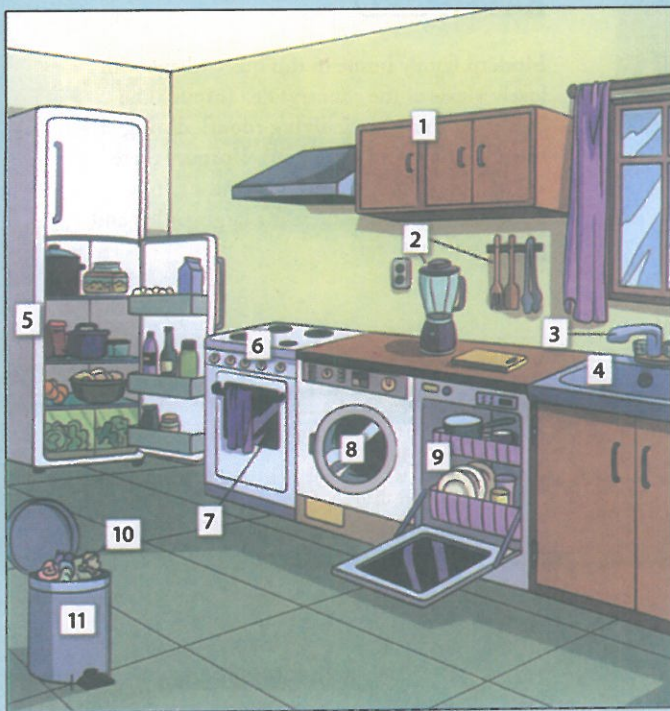
- Where you live, do most houses have two floors, or more? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do houses have the same rooms as the picture, or something different? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do they have parking? If so, inside or outside? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are most houses modern where you live? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are there more houses in towns or the countryside? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are houses more expensive if they have a good view or a garden? \_\_\_\_\_



#### TEST YOURSELF

# 59 Kitchen

## A In the kitchen



- 1 cupboard
- 2 (kitchen) equipment [U]
- 3 tap
- 4 sink
- 5 fridge
- 6 cooker
- 7 oven
- 8 washing machine
- 9 dishwasher
- 10 rubbish
- 11 bin  
(The bin is full. **OPP** empty  
You need to **empty** the bin.  
**OPP** fill)

### SPOTLIGHT *turn something on/off*

You can **turn on/off** something electrical.  
 ■ **Turn the light on. Turn the dishwasher off.**  
 ■ **Turn on/off** the washing machine.  
 You can also **turn on/off** water and gas.  
 ■ **Turn the tap on. Turn the gas cooker off.**  
 (NOT **Open/close** the tap/gas.)

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write **S** or **D**.  
 Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| ▶ kitchen / fridge <u>D</u>           | 4 tap / machine                          |
| 1 <u>o</u> ven / cu <u>p</u> board    | 5 equipment / <u>e</u> mpy               |
| 2 <u>t</u> urn on / ru <u>b</u> bish  | 6 di <u>s</u> hwasher / ma <u>ch</u> ine |
| 3 coo <u>k</u> er / cu <u>p</u> board | 7 coo <u>k</u> er / fu <u>l</u> l        |

- 2 Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ Put the milk in the <u>fridge</u> .               | 7 Is the dishwasher f_____?                 |
| 1 Put those dirty clothes in the w_____.            | 8 Can you t_____ the oven _____, please?    |
| 2 Put the dirty plates in the d_____ or the s_____. | 9 Is the r_____ bin full?                   |
| 3 Put the cups and bowls in the c_____.             | 10 Can you e_____ the bin, please?          |
| 4 Put the empty boxes in the b_____.                | 11 Could you turn the hot water t_____ off? |
| 5 Put the meat in the o_____.                       | 12 Have you got a lot of kitchen e_____?    |
| 6 Put the dessert in the f_____.                    | 13 The oven is part of the c_____.          |

- 3 **ABOUT YOU** Write down anything in the picture you have got or haven't got in your kitchen.

- ▶ We've got a dishwasher.  
 We haven't got a washing machine in the kitchen. It's in another room.



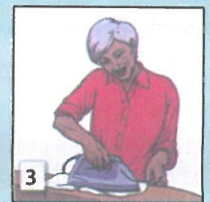
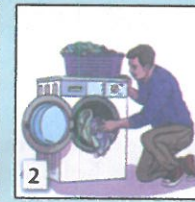
### TEST YOURSELF



## B Jobs in the kitchen

### Everyday tasks: I have to ...

- do the housework [U]
- do the washing up<sup>1</sup> [U]  
SYN wash the dishes [p/]
- do the washing<sup>2</sup> [U]
- do the ironing<sup>3</sup> [U]
- clean<sup>4</sup> the cooker and cupboards
- prepare and cook<sup>5</sup> meals for the family
- look after the children when they come home from school
- feed<sup>6</sup> the cats



#### GLOSSARY

**everyday task**

normal, not special  
a piece of work that you must do, often difficult and not nice  
used for saying that sb must do sth, or that sth must happen:  
*I have to cook the meals / clean the house.*

**do the housework** [U]

**prepare**  
**look after sb**

do work in the house, e.g. cleaning and washing.  
Be careful: **housework** = cleaning the house; **homework** = work teachers give students to do after class.  
make something ready: **prepare** the lunch/dinner  
do the things for sb that they need: **I look after** my grandmother because she can't see very well.

#### 4 Circle the correct word.

► a daily task / ironing

1 I feed / prepare the breakfast.

2 I do my housework / homework on the bus.

3 I make / do the washing up.

4 I clean / feed the kitchen.

5 I look after / cook the dog.

6 I have to / have cook the dinner.

#### 5 Complete the sentences using different words

► Do you do it daily?

~ Yes, it's an everyday task.

1 Do you give the cats their food?

~ No, I never ..... them. My mother does.

2 Do you wash the clothes?

~ No, I don't ..... the ..... My cousin does it.

3 Is it an easy job?

~ No, actually it's quite a difficult .....

4 Do you wash the dishes?

~ Yes, my mum says I have to do the .....

5 Do you clean the house?

~ Yes, I always ..... the ..... Nobody else does it!

6 Do you do the tasks your teacher gives you?

~ Yes, I ..... my .....

7 Do you spend a lot of time with the children?

~ Yes, I ..... them all day.

8 Is it necessary for you to do all these tasks?

~ Yes, I ..... do them.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

##### WHO DOES THE MOST WORK IN YOUR HOME?

Who does the housework? .....

Who cooks the dinner? .....

Who does the washing-up? .....

Who cleans the kitchen? .....

Who does the washing? .....

Who does the ironing? .....

Who does most of the everyday tasks? Why? .....

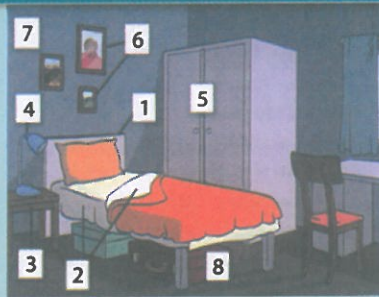


TEST YOURSELF

## 60 Bedroom and bathroom

### A Bedroom

Hi! I'm Kimiko and I'm living in an **international** student house where I have all I need. There's a **bed**<sup>1</sup> with **sheets**<sup>2</sup>, and a small **table**<sup>3</sup> and **lamp**<sup>4</sup> next to the bed. There's a large **wardrobe**<sup>5</sup> for my clothes, and a desk and chair, which I use all the time when I'm studying. I've put a **few pictures**<sup>6</sup> on the **wall**<sup>7</sup> to make it feel like home. There's **space** under the bed for my **suitcase**<sup>8</sup> and boxes. The **furniture** is all **wooden** and quite nice.



#### GLOSSARY

**international** **International** student accommodation has people from many different countries. **National** is about one country: **national** newspapers/holidays  
**a few** some, but not many

**space** [U] a place that is big enough for sth or sb to go into  
**room** [U]: There's **space/room** for you to sit here. There's **space/room** for three chairs here.  
**furniture** [U] tables, chairs, beds, etc. A bed is a **piece of furniture**.  
**wooden** made of **wood** (see picture)

- 1 Put the words below into the correct group, according to the pronunciation of the underlined sound. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

cat ✓ tuna ✓ national ✓ picture seat Portuguese match  
international suitcase table nature dictionary shet furniture

GROUP A ► cat

GROUP B ► tuna

GROUP C ► national

- 2 Look at the picture. Match 1–9 with a–i.

- The table's d  
1 The lamp's .....  
2 The sheets are .....  
3 The pictures are .....  
4 The furniture's all .....  
5 The wardrobe's .....  
6 There are a few .....  
7 The suitcase is .....  
8 Kimiko's room has all .....  
a made of wood.  
b pictures above the bed.  
c under the bed.  
d next to the bed. ✓  
e the furniture she needs.  
f on the table, by the bed.  
g next to the desk.  
h on the wall.  
i on the bed.

- 3 Write the answers.

- You sleep on it: a bed  
1 A place where you keep clothes: .....  
2 You put these on a bed: .....  
3 You put pictures on this in a room: .....  
4 You put clothes in this when you travel: .....  
5 You need it to read at night: .....  
6 It means 'room to put something': .....  
7 A bed, a desk and a chair are all .....  
8 If something is made of wood, it's .....  
9 You put books or a clock by the bed on this: .....  
10 It means 'connected to just one country'.  
11 It means 'from many different countries'.  
12 If you don't have many books, you only have .....

- 4 ABOUT YOU Look at Kimiko's text about her bedroom. Write a similar text about your bedroom at home.



TEST YOURSELF



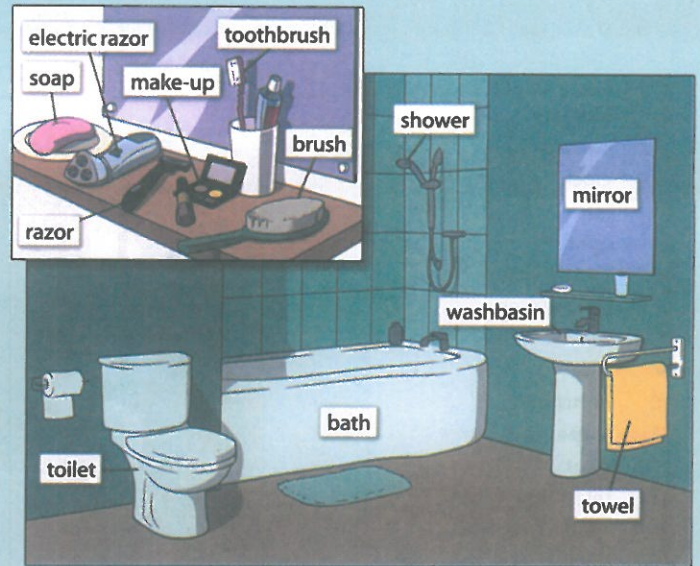
## B Bathroom

- You **have** a wash with soap [U].
- You **brush/clean** your teeth with a **toothbrush**.
- You **brush/do** your hair with a **brush/hairbrush**.
- You **have** a shave with a razor or an **electric razor**.
- You **put on** make-up.

### SPOTLIGHT have + noun

Notice these phrases with **have**:

- I **have a shower** every day.
- I don't **have a bath** very often.
- Do you **have a shave** every morning?
- I **have a wash** after work.



### 5 Circle the correct word.

- I wash / clean my teeth after eating.
- 1 I do / put on my hair with soap / a brush.
- 2 Do you have / do a bath every day?
- 3 She puts on / has make-up when she goes out.
- 4 Do you often have a shave / wash with an electric razor?

- 5 I brush my teeth at the toilet / washbasin.
- 6 I use a towel / soap after I have / make a shower.
- 7 I lie down in the shower / bath for fifteen minutes after work.
- 8 I brush / make my hair in front of the mirror / brush.

### 6 Complete the text.

AMELIA: When I get up in the morning, I usually have a quick ► shower, but in winter, if I have time, I like to have a (1) . I dry myself with a (2) , and quickly get dressed. Then I look in the (3) and do my (4) . I (5) my teeth standing in front of the (6) , and after that, I (7) some make-up. I'm ready to go to work.

HARRY: I look terrible in the morning when I wake up. The first thing I do is to clean my (8) , and that makes me feel better. If I don't have time for a shower, I have a quick (9) with soap and hot water. My hair is very short so I don't have to (10) it, but I always have a (11) with an electric (12) .

### 7 Complete the questions.

- How many times a week do you have a bath or shower ?
- 1 Do you brush your t before or after breakfast?
- 2 How many times a day do you do your h ?
- 3 How many times a day do you look in the m ?
- 4 Do you carry a b in your bag?
- 5 If you wear m , do you p it every day or only sometimes?
- 6 If you shave, how often do you h a shave? Do you use a r or an e r ?

### ABOUT YOU

I have a shower every day.

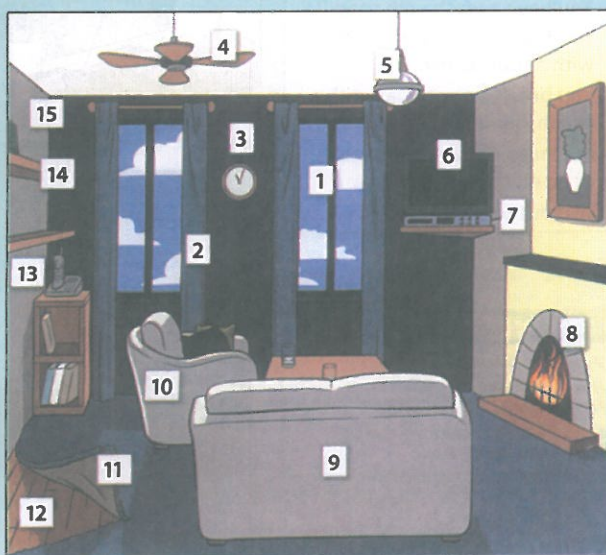
### 8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 61 Living room

- 1 window
- 2 curtain
- 3 clock
- 4 fan
- 5 light
- 6 TV/television
- 7 DVD player
- 8 fire
- 9 sofa
- 10 armchair
- 11 carpet
- 12 floor
- 13 telephone/phone
- 14 shelf (pl shelves)
- 15 the corner of the room



## 1 Complete the words.

- |  |            |              |
|--|------------|--------------|
| ▶ co <u>r</u> <u>n</u> <u>e</u> <u>r</u> | 5 wi_____w | 9 te_____n   |
| 1 arm_____r                              | 6 f_____e  | 10 cur_____n |
| 2 car_____t                              | 7 s_____a  | 11 c_____k   |
| 3 f_____r                                | 8 sh_____f | 12 te_____e  |
| 4 li_____t                               |            |              |

## 2 Look at the picture. True or false? Write T or F.

- In the living room, there is only one ...
- |                       |             |            |           |
|-----------------------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| ▶ DVD player <u>T</u> | 4 clock     | 8 corner   | 12 carpet |
| 1 window              | 5 armchair  | 9 light    | 13 shelf  |
| 2 TV                  | 6 telephone | 10 curtain | 14 fire   |
| 3 sofa                | 7 fan       | 11 floor   |           |

## 3 Complete the answers.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ▶ You watch this in the evening: <u>TV/television</u> | 7 You need this when it's dark: _____  |
| 1 You talk to somebody on this: _____                 | 8 You can put a clock on this: _____   |
| 2 You sit on this: _____ / _____                      | 9 This goes over the floor: _____      |
| 3 You close these at night: _____                     | 10 This is where two walls meet: _____ |
| 4 You check the time with this: _____                 | 11 You look through this: _____        |
| 5 You need this when it's hot: _____                  |  |
| 6 You need this when it's cold: _____                 |  |

## 4 ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What furniture have you got in your living room? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Which electrical things have you got in your living room? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Have you got these in your living room: a clock? a telephone? a carpet? If so, where are they? \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF



# 62 Adjectives with prefixes

Are you sure you have the correct answers?  
Are you a **lucky** person?  
How's your brother these days?  
Did you need to buy a new car?  
Did you think the manager was being **rude**?  
Can you get home before six o'clock?  
Did you enjoy the meeting?  
Is 'fall' a **regular** verb?

~ No, I'm **uncertain** about two of them.  
~ I'm **lucky** with money, but **unlucky** in love.  
~ Well, he smokes a lot – I think he's very **unhealthy**.  
~ No, it was completely **unnecessary**.  
~ Yes, I thought he was very **impolite**.  
~ No, that's completely **impossible**.  
~ Yes, thanks. It was quite **informal** and fun.  
~ No, it's **irregular**: *fall, fell, fallen*.

## GLOSSARY

<b>uncertain</b>	not sure <b>OPP</b> <b>certain</b> <b>SYNS</b> <b>unsure/sure</b>
<b>lucky</b>	If you are <b>lucky</b> , good things happen to you that you cannot control. <b>OPP</b> <b>unlucky</b>
<b>unhealthy</b>	not well, often ill <b>OPP</b> <b>healthy</b>
<b>unnecessary</b>	If sth is <b>unnecessary</b> , you don't need to do it, or you don't need it. <b>OPP</b> <b>necessary</b>
<b>rude</b>	not speaking or behaving in a way that is correct for the social situation <b>SYN</b> <b>impolite</b> <b>OPP</b> <b>polite</b> : In Britain, it is <b>rude/impolite</b> to eat with your mouth open.

## SPOTLIGHT -in-, -im-, -ir-, -un-

Some adjectives form opposites with prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *un-*.  
**formal** **OPP** **informal**  
**possible** **OPP** **impossible** (*im-* before *p*)  
**regular** **OPP** **irregular** (*ir-* before *r*)  
Some other adjectives form opposites with the prefix *un-*.  
**certain** **OPP** **uncertain**      **healthy** **OPP** **unhealthy**

### 1 Correct the mistakes. Be careful: two answers are correct.

- |              |                 |               |       |
|--------------|-----------------|---------------|-------|
| ► informal   | <u>informal</u> | 5 innecessary | ..... |
| 1 incertain  | .....           | 6 inhealthy   | ..... |
| 2 inlucky    | .....           | 7 unsure      | ..... |
| 3 irregular  | .....           | 8 unpolite    | ..... |
| 4 impossible | .....           |               |       |

### 2 Circle the correct word.

- Can you help me? I'm sure / unsure what to do next.
- People who open the door for you in a shop are very **polite** / **rude**.
  - Words like *hi* and *yeah* are **formal** / **informal**.
  - Remember is a **regular** / **an irregular** verb.
  - We had two weeks of sunny weather for our holiday, which was very **lucky** / **unlucky**.
  - It was **necessary** / **unnecessary** to take a taxi because the hotel was very near the station.
  - If you don't say *thank you* for a present, people may think you are **polite** / **impolite**.
  - He has to decide where to go, but at the moment he is very **certain** / **uncertain**.
  - My sister watches TV all day and eats lots of cakes. She's very **healthy** / **unhealthy**.

### 3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- I think spelling in English is impossible.
- Where I live, the neighbours are all very p.....
  - I..... verbs are difficult to remember in English.
  - My English lessons are i..... and fun.
  - I'm very u..... on holiday. The weather is always terrible.
  - I'm u..... where to go for my holidays next summer. I just can't decide.
  - I think it's u..... to eat your food too quickly.
  - I think it's r..... to look at your phone when you're having a meal with people.
  - I think it's important to be clean, but it's u..... to have a shower every day.

## ABOUT YOU

### 4 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you? If not, write them so that they are true.

- I think spelling in English is impossible I think it's difficult, but not impossible!



## TEST YOURSELF

# 63 Adjective opposites

## A Common opposites 1

- 1 She's **asleep**.  
OPP **awake**
- 2 The river is **wide**.  
OPP **narrow**
- 3 The man is **weak**.  
OPP **strong**
- 4 This is **heavy**.  
OPP **light**
- 5 It feels **soft**.  
OPP **hard**
- 6 It's a **low** wall.  
OPP **high**
- 7 The woman is **rich**.  
OPP **poor**
- 8 The bird is **dead**.  
OPP **alive**



### SPOTLIGHT position of adjectives

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after *be*.

■ It's a **quiet** village. The village **is quiet**.

You can't use **alive**, **awake** or **asleep** before a noun.

■ The man **is alive**. (NOT ~~an alive man~~)

### 1 Write Yes or No.

- ▶ Is a 120 kg person heavy? Yes
- 1 Is the River Nile narrow? .....
- 2 Does wood feel hard? .....
- 3 Is Nelson Mandela still alive? .....
- 4 Are mobile phones light? .....
- 5 Are elephants very strong? .....

- 6 Are you asleep at the moment? .....
- 7 Is America a rich country? .....
- 8 If you are walking, are you awake? .....
- 9 Are all the buildings in Dubai low? .....
- 10 Is rice soft before you cook it? .....

### 2 Write the opposite.

- ▶ The bed is **hard**. soft
- 1 His legs are **weak**. .....
- 2 The dog's **asleep**. .....
- 3 They're very **rich**. .....

- 4 The roof is **high**. .....
- 5 The road is **narrow**. .....
- 6 The cat is **dead**. .....
- 7 The bag was **heavy**. .....

### 3 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Is it safe to walk on this bridge? ~ Yes, it's very **strong**.
- 1 Did you sleep well? ~ No, the bed was too ..... It was like sleeping on the floor.
- 2 Can Rowena walk very far? ~ No, she's still ..... after her illness.
- 3 Has Eric got a lot of money? ~ Yes, he's very .....
- 4 Has Kelly still got a dog? ~ No, it's ....., I'm afraid.
- 5 Can you see over the wall? ~ No, it's too ..... I can't see a thing.
- 6 Can we carry that table to the garden? ~ Yes, it's quite .....
- 7 Can you swim across the river here? ~ Yes, it's quite ..... – that will be easy.
- 8 Dan's eyes are closed. ~ Yes, I think he's ..... He said he was very tired.
- 9 That family lives in one room. ~ Yes, they're very .....
- 10 What a lovely little baby! ~ Yes, his skin is so lovely and .....



TEST YOURSELF



## B Common opposites 2

### OPPOSITES QUESTIONNAIRE

- Is it **common** or **unusual** for you to get a cold or flu?
- Do you prefer **traditional** houses or **modern** houses?
- Do you prefer to sleep in a **dark** room or a **light** room?
- Do you and your best friend enjoy **similar** things or **different** things?
- For you, is **social media** a **positive** thing or a **negative** thing?
- On holiday, do you prefer to have **general** plans or more **specific** plans?
- Is knowing about history **useful** or **useless** in your daily life?
- Do other people think you are **lazy** or **hardworking**?

### GLOSSARY

<b>common</b>	If sth is <b>common</b> , it happens often, or you find it in many places: <i>a common name</i> <b>OPP</b> <b>unusual</b>
<b>traditional</b>	If sth is <b>traditional</b> , it is typical of things that people have done for a long time. <i>tradition</i> <b>n</b> <b>OPP</b> <b>modern</b>
<b>dark</b>	with no light, or not much light <b>OPP</b> <b>light</b>
<b>similar</b>	the same in many ways, but not completely the same <b>OPP</b> <b>different</b>
<b>social media</b>	websites, e.g. WhatsApp, Instagram, where you can communicate with people who have similar interests thinking or talking about the good parts of a situation <b>OPP</b> <b>negative</b>
<b>positive</b>	not in detail, giving only the main parts of sth <b>OPP</b> <b>specific</b>
<b>general</b>	good and helpful for doing sth <b>OPP</b> <b>useless</b>
<b>useful</b>	A <b>lazy</b> person doesn't like working hard. <b>OPP</b> <b>hardworking</b>
<b>lazy</b>	

- 4 Tick (✓) the words with the main stress on the first syllable, like narrow and tiny. Put a cross (X) for the others. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ modern ☒ prefer ☒  
 1 useless ☐ 3 different ☐ 5 general ☐ 7 unusual ☐ 9 tradition ☐  
 2 common ☐ 4 specific ☐ 6 media ☐ 8 useful ☐ 10 similar ☐

- 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ A useful book is one that helps you to do something. T  
 1 Two similar things are almost the same. ....  
 2 You can read easily in a light room. ....  
 3 The style of a traditional building is modern. ....  
 4 An unusual event happens a lot. ....  
 5 Specific instructions are clear and with a lot of detail. ....  
 6 A useless thing will help you. ....  
 7 If a type of car is common, you see it a lot. ....  
 8 A lazy person works very hard. ....  
 9 In the middle of the day, it's usually dark. ....  
 10 If somebody is on social media, they are online. ....

- 6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Do the two brothers look different? ~ No, they look very similar.  
 1 Did you talk about anything specific? ~ No, it was a very ..... conversation.  
 2 Did you go to class yesterday? ~ Yes, we had a very ..... lesson on prepositions.  
 3 Is Paco's flat dark? ~ No, it's very ..... with lovely views of the sea.  
 4 Is Bythesea a common name? ~ No, it's very ..... I've never heard it.  
 5 Do you like modern architecture? ~ No, I prefer ..... styles.  
 6 Mariella seems a bit lazy to me. ~ No, that's not true. She's very .....  
 7 Was the weather information helpful? ~ No, it was ....., and we got very wet.

- 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in the questionnaire, or talk to another student.



### TEST YOURSELF

## 64 Common adverbs

### A Showing that something is important

Adverb	Example	Meaning
<b>only</b>	<i>She was <b>only</b> 17 when she got married. (It's unusual to get married at 17.)</i> <i>We can walk to the station – it's <b>only</b> five minutes. (NOT 15 or 20.)</i>	We use <b>only</b> to say 'no more than'.
<b>even</b>	<i>It's cold here, <b>even</b> in summer. (In most places, it's warm in the summer.)</i> <i>My older brother is 1.90 m, and my younger brother is <b>even</b> taller.</i>	We often use <b>even</b> before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe, or to make (a comparative) another word stronger.
<b>still</b>	<i>After 25 years, I <b>still</b> love my job. (I continue to love my job.)</i> <i>Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're <b>still</b> in London.</i>	We use <b>still</b> to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.
<b>especially</b>	<i>We liked the towns in the south, <b>especially</b> Seville. (Seville was the best.)</i> <i>It's very hot here, <b>especially</b> in July and August. (July and August are the hottest.)</i>	We use <b>especially</b> to say 'more than others'.

#### 1 Underline the correct answer.

- ▶ The food is good there, only / especially the fish.
- 1 He was only / even 15 when he left school.
- 2 I've seen the film five times and I even / still enjoy it.
- 3 The students are very nice, still / especially Marcel.
- 4 There are even / only three bridges like this in the world.
- 5 It was cold yesterday, but it's even / only colder today.
- 6 I study hard, but my English is still / only terrible.

#### 2 Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

- ▶ It's six kilometres to the next town. (only) It's only six kilometres to the next town.
- 1 He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It's nice there, in the morning. (especially) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 There are three students in the class. (only) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He works on Sundays. (even) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 She's at university. (still) \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Rio is big, but Sao Paolo is bigger. (even) \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ He's ninety, but he still drives a car.
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ four people came to the party. It was a bit sad.
- 2 They have been in Singapore for ten years and they \_\_\_\_\_ like living there.
- 3 I love fish, \_\_\_\_\_ salmon.
- 4 He can't drive – he's \_\_\_\_\_ 15.
- 5 This question isn't difficult. \_\_\_\_\_ a child could answer it.
- 6 She enjoyed the book, \_\_\_\_\_ the first part.
- 7 He lives in Italy now, but he \_\_\_\_\_ speaks English most of the time.
- 8 The sign was difficult to read, \_\_\_\_\_ with my glasses.



TEST YOURSELF



## B Degree

0%

100%

a bit / a little

quite/pretty/rather

very

really

extremely

<b>a bit / a little</b>	Use <b>a bit</b> or <b>a little</b> before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (NOT <del>a bit good</del> ) <i>The lesson was <b>a bit</b> boring. It's <b>a little</b> warmer than yesterday.</i>
<b>quite pretty inf</b>	= more than <i>a bit</i> , but less than <i>very</i> <i>The film was <b>quite/pretty</b> interesting. The town is <b>quite/pretty</b> big.</i>
<b>rather</b>	= <i>quite</i> <i>The test was <b>rather</b> difficult. She was <b>rather</b> tired after the journey.</i> If you use <b>rather</b> with a positive adjective, you are often surprised and pleased. <i>The restaurant was <b>rather</b> nice.</i>
<b>extremely</b>	= a bit stronger than <i>very</i> . You can use <b>extremely</b> with adjectives, but not with verbs. <i>I was <b>extremely</b> tired by 6 o'clock. We were <b>extremely</b> busy on Saturday.</i>
<b>really</b>	= <i>very, extremely</i> You can use <b>really</b> with adjectives and verbs. <i>The restaurant was <b>really</b> good. The weather was <b>really</b> terrible.</i> <i>We were <b>really</b> tired. I <b>really</b> liked the film.</i>

### 4 Circle the correct answers. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- ▶ It was quite / a bit interesting.
- 1 She's pretty / quite untidy.
- 2 Her new shoes are really / a bit wonderful.
- 3 My sister is a bit / a little untidy.
- 4 I really / extremely enjoyed the meal.
- 5 She was really / extremely friendly.
- 6 Tina's flat is a bit / quite nice.
- 7 The restaurant was rather / really good.
- 8 The hotel's a bit / really comfortable.

### 5 Rewrite the sentences using an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined words.

- ▶ The film was a bit boring. *The film was a little boring.*
- 1 He was very good.
- 2 The holiday was quite interesting.
- 3 She's a little unfriendly.
- 4 The kitchen was extremely clean.
- 5 The room was a bit small.
- 6 Her new boyfriend is rather unfriendly.
- 7 They're really nice people.
- 8 The exam results were quite surprising.

### 6 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- ▶ I went to bed because I was extremely tired.
- 1 The food was excellent, but the service was rather .....
- 2 I like Maria's new boyfriend. He's extremely .....
- 3 I went to see a concert last night and I really .....
- 4 Nobody talked to me at the party, so I felt pretty .....
- 5 I thought the lesson might be boring, but in fact it was rather .....
- 6 We waited thirty minutes for the bus, so we arrived a bit .....
- 7 The dog looked horrible, but in fact it was quite .....
- 8 People think he's hardworking, but I know he's really .....



TEST YOURSELF

# 65 Adverbs of manner

## CLASS 9

Monday 3:30 - 5:30

Cora always does her homework very <u>carefully</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Juno is clever and answers most questions <u>correctly</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Eliane speaks very <u>clearly</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Rocco speaks too <u>fast</u> ; he needs to speak more <u>slowly</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Lucas speaks too <u>loudly</u> , but Ines speaks too <u>quietly</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Jari speaks English very <u>well</u> , but he writes <u>badly</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Ewa always arrives <u>late</u> but just smiles <u>happily</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Mahmud tries very <u>hard</u> , but he thinks the lessons are <u>difficult</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Layla passes all her exams very <u>easily</u> .	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### SPOTLIGHT adverbs of manner

Adverbs of **manner** are used with verbs to tell you more about the way you do something, or the way that something happens. They often end in *-ly*.

**sad** adj / **sadly** adv; **quiet** adj / **quietly** adv;  
**careful** adj / **carefully** adv

■ He opened the door **quietly**. ■ Shona looked at me **sadly**.

A few adverbs are irregular.

**fast** adj / **fast** adv; **late** adj / **late** adv; **hard** adj / **hard** adv;  
**good** adj / **well** adv

Adjectives ending in *-y* have adverbs ending in *-ily*.  
**happy** / **happily**; **easy** / **easily**; **angry** / **angrily**

### GLOSSARY

**manner** the way you do sth or the way that sth happens: *Jacques has a friendly **manner**.* = He acts in a friendly way.

**clearly** in a way that is easy to hear, understand or see

**fast** adv quickly: *He drives **fast**.*

**fast** adj: *She has a **fast** car.*

**late** adv after the correct time **late** adj OPP **early**

**hard** adv a lot: *work/try **hard***

**hard** adj difficult: *The test was **hard**.*

### 1 Write the adverb form.

- careful carefully
- 1 slow \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 bad \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 angry \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 late \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 clear \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 happy \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 good \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 hard \_\_\_\_\_

- 9 easy \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 quiet \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 correct \_\_\_\_\_
- 12 fast \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Rewrite the sentence using the verb in CAPITALS and an adverb.

- Jesse is bad at playing football. PLAY Jesse plays football badly.
- 1 I have very clear writing. WRITE I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 My cousin is a good singer. SING My \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My boss is a hard worker. WORK My \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Lola is a careful driver. DRIVE Lola \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Robina's answers to the questions were correct. ANSWER Robina \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Julio's pronunciation of words isn't clear. PRONOUNCE Julio \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 The exercise was easy for Miriam. DO Miriam \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Amina is very fast at doing the work. WORK Amina \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 My little boy is a slow reader. READ My \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 She was angry when she spoke to Sam. SPEAK She \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Complete the questions.

- Do you speak English slowly or fast \_\_\_\_\_?
- 1 Do you arrive for work/classes at the right time or \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 Do people in your family speak quietly or \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Does your teacher speak \_\_\_\_\_ so that you can understand?
- 4 Do you drive well or \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 Do you think \_\_\_\_\_ about what you want to say in English?
- 6 Do you relax in class, or do you work \_\_\_\_\_?

### ABOUT YOU

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.

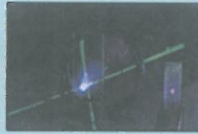




## SCIENCE SUBJECTS



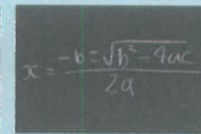
chemistry



physics



biology



maths



computer science

## ARTS SUBJECTS



geography



history



literature



languages



art



PE



design and technology

## GLOSSARY

<b>subject</b>	Physics, history, etc. are school <b>subjects</b> .
<b>maths</b>	short for <b>mathematics</b>
<b>PE</b>	sport and exercise as a school subject, short for <b>physical education</b>
<b>design</b>	(sounds like <i>fine</i> ) pictures or plans that show how to make sth
<b>technology</b>	the science or information about how things work

## SPOTLIGHT *be good at something*

If you are **good at something**, you do it well. If you are **bad at** it, you do it very badly. **SYN terrible at sth**

■ I'm (quite) **good at** languages. ■ I'm **terrible at** maths.

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.  
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- art / maths  
1 design / physics  
2 biology / science  
3 biology / geography

D

- 4 history / story  
5 chemistry / technology  
6 computer / language  
7 literature / picture

- 2 Write the name of a school subject or subjects.

- algebra, geometry  
1 exercises in the gym  
2 Shakespeare, Tolstoy  
3 wars in the past  
4 rivers in Africa  
5 Picasso, Da Vinci  
6 Japanese, Arabic

maths

- 7 CO<sub>2</sub>, H<sub>2</sub>O  
8 Apple and Google  
9 parts of a flower or animal  
10 create a new product  
11 What is light?  
12 History and geography are  
13 Maths and chemistry are

- 3 **ABOUT YOU** Complete the sentences about yourself using the right verb form. If possible, tell another student.

- 1 At school, I'm / I was good at .....  
2 I'm / I was also quite good at .....  
3 I'm / I was terrible at .....  
4 I don't / didn't study .....  
5 The subject I like / liked most is / was .....  
6 And the subject I hate / hated most is / was .....



## TEST YOURSELF

# 67 The education system

## A The education system



In the **education system** in England and Wales, you **start school at the age of** four or five and **continue up to** the age of 16. At 16, you can **leave school**, and then you must **either get a job with training**, or do some training in a **college** for a particular job, e.g. working in the hotel business. The other **option** is to **stay at school** for two more years. After that, you can get a job or go to university.

### GLOSSARY

<b>education system</b>	learning or teaching sb at a school or college
<b>uniform</b>	a group of things or parts that work together
<b>start school</b>	special clothes that children wear at school
<b>at (the age of) five</b>	go to a school for the first time
<b>continue</b>	= when you are five (years old)
	not stop happening or doing sth
	<b>SYN carry on</b>
<b>up to</b>	until; as far as
<b>leave school</b>	stop going to school
<b>job</b>	the work that you do for money
	<b>get a job</b> find a job
<b>training</b>	more work or practice to get ready for a job or sport
<b>college</b>	a place where you can go to study after you leave school
<b>option</b>	a thing you can choose; a possibility
<b>stay at school</b>	= continue at school

### SPOTLIGHT *either ... or ...*

We use **or** to show there are two things/people you can choose, and we use **either ... or ...** to make this contrast stronger.

- After 16, you can **either** do arts subjects **or** science subjects.
- Either** you go to university, **or** you get a job.

### 1 Put the story in order.

- He then went to a local college
- He carried on up to the age of 16,
- When Tom was five,
- and finally he got a job in a local hairdresser's,
- when he decided to leave school.
- where he trained to become a hairdresser,
- he started school.

☐  
☐  
☒  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

### 2 Complete the text with words from the glossary.

► At \_\_\_\_\_ the age of 16, French students can (1) \_\_\_\_\_ school and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a job, but around 65% (3) \_\_\_\_\_ at school for another two years. They then have two (4) \_\_\_\_\_ : they can (5) \_\_\_\_\_ go to a *lycée général* (6) \_\_\_\_\_ go to a *lycée technique* or *lycée professionnel*. At the *lycée général*, many students go on to university. At the other types of school, students do some (7) \_\_\_\_\_ in order to prepare for a particular job.

### 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Complete the questions, but don't write answers.

► At what age do children **start** \_\_\_\_\_ school?

1 Do they usually wear a \_\_\_\_\_ ?

2 At what age can they \_\_\_\_\_ school?

3 At this age, do they \_\_\_\_\_ a job or do more \_\_\_\_\_ ?

4 Do many students \_\_\_\_\_ at school after 16?

5 What can they do when they leave school \_\_\_\_\_ 18?

6 What did you do? **OR** What are you going to do?

### ABOUT YOU

### 4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF



## B Exams

When I was at school, I went to all the lessons and did my homework, but I didn't work very hard. So, when I took exams at 16, my results weren't fantastic. I passed six, which was good, but I failed physics. It was my worst result—I got a grade F, which was terrible. After that, I went to a college where I worked hard and did well. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That's where I am now.



Seth

### GLOSSARY

<b>lesson</b>	a period of time (e.g. 45 minutes) in school when you learn/teach
<b>do homework</b> [U]	do work the teacher has given you at home ( <b>NOT</b> homeworks)
<b>work hard</b>	work a lot
<b>result</b>	the grade or mark you get in an exam, e.g. A or 9/10
<b>(the) worst</b>	superlative of <b>bad</b> <b>BETTER</b> (the) <b>best</b> superlative of <b>good</b>
<b>grade</b>	You <b>get a grade</b> , e.g. A or B, or a <b>mark</b> , e.g. 15/20, in a test or an exam.
<b>do well</b>	be good at sth and get better at it <b>BETTER</b> <b>do badly</b>

### SPOTLIGHT **exams**

**Exam** is short for **examination**. It's an important test at the end of a period of study. We say:

**take/do an exam** sit down and write your answers in the exam

**pass an exam** take an exam and do well, e.g. grade A / a mark of 85%

**fail an exam** take an exam and do badly, e.g. grade D / a mark of 35%

### 5 Look at Rafael's exam results on the right and answer the questions.

- ▶ How many exams did he take? 7
- 1 Did he take an exam in chemistry?
- 2 How many did he pass?
- 3 How many did he fail?
- 4 What was his best grade?
- 5 What was his worst grade?
- 6 What did he get in English?

EXAM	GRADE
	A, B, C = pass / D, E = fail
French	B
IT	C
Geography	D
Biology	A
English	C
History	B
Maths	E

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Six out of ten isn't a very good mark.
- 1 I have to                      an English exam tomorrow.
- 2 Did you                      your homework last night?
- 3 Paula did very                      in her German exam; she got a good                     .
- 4 I got my exam                      yesterday. I passed all of them.
- 5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He's doing                      at school, and last week he                      an important maths exam.
- 6 Maths is my                      subject. I'm terrible at it.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about yourself using the right verb form, then write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 How long **are / were** your lessons at school?
- 2 **Do / Did** you work hard at school most of the time?
- 3 At what age **do / did** you take important exams?
- 4 How many **did / will** you take?
- 5 **Did / Will** you pass all of them?
- 6 What's your best subject?



### TEST YOURSELF

# 68 University

## A A university degree

I started university two years ago when I was nineteen, and I'm **doing a degree in** Spanish and French. The **course lasts** four years, and there are three **terms** a year. I work in the **library** a lot because I have to **write** lots of **essays**. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed one and had to take it **again**. I got the result two weeks ago – **fortunately** I passed this time. When I've got my degree, I want to **do research**.



Seth

### GLOSSARY

<b>do a degree (in sth)</b>	study a subject or subjects at university. You <b>do a degree in</b> a subject.
<b>course</b>	a number of classes on a subject, e.g. an English <b>course</b>
<b>term</b>	a period of study, usually about ten weeks
<b>library</b>	a place where you can read and borrow books (Be careful: a <b>bookshop</b> is a place where you buy books.)
<b>write an essay</b>	do a piece of writing on a subject
<b>again</b>	one more time
<b>fortunately</b>	We say <b>fortunately</b> when we start talking about sth good. OPP <b>unfortunately</b>
<b>do research</b>	study a subject for a long time (usually after a first degree) to learn new information about it

### SPOTLIGHT *How long does it last? / How long does it take?*

**Last** means 'continue for a period of time'.

- A university **term lasts** ten weeks.
- My French **course lasts** a year.

We use **take** (often with *it*) to talk about how long we need to do something.

- It **took me** three years to do my research.
- He **took** two days to write the essay. It **took him** two days to write the essay.

### 1 Circle the correct word.

- She did an English course / term.
- I want to **do** / **make** a degree in maths.
- A **term** / **degree** lasts about ten weeks.
- I have to **learn** / **write** essays.
- Most lessons **take** / **last** an hour.
- I study a lot in the **library** / **bookshop**.
- I want to **do** / **make** some research.
- Fortunately** / **Unfortunately**, I failed the exam.
- Before** / **After** a degree, some people do research.
- It **takes** / **lasts** a long time to do a degree.

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- How long does the term last ? ~ About twelve weeks.
- Are you doing a ..... ? ~ Yes, ..... Medicine.
- Are you planning to do ..... ? ~ Yes, when I've got my first degree.
- Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, ..... he passed.
- Can he take the exam ..... if he fails the first time? ~ Yes, in September.
- Did she have to write an ..... ? ~ Yes, and it ..... her a long time.
- How long does the course ..... ? ~ It's only one term.
- Did you buy that new dictionary? ~ Yes, I got it in the college .....
- Did Miriam pass all her exams? ~ No, ..... she failed two subjects.

### 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- How long do you need to study for a degree in Medicine? .....
- What percentage of young people do a degree? .....
- Do many students go on and do research? .....
- How long does a university term last? .....
- If you fail your exams, can you always take them again? .....

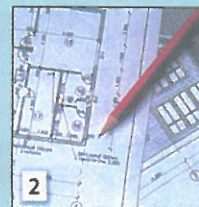


### TEST YOURSELF



## B University subjects and people

	Degree Subject	Person
1	medicine	a doctor
2	architecture	an architect
3	engineering	an engineer
4	law	a lawyer
5	business studies	a businessman/woman
6	journalism	a journalist OR a reporter
7	computer science	e.g. software designer, IT manager



### SPOTLIGHT teacher, lecturer, professor

A **teacher** is a person who teaches for a job, usually in a school (NOT a professor). In the UK, a person who teaches in a university is a **lecturer**, and they give **lectures** (NOT lessons). A **professor** in a university is a lecturer of the highest level.

- 4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.  
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- design / medicine D  
1 law / four  
2 computer / doctor  
3 business / journalist

- 4 computer / woman  
5 lawyer / boy  
6 science / design  
7 teacher / architect

- 5 Complete the sentences. Use the word on the right to help you.

- He always wanted to be a teacher. TEACHING  
1 She wants to be a ..... MEDICINE  
2 When did Tom become an .....? ENGINEERING  
3 Emily is studying to become an ..... ARCHITECTURE  
4 My sister is a ..... LAW  
5 Edward now works as a ..... LECTURE  
6 After his degree he became a software ..... DESIGN  
7 Is it difficult to become a .....? JOURNALISM  
8 I knew he'd become a ..... BUSINESS STUDIES

- 6 Complete the words in the sentences.

- He wants to be a hospital doctor.  
1 My uncle is a university p.....  
2 It's not easy to get a place to study l.....  
3 My friend got a job as an IT m.....  
4 He's a j..... for a national paper.  
5 I don't go to all my university l.....  
6 My degree was in b..... studies.  
7 I studied journalism to be a r.....  
8 I enjoyed my e..... degree.  
9 She wants to do computer s.....  
10 She's a b..... now. She works for a large company.

- 7 ABOUT YOU Take six jobs from this unit and put them in order from 1) a job I would like, to 6) a job I would not like. If possible, talk to another student.



### TEST YOURSELF



# 69 Jobs

What do you do?

What's your job?

I'm ...



a police officer/  
policeman/policewoman



a businessman/  
businesswoman



a secretary  
in a company



a dentist



a model



a shop assistant/  
sales assistant



a nurse



a fashion designer



a soldier



a pilot



a builder



a teacher



a chef



a cleaner



a lorry driver  
(ALSO a train/bus/taxi driver)



a hairdresser

## GLOSSARY

<b>job</b>	the work that you do for money: <i>I've got a <b>job</b> as a waiter (NOT as-waiter).</i>
<b>work</b> [U]	the job that you do: <i>I need <b>work</b>.</i> (NOT a work OR works) <b>work</b> v
<b>boss</b>	a person who tells people what to do in their job
<b>career</b>	the work you do for many years: <i>I want a <b>career</b> in teaching. His <b>career</b> is very important to him.</i>

## SPOTLIGHT *employ*

If you **employ somebody**, you pay somebody to work for you.  
■ The factory **employs** 800 people.

A **company** is a group of people who work together and make or sell things. A person or company who does this is the **employer**, and the person who works for somebody is the **employee**.

■ We have 800 **employees** in the company.

If you are able to work but don't have a job, you are **unemployed**.



1 Circle the correct answer.

- A lorry driver / chef works in a kitchen.  
 1 I'm looking for a work / job.  
 2 A shop assistant / bus driver sells things.  
 3 A model / nurse works in a hospital.  
 4 A career is work that you do for a short / long time.  
 5 A fashion designer designs clothes / furniture.  
 6 An unemployed person has / hasn't got a job.

- 7 If you are an employer / employee, you work for other people.  
 8 A boss / hairdresser tells people what to do.  
 9 A pilot / dentist looks after people's teeth.  
 10 Models / Secretaries are usually very tall.  
 11 A builder / cleaner works outside a lot.  
 12 You can have a career in the police / when you stop work.

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.  
 Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- fashion / assistant D  
 1 pilot / dentist .....  
 2 pilot / driver .....  
 3 business / builder .....  
 4 police / model .....  
 5 teacher / chef .....  
 6 work / nurse .....  
 7 designer / driver .....

3 Complete the sentences with jobs from page 134.

- You have to walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer or a soldier.  
 1 You probably have to go to university to be .....  
 2 You need to work with your hands to be .....  
 3 You may need to be good at maths if you are .....  
 4 You have a lot of free time if you are .....  
 5 You usually have to wear a uniform if you are .....  
 6 You work in an office a lot of the time if you are .....

4 Complete the dialogues.

- Does he work in a shop? ~ Yes, he's a sales assistant.  
 1 Do you work for the boss? ~ Yes, I'm her .....  
 2 Does he work for British Airways? ~ Yes, he's .....  
 3 Does Lisa cut people's hair? ~ Yes, she's .....  
 4 Does he tell people what to do? ~ Yes, he's .....  
 5 Do you see her clothes in magazines? ~ Yes, she's .....  
 6 Is her picture in fashion magazines? ~ Yes, she's .....  
 7 Does your brother work in a school? ~ Yes, he's .....  
 8 Does Fergus work in that restaurant? ~ Yes, he's .....  
 9 Hashem sells computers, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he works for a very big .....

5 **ABOUT YOU** Think about your family and people you know. Do you know anybody who does these jobs? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- a nurse My neighbour Mrs Petrova is a nurse.  
 a soldier I don't know anyone who's a soldier.  
 1 a secretary .....  
 2 a chef .....  
 3 a hairdresser .....  
 4 a teacher .....  
 5 a taxi driver .....  
 6 a dentist .....  
 7 a businessman or businesswoman .....  
 8 a boss .....



TEST YOURSELF

# 70 Describing jobs

## A Basic information

Where does he work?

He works in an office<sup>1</sup> / a factory<sup>2</sup> / a hospital<sup>3</sup>.



What does she do?

She's a **manager**.  
She works as a secretary.

She **manages** a company.  
She's in **advertising** / in the **army**.

Who does he work for?

He works for — a car company. (e.g. Toyota, Mercedes)

an airline. (e.g. Cathay Pacific, KLM)

What hours does she work?

She works — from nine to five.  
long hours.

12 hours a day.

How much does he earn?

He earns a lot. His **salary** is \$100,000 a year.

### GLOSSARY

<b>manager</b>	a person who controls an organization, e.g. a company or shop
<b>advertising</b>	the business of telling people about things to buy
<b>army</b>	a large group of soldiers who fight on land
<b>earn</b>	get money for the work that you do
<b>salary</b>	money you get every month/year for the work that you do

### 1 Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.

an office    an American airline    a factory    she work ✓    hours a day    work for  
long hours    earn much    a year    ten to six    advertising    does he earn

- Where does she work ?
- 1 She works .....
- 2 I work in .....
- 3 He works in .....
- 4 Who do you ..... ?
- 5 How much ..... ?
- 6 I work eight .....
- 7 She works for .....
- 8 She doesn't .....
- 9 He earns €50,000 .....
- 10 I work from .....

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- Who does he work for ?
- 1 She's a doctor in the local ..... Her husband works ..... a factory.
- 2 I work for a computer ....., and my ..... is now €60,000 ..... year.
- 3 He doesn't work ..... hours: he only works ..... 9.00 ..... 3.00.
- 4 She's a nurse, so she doesn't ..... much money.
- 5 My brother is a soldier ..... the .....
- 6 Who do you work ..... ? ~ I'm a pilot. I work for a Spanish ..... called Air Europa.
- 7 TV gets a lot of money from .....
- 8 He ..... a large company in France. He has worked there for 15 years and he has been the ..... for the last five.

### 3 ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write your answers. If not, ask someone with a job, or write about somebody in your family.

- 1 What do you do? .....
- 2 Who do you work for? .....
- 3 Where do you work? .....
- 4 What hours do you work? .....
- 5 Do you think people in your job earn a lot of money? .....



TEST YOURSELF

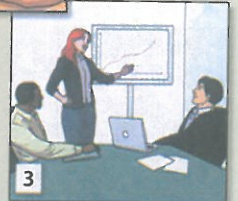
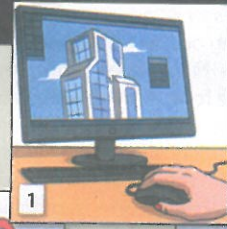


## B What does it involve?

Daniela Alessi, architect

My job **involves** many things:

- I **design** buildings<sup>1</sup>, mostly big **projects**.
- I **meet**<sup>2</sup> **clients** and **discuss** problems with them.
- I **organize** meetings<sup>3</sup> with **colleagues**.
- I **send** hundreds of emails.
- I write **reports**.
- I **spend** a lot of **time** talking to people.



### GLOSSARY

<b>involve</b>	have sth as a part: <i>The job <b>involves</b> using a computer.</i>
<b>project</b>	a big plan to do sth, e.g. <i>a <b>project</b> to build a new airport</i>
<b>client</b>	a person who pays an architect, lawyer, etc. for their work
<b>discuss</b>	talk about sth seriously ( <i>NOT discuss about</i> )
<b>organize</b>	If you <b>organize</b> a meeting, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.
<b>colleague</b>	a person who works with you
<b>send</b>	You write a letter or email, then you <b>send</b> it to sb.
<b>report</b>	a piece of writing that gives information about your work
<b>spend time doing sth</b>	do sth for a period of time

### SPOTLIGHT **meet and meeting**

**Meet** has different meanings:

**1** see and speak to somebody for the first time:  
*I haven't **met** my boss's wife.*

**2** come together, usually because you planned it: (*see picture 2*)

A **meeting** is a time when people come together, usually to talk about something (*see picture 3*).

### 4 Match 1–5 with a–f.

- |              |       |                        |
|--------------|-------|------------------------|
| ▶ spend time | c     | a problems             |
| 1 meet       | ..... | b emails               |
| 2 organize   | ..... | c making phone calls ✓ |
| 3 send       | ..... | d bridges              |
| 4 discuss    | ..... | e clients              |
| 5 design     | ..... | f meetings             |

### 5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ I have <del>sended</del> the letters. <u>sent</u> | 4 Could you organize the meeting? .....         |
| 1 We discussed about our problems. ....             | 5 My job involves to use a computer. ....       |
| 2 I have a meet this afternoon. ....                | 6 I knew her for the first time last week. .... |
| 3 She spends a lot of time travel. ....             |   |

### 6 Complete the text.

I work for Daniela's company as her secretary. I often ▶ **meet** ..... many of her (1) ..... when they come to her office to (2) ..... work. At the moment, we have a big (3) ..... : Daniela is (4) ..... a new department store for the town centre. My job (5) ..... doing other things as well: I (6) ..... meetings with different people about the project; I receive and (7) ..... lots of emails, and sometimes I write (8) ..... about the project for Daniela. Fortunately, I am not alone. I have two other (9) ..... in the office with me. We work hard but we also (10) ..... time talking to each other.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 71 Job interview

Two months ago, I saw an **advertisement** online for a job working with young people in the **community**. You needed a university degree, but no **experience**, so I decided to **apply**. I **filled in the form** and **posted** it, and two weeks later I went for an **interview**. I was very nervous and the **interviewer** asked some difficult questions, but they **offered** me the job, by email. The money is not bad and I will get a lot of **training**, so I **accepted**. I'm starting next week.



## GLOSSARY

<b>advertisement</b>	a notice, picture or film telling people about a job, product or service <b>ALSO advert/ad</b>
<b>community</b>	all the people who live in a place; the place where they live
<b>experience</b>	knowing about sth because you have seen it or done it
<b>apply (for sth)</b>	write to ask for sth
<b>form</b>	a piece of paper or a document with questions and spaces for you to write answers <b>fill in a form</b> write answers on the form
<b>post</b>	send a letter
<b>interview</b>	a meeting when sb asks you questions to decide if you will get a job. The person who does this is the <b>interviewer</b> . <b>interview v</b>
<b>offer</b>	say you will give sth to sb, e.g. a job or help, if they want it <b>offer n</b>
<b>training</b>	the activity of learning how to do a job
<b>accept</b>	say yes to sth

### 1 Put the story in order.

- She offered me the job.
- I went for an interview.
- I posted it.
- I decided to apply.
- I saw an advertisement for a job.
- I accepted the job.
- I filled in the form.
- The interviewer asked me questions.

1

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- Life in a small fishing **community** is different from life in a big city.
- 1 My boss was very busy, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to help her.
- 2 Don't \_\_\_\_\_ the form. You should email it instead.
- 3 My brother has an \_\_\_\_\_ for a job next week. I hope he gets it.
- 4 The company asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ in a form.
- 5 I have a friend who is doing a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in his new job at the bank.
- 6 At the moment I'm \_\_\_\_\_ for a place at university. I want to go next year.
- 7 It's easy to get a job in a shop, but you need more \_\_\_\_\_ to become a manager.
- 8 The job they offered me wasn't very interesting, so I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 9 I saw a funny \_\_\_\_\_ on TV last night for a new Italian car.
- 10 I was surprised at some of the questions the \_\_\_\_\_ asked me.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Have you applied for any jobs? If so, what are they? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you have experience of interviews? If so, what? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Have you had training for a job? If so, what? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What forms have you filled in this year? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Would you like a job working in the community with young people? Why? / Why not? \_\_\_\_\_



## TEST YOURSELF



My first day at work was surprising. I was nervous when I entered the building, but everyone was so friendly that I didn't need to worry. I was part of a small unit (six of us), and it was our job to support local charities in the community. Caroline, my boss, introduced me to the rest of the group, and I spent the whole day watching and listening. It was such an amazing day.

## GLOSSARY

<b>at work</b>	This shows where you are. <b>ALSO</b> at school/home, etc.
<b>surprising</b>	If sth is <b>surprising</b> , it is different from what is normal or usual.
<b>enter formal</b>	come or go into a place
<b>worry</b>	think or feel that sth bad will happen <b>worry n</b>
<b>part of sth</b>	some but not all of sth
<b>unit</b>	one complete thing or group that may be part of sth larger
<b>support</b>	If you <b>support</b> sb, you are there to help them if they need it.
<b>charity</b>	an organization that collects money to help people who need it
<b>whole</b>	all of sth
<b>amazing</b>	If sth is <b>amazing</b> , it is difficult to believe, and usually very good. <b>SYN</b> incredible

SPOTLIGHT **so and such**

**So** and **such** are used before words to make them stronger. You use **so** before an adjective without a noun, and **such** before an adjective with a noun.

- My job is **so** interesting.
- I've got **such** an interesting job.
- I'm **so** busy **that** I can't go.
- I've got **such** a busy day **that** I can't go.

## 1 Answer the questions. Write Yes or No.

- ▶ If something is surprising, is it what you think it will be? **No**
- 1 Does a charity help people? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If you worry about something, are you happy? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Does the whole day mean all of the day? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If something is amazing, is that good? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 If you enter a building, are you leaving? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Is a unit a complete thing? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 If something is *so good*, is that more than good? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Does *amazing* mean the opposite of *incredible*? \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in CAPITALS. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ He's got such a quiet voice. **SO** His voice is so quiet.
- 1 He's in the office today. **WORK** He \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 This book is so good. **SUCH** This is \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Stand up when she comes into the room. **ENTER** Stand up \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It was such a long film. **SO** The film \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 She's one person in a small group. **PART** She's \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 This job is so difficult. **SUCH** This is \_\_\_\_\_

## 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ This book has 100 units.
- 1 She always \_\_\_\_\_ that she won't have enough money.
- 2 Last month I spent the \_\_\_\_\_ time working with Caroline.
- 3 I left the job because the money was \_\_\_\_\_ bad.
- 4 You can \_\_\_\_\_ the building at the front or the back.
- 5 It was \_\_\_\_\_ an interesting job – I loved it.
- 6 There are a number of \_\_\_\_\_ that help people in poor \_\_\_\_\_ of the world.
- 7 It's important to \_\_\_\_\_ people who are very young or new in a job.
- 8 It's difficult working with these children, and I think she does an \_\_\_\_\_ job with them.

## 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What was your first day at work like? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Did you worry about anything before starting? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Did your colleagues support you? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Were you part of a unit? \_\_\_\_\_

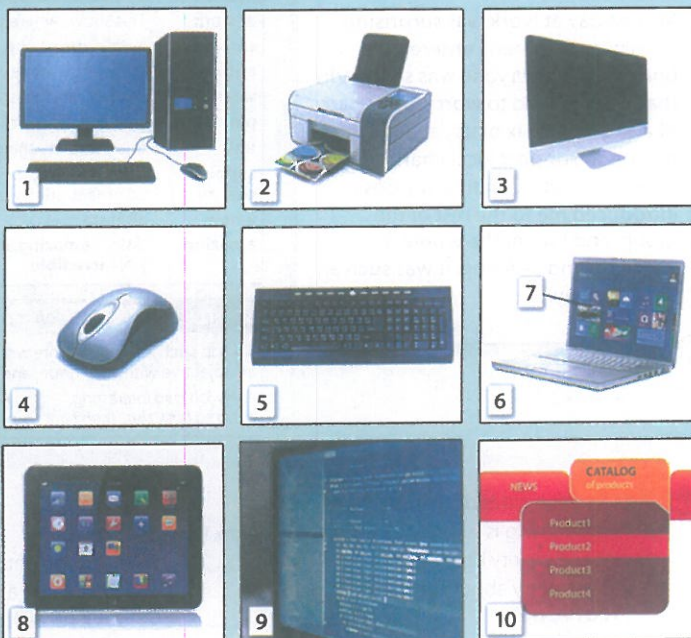


## TEST YOURSELF

# 73 Computers

## A Devices

- 1 PC (personal computer)
- 2 printer
- 3 screen
- 4 mouse
- 5 keyboard
- 6 laptop
- 7 window
- 8 tablet
- 9 program
- 10 menu



### SPOTLIGHT *keep*

**Keep** means to put something in a place so that you know where it is.

- I **keep** my laptop in a bag in my office.
- Where do you **keep** your tablet?
- I **keep** it in my handbag.

### 1 Complete the words.

► k e e p

1 k \_ \_ b \_ \_ \_ d

2 w \_ \_ \_ \_ w

3 l \_ \_ \_ \_ p

4 m \_ \_ \_ u

5 t \_ \_ \_ \_ t

6 m \_ \_ \_ \_ e

7 sc \_ \_ \_ \_ n

8 p \_ \_ \_ \_ r

9 p \_ \_ g \_ \_ m

### 2 Complete the sentences.

► You type information using the keyboard.

1 A small computer you can carry is called a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

2 You read your e-mails on the \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

3 A list on the screen that shows what you can do is a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

4 You can make a paper copy of something using a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

5 A very small computer you use where you touch the screen is a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

6 A set of instructions that we put into a computer is a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

7 On a computer, you can open or close a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

8 You can move things on the screen using the \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .

9 You can \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ pictures on a computer, tablet or laptop.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it? \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it? \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

3 Have you got a laptop or tablet? If so, where do you keep it? \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos? \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

5 Which is better for you: a PC or a laptop? Why? \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

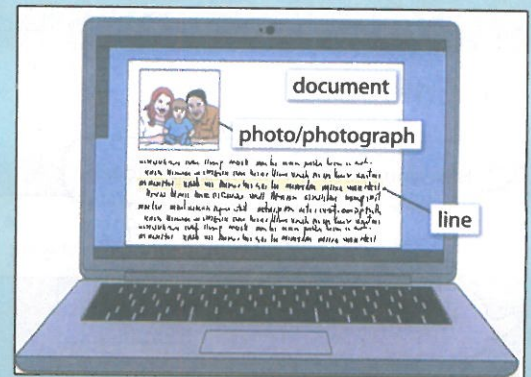


### TEST YOURSELF



## B Working on a computer

For homework, our teacher asked us to write a short **text** about our families. I **opened** a new **document** on my laptop, and **typed** ten lines about my husband and son. Then I **moved** a **photo** from my personal files into the document. It didn't look good, so I **cut** it and **replaced** it with a different photo. I read the text **carefully** to see if it was all correct. Then I **saved** it and **printed** a **copy** to give to my teacher.



### GLOSSARY

<b>text</b>	a piece of writing	<b>replace sth (with sth)</b>	put a new or different thing in the place of another: <i>I replaced my old computer with a new laptop.</i>
<b>open</b>	start sth: <i>open a document/file</i> <b>OPP</b> close	<b>carefully</b>	If you do sth <b>carefully</b> , you think about what you are doing so that you don't make mistakes. <b>careful</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>type</b>	write sth using a keyboard	<b>save</b>	You must <b>save</b> a document before you close it, or you will lose it.
<b>move</b>	take sth and put it in another place	<b>copy</b>	a thing that is exactly the same as another thing: <i>make/print a copy; copy v</i>
<b>file</b>	information that is stored on a computer with a particular name: <i>I must save that file on my computer.</i>		
<b>cut</b>	take text or pictures away from a document		

### 4 Circle the verbs.

open carefully save move photo type remove line replace file close text document

### 5 Put the sentences in the correct order.

- I saved the text.
- I printed a copy.
- I didn't like it, so I removed it.
- I moved a photo into the document.
- I typed a text.
- I read the text carefully.
- I closed the document.
- I opened a document.

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☒

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- I opened a new document and started typing.
- The text has about 15 ..... in it.
  - I have to be very ..... when I'm typing in English.
  - I always make two ..... of my work: one for me, and one to give to my teacher.
  - I keep my letters to the doctor in a medical ..... on my PC.
  - Can you ..... a copy of the letter for me, please?
  - Remember to ..... your work before you close a document.
  - I'm going to ..... my old laptop ..... a new one.
  - I wasn't happy with the second paragraph in the text, so I ..... it.
  - Her fingers are painful so she ..... very slowly.
  - She opened the email, started reading it and quickly ..... it when her father came in.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 74 Email, letters and the internet

## A Email and letters

Have you **checked** your **messages** today?

No, I haven't got **wifi** or **the internet** where I'm staying.

What's your **email address**?

It's **lucy@gmail.com**

Can you **email** the documents to me, please?

Oh, but I've already **sent** them **by post**.

Oh no! The post is very slow here, and **letters** often **get lost**.

Have you **received** Donna's email?

Yes, I have. I'll **reply** this evening.

### GLOSSARY

<b>email</b>	= <b>electronic mail</b> a message that is written on one computer and sent to another <b>email</b> <i>v</i>
<b>check</b>	look to see if sth is there
<b>message</b>	words that one person sends to another
<b>the internet</b>	the international computer system: <i>I saw it <b>on the internet</b></i>
<b>send</b>	make a letter or email go somewhere
<b>post</b> [U]	the system for sending and receiving letters, parcels, etc: <i>send sth <b>by post</b></i> ; <b>post</b> <i>v</i>
<b>letter</b>	a piece of writing on paper sb sends to another person
<b>get lost</b>	If sth <b>gets lost</b> , you don't know where it is.
<b>receive formal</b>	get sth that sb has sent to you
<b>reply (to sb)</b>	say or write sth as an answer to sb <b>reply</b> <i>n</i>

### SPOTLIGHT saying email addresses

@ = at . = dot  
We say **jo.xi@gmail.com** like this:  
'jo dot xi at gmail dot com'.

### 1 One word is not correct. Cross it out.

- ▶ send a **letter** / **post** / **message**
- 1 **get** / **send** / **reply** a message
- 2 reply to **the internet** / a **letter** / an **email**

- 3 send something by **post** / **email** / **document**
- 4 check **your emails** / a **reply** / **your messages**
- 5 get a **letter** / **the internet** / a **message**

### 2 One word is missing. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ I got an \_\_\_\_\_ from Luisa this morning.
- 1 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ the email I sent you yesterday?
- 2 The letter lost in the \_\_\_\_\_ post – it never arrived.
- 3 Have you \_\_\_\_\_ to Juan's letter yet?
- 4 I can't email you because I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ the internet here.
- 5 My email address is 'jamie gmail dot com'.
- 6 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me the information, please?
- 7 I need \_\_\_\_\_ my emails before I go out.
- 8 Did you give Zach the letter, or send it \_\_\_\_\_ by?
- 9 Email me at 'sue 1 at gmail com'.

**email**  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

### 3 Complete the dialogues.

- A Hi, Arun. Have you **checked** your messages this morning?
- B Yes, I have. Malu (1) \_\_\_\_\_ me an email with some documents from our lawyer.
- A Oh? I thought the lawyer sent you a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ with the documents, not an email.
- B I didn't get them. I think they got (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in the post.
- B A Did you (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the email I sent you last night?
- B Yes, I'm sorry I haven't had time to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
- C A I emailed the information to Jesse, but I haven't had a (6) \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
- B He's camping this week, so he probably isn't (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the (8) \_\_\_\_\_.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B The internet

### STAY SAFE online

- When you **shop online**, only use **websites** which you know or **recognize**.
- If you get an email with a **link**<sup>1</sup> in it, don't **click on**<sup>2</sup> it if you don't know the person who sent it. It could **contain** a **virus**.
- Make sure your children are safe online. Only let them go online and **search for** information and look at **blogs** and **videos** when you are at home with them.
- Never tell anybody your **passwords**.



#### GLOSSARY

<b>online</b>	using a computer or the internet <b>shop online</b> buy things on the internet
<b>website</b>	a place on the internet that you can look at to get information about sth <b>also site</b>
<b>recognize</b>	know sb or sth because you have seen them or heard of them before
<b>contain</b>	have sth inside: <i>The website contains the information you need.</i>
<b>virus</b>	a program that enters your computer and stops it working correctly
<b>search (for sth)</b>	use a computer to look for information
<b>blog</b>	a personal record that sb puts on their website saying what they do or what they think about things
<b>video</b>	a short film made digitally that you can watch on the internet
<b>password</b>	a secret word that allows you to start using a computer

- 4 Circle the words which contain the same vowel sound as in **buy**, **right**, **wine**. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

link like website contain video virus recognize click online

- 5 Is the meaning the same or different? Write **S** or **D**.

- |   |       |  |
|---|-------|--|
| ▶ click on something / search for something | D     | 5 contain something / click on something |
| 1 a website / a site                        | ..... | 6 password / passport                    |
| 2 search for something / look for something | ..... | 7 a link / a virus                       |
| 3 a video / a blog                          | ..... | 8 online / on the internet               |
| 4 recognize somebody / meet somebody        | ..... |  |

- 6 Complete the questions with words from the box.

websites passwords blog virus click  
recognize online ✓ videos search contains

- ▶ What kinds of things do you buy online ?
- 1 Do you watch many ..... on YouTube?
- 2 Do you ever tell people your ..... ?
- 3 Have you ever written a ..... ?
- 4 Which ..... do you use a lot?
- 5 Has your computer or tablet ever had a ..... ?
- 6 Do you use Google to ..... for information on the internet?
- 7 Do you ..... on a link if you don't ..... the person who sent you the email?
- 8 What do you do if you think an email ..... a virus?

#### ABOUT YOU

Mostly books and things for the house.

- 7 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



#### TEST YOURSELF

# 75 Phoning

## A Phone vocabulary

PHONE NUMBERS	What's your phone number?	~ It's 245731.
	What's your mobile number?	~ It's 07700 900154.
PHONE VERBS	call/phone/ring (pt rang) somebody	speak to sb by phone ALSO make a (phone) call
	answer the phone	pick up the phone when it rings and speak
	message somebody	send sb a message / text (message)
	take a message	take information during a call and give it to sb else
	leave a message	give information to sb on the phone, who then gives it to another person
PHONE PROBLEMS	The line is busy.	The person you phoned is speaking on the phone already.
	It's the wrong number.	You make a mistake with the number.



mobile phone  
smartphone (= with internet)



landline

### SPOTLIGHT saying phone numbers

Say each number.

■ 245731 is: **two four five, seven three one.**

Say **double** when two numbers are the same.

■ 33 = **double three.**

For '0', say **oh** or **zero**.

■ 602448 is: **six oh/zero two, double four eight.**

### 1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ What's your *landline* / *mobile* number? D
- 1 He *phoned* / *rang* his sister. .....
- 2 He's got *a smartphone*. / He's got *a landline*. .....
- 3 six two *four four* / six two *double four* .....
- 4 I *messed* him. / I *sent* him a text. .....
- 5 She *made a call* / *answered the phone*. .....
- 6 Please *call* / *ring* me later. .....
- 7 *four oh seven nine* / *four zero seven nine* .....

### 2 Complete the words in the dialogues.

- 1 Did you **ring** ..... Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but she was out, so I left a m.....  
I r..... her mobile too, but she didn't a..... the phone.
- 2 What's your phone n.....? ~ It's 345489.
- 3 Did you c..... Sue last night? ~ Yes, but the line was b..... I'll p.....  
her later.
- 4 Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w..... number.
- 5 Did you speak to Lisa? ~ I tried to call her but she was on the p..... so I m..... her  
and I'm waiting for a reply.
- 6 Can you come to the meeting? ~ Yes, but I just need to m..... a call first.
- 7 Can I speak to Riccardo? ~ I'm sorry, he's busy. Can I take a m.....?
- 8 What's your m..... number? ~ It's zero d..... seven double oh, nine double oh, one  
six nine.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What's your phone number and mobile number? (Write it in words.) .....
- 2 Who do you ring most often? .....
- 3 Do you send a lot of texts? If so, who to? .....
- 4 What do you say when you answer the phone? .....
- 5 Do you often get the wrong number? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Phone conversations

A Hello?

B Is that Mia?

A Yes, speaking.

B Oh, hello. This is Laura, Laura Freebairn.

A Hi, Laura, how are you?

B I'm fine thanks. Is Jessica in, please?

A Yes, just a moment – I'll get her for you ...

C Hello?

D Oh, hello, can I speak to Mr Ellis, please?

C I'm sorry, but he's out at the moment. Who's calling?

D It's Leo Jackson from Delta Electronics.

C Right. Do you want to leave a message for him?

D Yes, please. Can you tell him I'll ring him back after lunch?

C Of course, no problem.

D Thanks very much. Goodbye.

### GLOSSARY

Is that Isabella? (NOT *Are you Isabella?*)

**speaking** You say **speaking** when you are the person sb on the phone has asked to talk to.

This is Laura. OR **It's** Laura. (NOT *I am* / *Here is Laura*.)

**in** at home OPP **out**

**just a moment** wait a minute

**get sb**

**at the moment**

**Who's calling?**

**phone/call/ring sb back**

**goodbye**

go and find sb and bring them to the phone now

This is a polite way of asking 'Who are you?'

phone sb again

short form: **bye inf**

### 4 Tick (✓) the correct answers.

▶ Can I speak to Martyn Ellis, please?

1 Hello?

2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please?

3 Hello, is that Gosia?

4 Hello, this is Jamie Little.

5 Hello, can I speak to Alfonse, please?

6 Mohammed's not here at the moment.

7 See you this evening, Dmitri.

~ He's not in at the moment. ☒ / He's not in just a moment. ☐

~ Speaking. ☐ / Oh, hello, is that Jackie? ☐

~ Just a moment ... ☐ / It's Natasha. ☐

~ Oh hello, this is Carla. ☐ / Speaking. ☐

~ Oh, hello, how are you? ☐ / Who's calling? ☐

~ I'm sorry, he's out. ☐ / I'm sorry, he's in. ☐

~ OK, I'll call back later. ☐ / OK, I'll get him. ☐

~ Yes, bye. ☐ / Speaking. ☐

### 5 Complete the conversations.

1 A Hello?

B Hello. ▶ Is that Marisa?

A Yes, (1) \_\_\_\_\_.

B Oh, hello. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Alice.

A Oh, hello, Alice.

B Is Mikki (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_?

A I'm sorry, he's out (5) \_\_\_\_\_. Can I take a message?

B Yes, please. Tell him I'll (6) \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ after lunch.

A OK, (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

2 A Hello?

B Oh, can I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ Ben, please?

A Yes, (9) \_\_\_\_\_ moment. I'll (10) \_\_\_\_\_ him for you.

3 A Hello?

B Oh, hello. (11) \_\_\_\_\_ Joanna?

A Yes, (12) \_\_\_\_\_.

B Hello, Joanna, (13) \_\_\_\_\_'s Luke.

A Hi, Luke. How are you?

### 6 ABOUT YOU Look at the conversations again. Think about the way people answer the phone in English, and the phrases they use. Is it very different in your language? If possible, talk to somebody who speaks your language.



TEST YOURSELF

## 76 -er / -or / -r nouns

It is common in English to add **-er**, **-or** or **-r** to a verb to describe the person who does the action of the verb.

**Teachers** are people who **teach** as a job.

**Visitors** are people who **visit** a place, often as tourists.

Here are more examples.

A **driver** is a person who **drives**, often as a job: a **bus/taxi driver**.

**Workers** are people who **work**, especially in a particular kind of work: **office/farm/factory workers**.

The **listener** is the person who is **listening**, e.g. to the radio, the **speaker** is the person who is **speaking**, e.g. to an audience, and the **reader** is the person who is **reading**, e.g. a book.

An **owner** is a person who **owns** something:

*I'm the **owner** of that car. I bought it last week.*

An **actor** is a person who **acts** as a job: a **TV/film actor**.

The **winner** is the person who **wins** something, e.g. a **competition** or a **race**.

**Travellers** are people who are **travelling**:

*Rail **travellers** often have difficult journeys.*

An **instructor** is a person who **instructs** people.

### GLOSSARY

<b>winner</b>	the person who is the best or the first in a game, competition or race
<b>competition</b>	a game or test that people want to win: a <b>painting competition</b>
<b>race</b>	In a <b>race</b> , people run, drive, ride, etc. in a competition to see who is fastest.
<b>instructor</b>	a person who teaches you how to do sth: a <b>driving instructor</b>

### 1 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A person who teaches is a teacher.
- 1 A person who owns something is the .....
- 2 A person who visits somewhere is .....
- 3 A person who travels is a .....
- 4 A person who wins something is a .....
- 5 A person who instructs people is an .....
- 6 A person who drives is a .....
- 7 A person who acts on television is a .....
- 8 A person who works in a factory is a .....

### 2 Make six phrases using a word from each box.

radio	film	bus	driving	travellers ✓	instructor	worker	driver
office	air ✓	English		listener	teacher	actor	

▶ air travellers

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ My cousin has been a film actor for a few years.
- 1 The museum gets a lot of ..... every year.
- 2 Mr Jacobs is the ..... of that big house on the corner of the road.
- 3 He was the winner of the ..... last year.
- 4 I have a neighbour who is a taxi .....
- 5 The farm employs about ten .....
- 6 The BBC Radio morning programme has about five million .....
- 7 Some ..... always want books to have a happy ending.
- 8 I often have to ask the ..... to repeat what they said.
- 9 My brother came second but I don't know who the ..... was.
- 10 Our English ..... explains things to our class very well.



### TEST YOURSELF



In English, we often add **-ing** to a verb to describe an activity in these situations:

- 1 As the subject of a sentence: **Reading English is easier than writing.**
- 2 After prepositions: **I'm not very good at spelling.**
- 3 After certain verbs: **I love driving.**

These words with **-ing** are also called gerunds.

Other common **-ing** forms include:



**camping**<sup>1</sup> spending a holiday in a tent:  
*Camping is great fun when the weather's good.*

**understanding** knowing about something:  
*Understanding computers is not easy.*



**painting**<sup>2</sup> *I used to enjoy painting at school.*

**shopping** buying things from shops:  
*I don't mind shopping.*



**sightseeing**<sup>3</sup> visiting interesting places as a tourist:  
*I don't enjoy sightseeing.*

**flying** travelling in a plane:  
*I'm frightened of flying.*

**smoking** having a cigarette:  
*Smoking is bad for you.*

**working** the activity of work:  
*Working for a bad boss is terrible.*

**teaching** working as a teacher:  
*Teaching is a great job, but not very well paid.*

## 1 What activities are described here?

▶ looking at words and understanding them reading

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1 travelling in a plane             | 5 visiting interesting places as a tourist |
| 2 buying things                     | 6 knowing about something                  |
| 3 spending a holiday in a tent      | 7 helping students in a classroom          |
| 4 writing a word in the correct way | 8 controlling a car, bus, etc.             |

## 2 Do you agree or disagree? If you disagree, say why.

▶ Smoking is bad for you. Agree ▶ Learning English is easy. Disagree. Learning English is really difficult.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Swimming is good for you.                | 5 Camping is good fun.                 |
| 2 Running is good fun.                     | 6 Teaching is a job I would like.      |
| 3 Reading English is easier than speaking. | 7 Shopping is boring.                  |
| 4 English spelling is easy.                | 8 Working is something you must enjoy. |

## 3 Make phrases with the **-ing** form of a verb from the first box and a word or phrase from the second box.

write	paint	sleep	run ✓	listen to	play	learn	buy	cook
football	clothes	in a tent	English	languages	meals	music	for miles ✓	pictures

▶ Running for miles

## 4 ABOUT YOU Write sentences that are true for you, using the phrases in Exercise 3. Compare with another student if possible.

▶ Running for miles is not something I do.



TEST YOURSELF

# 78 Noun suffixes

## A Nouns ending in -ion

Can you **predict** the result of a football match?

No, it's very hard to make a **prediction**.

Someone's **invented** a way to clean plastic from the oceans.

That's a great **invention**!

Do you always **celebrate** your birthday?

Yes, I often have a small **celebration** with friends.

I have to **organize** my son's wedding.

Well, that will need careful **organization**.

Can you **describe** the criminal?

Yes, I can give the police a good **description**.

How do we **solve** the population problem?

I've got no idea. There's no easy **solution**.

We have to **decide** where to live.

That's a very important **decision**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>predict</b>	say what you think will happen (make a) <b>prediction</b> <i>n</i>
<b>invent</b>	make, design or think of sth for the first time <b>invention</b> <i>n</i>
<b>celebrate</b>	do sth to show that you are happy for a special reason, or because it is a special day (have a) <b>celebration</b> <i>n</i>
<b>organize</b>	plan or arrange sth <b>organization</b> <i>n</i>
<b>describe</b>	say what sb or sth is like, or what happened (give a) <b>description</b> <i>n</i>
<b>solve</b>	find the answer to a question or problem <b>solution</b> <i>n</i>
<b>decide</b>	choose sth after thinking about the possibilities (make a) <b>decision</b> <i>n</i>

### SPOTLIGHT suffix -ion

Many verbs form nouns by adding a suffix, and -ion/-tion/-sion/-ation are very common.

**predict/prediction** **celebrate/celebration**

Sometimes the ending of the noun changes.

**solve/solution** **decide/decision**

Stress can also change. Use the **APP** to check the sounds and the stress.

### 1 Underline the main stress in each word. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                 |             |            |              |
|-----------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| ▶ <u>invent</u> | ▶ solution  | 3 predict  | prediction   |
| 1 celebrate     | celebration | 4 decide   | decision     |
| 2 describe      | description | 5 organize | organization |

### 2 What words are being defined here?

- |  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| ▶ choosing something after thinking                        | <u>decision</u> |
| 1 something somebody has made for the first time           | .....           |
| 2 a time when you enjoy yourself for a special reason      | .....           |
| 3 words that tell what somebody or something is like       | .....           |
| 4 an answer to a problem                                   | .....           |
| 5 a statement about what you think will happen             | .....           |
| 6 planning or arranging something so that it is successful | .....           |

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word from this unit.

- ▶ Can you describe what happened when the car hit the tree?
- 1 It wasn't easy to make a ....., but in the end, we ..... to sell the car.
- 2 We have to ..... the traffic problems quickly. The ..... is probably to have better trains and buses.
- 3 I didn't see the man, so I couldn't give a good ..... of him.
- 4 After the exams, the students go out and ..... all night.
- 5 I think it was Tim Berners Lee who ..... the World Wide Web.
- 6 My boss is ..... tomorrow's meeting. He's very bad at .....
- 7 The government has ..... that business will get better next year.
- 8 The mobile phone is one of the most important ..... of the last fifty years.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Other noun endings

Verb / Noun	Example	Meaning (verb)
discover v discovery n	Herschel <b>discovered</b> the planet Uranus. Herschel <b>made an important discovery</b> .	find a place or thing that nobody knew about before
succeed v success n	They want the discussions to <b>succeed</b> . They want them to be a <b>success</b> .	do or get what you wanted to do or get
complain v complaint n	You need to <b>complain</b> to the manager. You should <b>make a complaint</b> .	say you do not like sth or are unhappy about sth
choose v choice n	I had to <b>choose</b> a gift for my sister. I <b>made a bad choice</b> .	decide which thing or person you want
think v thought(s) n	I was <b>thinking</b> about our next holiday. I <b>had a few thoughts</b> about our holiday.	have an opinion or idea about sth
arrange v arrangement n	I have <b>arranged</b> to see Jo tonight. I have <b>made an arrangement</b> with Jo.	make a plan for the future
argue v argument n	We mustn't <b>argue</b> about money. We mustn't <b>have an argument</b> .	talk angrily with sb because you do not agree
move v movement n	Something <b>moved</b> behind me. There was a <b>movement</b> behind me.	change place or position

### SPOTLIGHT suffix -ment

The suffix **-ment** is also common in English: **advertise v / advertisement n** **improve v / improvement n**

#### 4 Complete the table.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
move	<u>movement</u>	discover	.....
.....	success	.....	thought
arrange	.....	argue	.....
choose	.....	complain	.....

#### 5 Circle the correct answer.

- When you dance, you make movements / *complaints* with your body.
- 1 She had *an argument* / *a movement* with her boyfriend last night.
  - 2 Did you make a *complaint* / *choice* to the waiter about the cold soup?
  - 3 I had a *discovery* / *thought* about the business: I think we should sell it.
  - 4 They thought the plan would fail, but in fact it was a great *success* / *arrangement*.
  - 5 The *arrangements* / *successes* for the wedding were really good – it went very well.
  - 6 They have made an important *discovery* / *thought* about the crime.

#### 6 Complete the questions.

- Have you ever complained ..... about bad service on buses or trains?
- 1 Have you ever made a c..... about noise to a neighbour?
  - 2 In a restaurant, do you c..... what to eat quickly?
  - 3 At school, did you have a c..... of different subjects?
  - 4 Do you a..... a lot in your family?
  - 5 Have you ever had an a..... with a shop assistant?
  - 6 Would you like to s..... in business?
  - 7 Is s..... the most important thing in life?
  - 8 Do you often have t..... about what to do in your future?

#### ABOUT YOU

Yes, often!

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



#### TEST YOURSELF

## 79 Compound nouns

### A What are compound nouns?

This is common in English: word + word = new word. For example:

police + officer = **police officer**    phone + number = **phone number**  
bath + room = **bathroom**    art + gallery = **art gallery**

- We write some compound nouns as one word, e.g. **bathroom**, but many are two words, e.g. **phone number**.
- Many compound nouns are easy to understand when you know the other words, e.g. **railway station**, **address book**, **first floor**, **dining room**, **bus stop**, **dishwasher**. Sometimes they are less easy to understand, e.g. a **disc jockey** (usually called a **DJ**) is a person who plays music on the radio and in clubs.
- You will meet many compound nouns as you learn English: **past tense**, **past participle**, **phrasal verb** (see Unit 99); **capital letter**, e.g. ABC; **full stop** (at the end of a sentence); **question mark** = ?
- With compound nouns, the main stress is usually on the first word, e.g. **phone** number, but sometimes it is on the second word, e.g. full **stop**.

- 1 **Underline** the main stress on these compound words. Use the **APP** to help you.  
**Practise saying the words.**

► art gallery    ► full stop    bathroom    railway station    first floor    address book  
bus stop    phone number    dishwasher    capital letter    police officer

- 2 What do we call these places or things? Use a compound noun to label each picture.



1



2



3



4



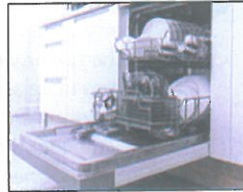
5



6



7



8

- 3 **Complete the sentences.**

- I'd like to visit that art gallery.
- My phone ..... is 07897 493321.
  - I found a police ..... and spoke to him.
  - My brother would like to be a disc ..... on the radio.
  - If it's a question, don't forget the question .....
  - What's the past ..... and past ..... of forget?  
~ That's easy. *Forgot* and *forgotten*.

- My parents live on the first ..... of the building.
- I waited at the bus ..... for about twenty minutes.
- Get on* and *get off* are both ..... verbs.
- You have to put a ..... stop at the end of the sentence.
- A new sentence always begins with a ..... letter.



TEST YOURSELF



## B In the town centre

... just after the **traffic lights**, we found a **car park**. Millie went to the **sports centre** to use the **swimming pool**, while Dan and I went to the **department store** in the new **shopping centre** to look at **washing machines**. We didn't buy one, but we had a very helpful **sales assistant**. After that, I did some shopping in the **high street**, and Dan went to the **ticket office** at the theatre. We came home after that, but Millie stayed and came back on **public transport**.



### GLOSSARY

<b>car park</b>	an area or a building where you can leave your car
<b>sports centre</b>	a large building where you can play different sports
<b>swimming pool</b>	a place that is built for people to swim in
<b>shopping centre</b>	a large building or area with a lot of shops
<b>sales assistant</b>	a person who serves you in a shop <b>ALSO shop assistant</b>
<b>high street</b>	the main street in a town or city where the shops are
<b>ticket office</b>	a place in a railway station, cinema, etc. where you can buy tickets

### SPOTLIGHT *centre and card*

One word often forms part of several compound words, e.g. **sports centre**, **shopping centre**, **town centre**. Another example is **card**: you give people a **birthday card** when it is their birthday; an **identity card** is a card with your name, photo, etc. on it; a **credit card** is a plastic card you use to buy things and pay for them later.

### 4 Find eight compound words using a word from each box.

car ✓	department	sports	office	transport	street
ticket	traffic	swimming	lights	park ✓	card
credit	public	high	pool	store	centre

car park

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Matt uses the gym in the sports centre.
- I don't travel much on \_\_\_\_\_ transport these days.
  - Do you normally use your \_\_\_\_\_ card to buy expensive things?
  - Did you remember to send Tia a \_\_\_\_\_ card? She was 21 last week.
  - A police officer asked to see my \_\_\_\_\_ card yesterday. I was very surprised.
  - There are lots of cafés now in the \_\_\_\_\_ street. They're replacing shops.
  - The \_\_\_\_\_ lights were red when that car went through.
  - By 10.30 there are very few spaces in the car \_\_\_\_\_.
  - I need to buy a new washing \_\_\_\_\_.
  - They had to go to the ticket \_\_\_\_\_ to collect the tickets.
  - We had a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ assistant in the \_\_\_\_\_ store yesterday.

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ How often do you use public transport?
- Do you have an \_\_\_\_\_ card? What information is on it?
  - Do you go to a sports \_\_\_\_\_? If so, what do you do there?
  - Do you have a \_\_\_\_\_ card? If so, what do you buy with it?
  - Do you use a local swimming \_\_\_\_\_? If so, how often?
  - How many \_\_\_\_\_ cards do you buy and send every year?
  - Do you often shop in a department \_\_\_\_\_? If so, what do you buy there?

### ABOUT YOU

Quite a lot. I use the buses every day.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to Exercise 6, or talk to another student.



### TEST YOURSELF

## 80 Likes and dislikes

### A Love it or hate it?

1 I love football.



2 I really like it.

3 I like it.

4 I quite like it.

5 I don't mind it.



6 I don't like it very much.

7 I don't like it.



8 I hate it.  
I don't like it at all.

#### SPOTLIGHT *love/like/hate + -ing*

After **love**, **like**, **hate** and **don't mind**, use a noun, a pronoun, or an **-ing** form:

■ I **love/like/hate/don't mind** { football.  
it.

■ I **love/like/hate/don't mind** **playing** football.

**Like** and **dislike** can also be nouns: *We all have different **likes** and **dislikes**.*

#### 1 Who is more positive (+)? Who is more negative (-)? Complete the answers with A or B.

- |                            |                                     |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ A loves coffee.          | B likes coffee.                     | A is more positive.     |
| 1 A likes tea.             | B quite likes tea.                  | ..... is more positive. |
| 2 A likes chocolate.       | B loves chocolate.                  | ..... is more positive. |
| 3 A really likes sport.    | B doesn't mind it.                  | ..... is more positive. |
| 4 A doesn't like sport.    | B doesn't like it at all.           | ..... is more negative. |
| 5 A hates pop music.       | B doesn't like pop music very much. | ..... is more negative. |
| 6 A doesn't like studying. | B doesn't mind studying.            | ..... is more negative. |

#### 2 Correct the mistakes.

▶ Do you like watch tennis?

Do you like watching tennis?

- 1 I hate it chocolaté.
- 2 They don't like to doing homework very much.
- 3 He doesn't like very much speaking English.
- 4 I like quite shopping.
- 5 She doesn't like drive.
- 6 I'm not mind working at night.

#### 3 Complete the sentences with one word.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ I don't like swimming very <u>much</u> .               | 5 I ..... writing emails – it's so boring.         |
| 1 I ..... going to the cinema – it's my favourite hobby. | 6 I don't ..... watching TV very much.             |
| 2 I don't like classical music at .....                  | 7 Most people hate housework, but I ..... like it. |
| 3 I don't ..... shopping – it's OK.                      | 8 I don't like talking on the phone ..... all.     |
| 4 I ..... like driving. I find it exciting.              |  |

#### 4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write your ideas, or ask another student.

▶ I really like swimming, and I go swimming a lot in the summer.



TEST YOURSELF



## B My favourite things

meetpeopleontheweb.com

**NAME** Mirko Zitec  
**WORK** I work for a TV company. It's a **wonderful** job – I love it.  
**STUDY** I'm learning to play the guitar. It's good **fun** and my teacher's **incredible**.  
**SPORTS** My **favourite** sport is tennis, but I also **enjoy** playing football.  
**TV/CINEMA** I don't watch TV – it's very **boring**, but I'm **interested in** old films from the 1960s. In fact, I **prefer** old films to **modern** ones.  
**MUSIC** I think **jazz** is really **interesting** – I go to a jazz club every Friday.



### GLOSSARY

**wonderful** very good **SYNS** **incredible, amazing**  
**fun** If sth is **fun**, it makes you happy.  
**favourite** Your **favourite** thing or person is the one you like most.  
**enjoy doing sth** If you **enjoy doing sth**, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. **enjoyable** *adj*  
**boring** **OPP** **interesting**  
**old** made or bought a long time ago **OPP** **new** **OR** **modern**  
**prefer (X to Y)** like sb or sth more than another person or thing  
**jazz** a kind of music, e.g. Louis Armstrong, Duke Ellington

### SPOTLIGHT *boring/bored, interesting/interested, etc.*

'The film was **boring**' means the same as 'I was **bored by** the film'.

(NOT *The film was bored.*)

It is the same with **interesting** and **interested**: 'I think modern art is **interesting**' has the same meaning as 'I'm **interested in** modern art'.

(NOT *I'm interesting in modern art.*)



He's boring. She's bored.

### 5 Write eight more sentences using words from 1, 2, and 3.

	1	2	3	
▶	It's ✓	not interested	boss.	It's a wonderful city.
1	I	the party	city. ✓	
2	I'm	favourite	watching TV.	
3	My	enjoy	film is <i>Star Wars</i> .	
4	She	amazing	enjoyable.	
5	He's an	a wonderful ✓	in politics.	
6	Was	is	programme.	
7	It's	prefers reading	good fun?	
8	Singing	a boring	to writing.	

### 6 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

interesting fun interested modern enjoy  
 prefer favourite incredible enjoyable ✓

- ▶ Do you think flying is enjoyable ?  
 1 Is learning English good \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 2 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ meat to fish?  
 3 What's your \_\_\_\_\_ city?  
 4 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ in jazz?  
 5 Do you think history is \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 6 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ walking in the countryside?  
 7 Do you know a restaurant where the food is \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 8 Do you like old houses, or do you prefer \_\_\_\_\_ houses?

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.













TEST YOURSELF

# 81 Free time

## A Common activities

What do you do in your free time?

I go ...	I play ...	I like ... I do (quite) a lot of ...	
 camping	 the guitar	 travelling	 I collect stamps, coins, etc.
 fishing	 golf	 drawing and painting	 I go out with friends.
 to the gym	 computer games	 cooking	 I watch TV and films.

### 1 Can you do these things inside your home? Write Yes or No.

- |                           |                           |                      |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| ▶ watch TV <u>Yes</u>     | ▶ go to the gym <u>No</u> | collect stamps ..... |
| go fishing .....          | do some travelling .....  | play golf .....      |
| play computer games ..... | go out with friends ..... |                      |
| do a lot of drawing ..... | go camping .....          |                      |

### 2 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- |                 |                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ do <u>e</u>   | a painting              |
| 1 go .....      | b football magazines    |
| 2 collect ..... | c the guitar            |
| 3 do some ..... | d television            |
| 4 go out .....  | e a lot of travelling ✓ |
| 5 play .....    | f with my brothers      |
| 6 watch .....   | g camping               |

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of do, go, collect, watch, play or make.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| ▶ I often <u>go</u> to the gym.      | 6 She ..... out every night to a club. |
| 1 Jojo ..... a lot of cooking.       | 7 Do you ..... golf?                   |
| 2 My brother ..... old clocks.       | 8 He ..... too much TV.                |
| 3 I'd like to ..... the guitar.      | 9 They ..... fishing every weekend.    |
| 4 Do you often ..... camping?        | 10 She ..... quite a lot of painting.  |
| 5 I don't ..... much travelling now. |  |

### 4 ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Make a list of the activities you do now, the activities you would like to do, and the ones you aren't interested in.



TEST YOURSELF



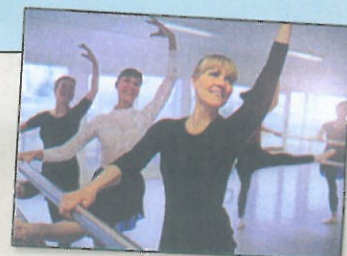
## B Hobbies

### Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many **hobbies**. Older people enjoy **gardening**, fishing, and **repairing** cars. For younger people, there are **various clubs** in and outside school where children learn a lot of activities. **Popular** hobbies include sport, the arts, computers, listening to music, and collecting different things.

**NATASHA:** I like listening to **rock music**. I also like playing football with my friends, and I do a lot of drawing and reading. But my favourite hobby is **dancing**<sup>1</sup> (you can see me in the photo), and I'm quite **good at** it.

**KOLYA:** I play the guitar, and I can **sing** Russian and English **songs**. I often sing in the shower! I'm **good at** swimming and skiing. I also like travelling very much.



#### GLOSSARY

<b>hobby</b>	an activity that you like doing in your free time	<b>popular</b>	If sth is <b>popular</b> , many people like it.
<b>gardening</b>	working in your garden	<b>rock music</b>	music by, for example, The Rolling Stones and Bruce Springsteen
<b>repair</b>	make sth work when there is a problem, e.g. cars, bikes	<b>good at sth</b>	able to do sth well ( <b>NOT good in sth</b> )
<b>various</b>	some that are different: <i>There are various places to go.</i>	<b>sing</b>	make music with your voice: <i>Ed Sheeran is a singer. He sings songs.</i>
<b>club</b>	a group of people who do sth together, or the place where they meet		

5 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the to help you.

Practise saying the words.

► rock / club S

1 repair / various

3 gardening / sing

5 hobby / song

2 good at / shooting

4 various / popular

6 rock music / club

6 Look at the text again. Tick (✓) the true sentences, and correct the false sentences.

► Natasha doesn't like rock music. False. She likes rock music.

1 Older people enjoy gardening.

2 Natasha is a good singer.

3 Kolya plays the piano.

4 There are no clubs in schools.

5 Kolya has various hobbies.

6 Natasha is very good at dancing.

7 Computers and collecting things are not popular hobbies.

8 Younger people like repairing cars.

7 Complete the sentences.

► Do you go to any sports clubs? If so, what kind?

1 What's your favourite h\_\_\_\_\_?

2 What hobbies are p\_\_\_\_\_ with younger people?

3 Do you have v\_\_\_\_\_ hobbies, or only one or two?

4 Are you a good s\_\_\_\_\_?

5 Write the name of one s\_\_\_\_\_ you can sing.

6 Write down something you are good \_\_\_\_\_.

7 Are you good at r\_\_\_\_\_ things, e.g. a broken cup?

#### ABOUT YOU

8 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.



#### TEST YOURSELF

# 82 Sport

## A Games and sports



goal  
football/soccer



baseball



basketball



swimming



American football



tennis



table tennis



ice hockey



running



motor racing



skiing



team

player

### SPOTLIGHT verbs with games and sport

We **play** a game:

- I **play** football and tennis.

We usually **do** a sport, especially when it is a lot or a bit:

- I **do** a lot of swimming. ■ She **does** a bit of running.

We also use **go** with -ing forms:

- I often **go** swimming.

### 1 Combine words to find five more games or sports.

ice	base ✓	motor	tennis	▶ baseball	.....
football	table	basket	ball ✓	.....	.....
ball	American	racing	hockey	.....	.....

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ People who play basketball are usually very tall.
- 1 I watched a fantastic ..... of ice hockey on TV last night.
- 2 Do you need a lot of snow for ..... ?
- 3 Do you think motor ..... is dangerous?
- 4 The children sometimes ..... swimming in the sea.
- 5 My husband and I ..... a lot of swimming in the lake near our home.
- 6 I want to do a ..... of running this summer.
- 7 You need 11 ..... for a football .....
- 8 We went to the game and watched it from behind the .....

### 3 Which sports in the photos can you do inside a building?

INSIDE A BUILDING	OUTSIDE A BUILDING
swimming	baseball
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Which games do you play, and how often? .....
- 2 Which other sports do you do? .....
- 3 Which games and sports do you watch on TV? .....
- 4 Which sports do people do a lot in your country? .....



TEST YOURSELF



## B Football

ITALY	Played	Won	Drawn	Lost	Goals for	Goals against	Points
Juventus	34	24	9	1	63	22	81
Inter Milan	34	24	4	6	75	27	76
AS Roma	34	22	5	7	61	26	71

On Friday, Juventus **won** their important **match against** Inter Milan. Cuadrado **scored** the only **goal** in the 70<sup>th</sup> minute. This means they are still **top** and now **lead** Inter **by** five points. On Saturday, Sampdoria was only able to **draw** their match **with** Torino. At Napoli, Roma were leading two goals to **nil** at **half-time**, but then Napoli played much better in the second half to make the **final score** 2-2. Lazio **beat** Genoa 3-1, while Fiorentina **lost** 2-1 to Milan.

### GLOSSARY

<b>goal</b>	what you get in football when the ball goes into the goal
<b>point</b>	sth that you win in a game or sport: <i>The team has six <b>points</b> from three games. He needs another <b>point</b> to win the game.</i>
<b>match</b>	a game between two teams
<b>against</b>	One player or team plays <b>against</b> another player or team.
<b>score</b>	win goals, points, etc. in a game <b>score</b> <i>n</i>
<b>top</b>	the highest of the teams
<b>lead</b>	be in front of others in a game or sport
<b>nil</b>	the number 0, especially when it's used in games such as football
<b>half-time</b>	a period of rest between the first half and the second half
<b>final score</b>	the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g. 2-1

### SPOTLIGHT Irregular verbs

<b>win</b> <i>pt won</i>	be the best or first:
▪ We <b>won</b> 2-1.	
<b>beat</b> <i>sb pt beat</i>	win against sb:
▪ We <b>beat</b> Sampdoria 2-1.	
<b>draw</b> <i>with/against sb pt drew</i>	end a game with the same number of goals:
▪ We <b>drew</b> 3-3 <b>with/against</b> Roma.	
<b>lose</b> <i>to sb pt lost</i>	not win against sb:
▪ We <b>lost</b> 1-2 <b>to</b> Milan.	

### 5 Correct the underlined mistakes.

- ▶ Fiorentina draw with AS Roma. drew
- 1 Lazio have a play next Saturday.
- 2 Inter are playing with Parma.
- 3 Genoa lost 3-1 with Fiorentina.
- 4 Messi did two goals.
- 5 Parma won by two goals to zero.
- 6 Cagliari beated Sampdoria.
- 7 Milan win their game last week.
- 8 Did they drew the match?
- 9 Milan won 3-1 with Roma.

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ They scored in the first minute.
- 1 It's an important next week.
- 2 We are playing Valencia.
- 3 Seville 1-2 to Barcelona.
- 4 Bilbao 2-2 Villareal.
- 5 It was 0-0 at half-.
- 6 They have 24 from 13 games.
- 7 On Sunday, Espanyol Real Betis 2-1.
- 8 Ronaldo the goal.
- 9 We our last match 4-1.
- 10 They were 1-0 at half-time.
- 11 What was the final ?

### 7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Find the football scores this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.

- ▶ Boca Juniors beat River Plate one nil. Cristian Pavón scored the only goal.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 83 Music

## A Classical music



audience

orchestra

### concert

The orchestra is playing a piece of music by Haydn.



violin

violinist Vanessa Mae  
She's playing a concerto by Vivaldi.



piano

pianist Lang Lang  
He's playing music by Gershwin.



opera singer  
Jonas Kaufmann is performing.

### GLOSSARY

<b>concert</b>	a public performance of music
<b>classical music</b>	Western <b>classical music</b> includes music by Bach, Beethoven and Stravinsky. <b>musical adj</b> a single thing: <i>a piece of music</i>
<b>a piece</b>	
<b>(musical) instrument</b>	A piano and a violin are <b>musical instruments</b> .
<b>perform</b>	do sth in front of an audience, e.g. act in a play, sing, etc. <b>performance n</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *by*

We say a book **by** Tolstoy, a song **by** Beyoncé, a painting **by** Picasso, a film **by** Martin Scorsese, etc.

### 1 Make music words from the letters.

- ▶ lioniv violin
- 1 onctecr .....
- 2 choartser .....
- 3 tiaspni .....
- 4 deniacue .....
- 5 froeprn .....
- 6 rapoe grisne .....
- 7 refrancepom .....

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Last night we went to a concert at the Royal Albert Hall.
- 1 Beethoven wrote ..... music.
- 2 A person who plays the piano is a .....
- 3 A person who plays the violin is a .....
- 4 A large group of people who play classical music together is called an .....
- 5 A piano and a violin are types of .....
- 6 A concert is a public ..... of music.
- 7 The people who listen to a concert are the .....
- 8 The orchestra ..... some music by Mozart. It was wonderful!
- 9 Bach wrote some wonderful ..... of music.
- 10 *La Bohème* is an opera ..... Puccini.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you go to classical music concerts? If yes, when was the last time? .....
- 2 Can you think any of pieces of classical music that you like? .....
- 3 Did you ever learn the piano or the violin as a child? If yes, do you still play? .....
- 4 Do you play a different musical instrument? .....
- 5 What is your favourite musical instrument? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Pop and rock

In the past, **bands** recorded an **album** onto a **CD**, people bought the album, and the **performers** made money. Now, most people are able to **download music** onto their computers and phones. This is good for listeners, but not so good for **musicians**, because most of them do not get much money from music streaming websites.

So, many performers are now going **back on tour**, travelling around the country (and the world), playing live concerts and at music **festivals** to earn more money. And audiences seem to love this opportunity to see their favourite singers and **groups** performing all their **hit records** live.



CD



### SPOTLIGHT *record something and a record*

If you **record something**, you put music or film on a CD. A **record** (note the different pronunciation) is a song, or sometimes an album.

■ David Bowie made his last **record** only days before he died.

### GLOSSARY

<b>band</b>	( <b>also group</b> ), e.g. Coldplay, Guns N'Roses	<b>musician</b>	a person who plays a musical instrument
<b>album</b>	a number of songs, often about ten, on a CD or record	<b>on tour</b>	travelling to many different places to play live concerts
<b>CD</b>	(see picture)	<b>live</b>	(sounds like five) If sth is <b>live</b> , you see it or hear it at the same time as it happens.
<b>performer</b>	sb who performs music, or acts in the theatre	<b>festival</b>	a big event, e.g. concerts or shows, in one place
<b>be able to</b>	If you <b>are able to</b> do sth, you can do it; you have the knowledge you need. <b>ability</b> <i>n</i>	<b>hit</b>	a thing that a lot of people like: <i>The song was a <b>hit</b> in the US.</i> <b>a hit record</b>
<b>download music</b>	copy music from the internet onto a computer, phone, etc.		

### 4 What can you remember? Underline the correct answer.

- ▶ Bands record albums onto a hit / CD.
- 1 In the past, performers *made* / *didn't make* money from albums.
- 2 Downloading music is *good* / *not good* for most performers.
- 3 Downloading music is *more expensive* / *cheaper* than buying CDs.
- 4 Bands *go* / *don't go* on tour to make more money.
- 5 Groups *are able to* / *aren't able to* perform at music festivals.
- 6 People *like* / *don't like* seeing groups live.

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Metallica are still a very famous band/group.
- 1 Coldplay are planning to go on \_\_\_\_\_ again next year.
- 2 I once saw Beyoncé \_\_\_\_\_ at Carnegie Hall in New York. She was amazing.
- 3 *Sergeant Pepper* is still the most famous \_\_\_\_\_ by the Beatles.
- 4 *You Belong With Me* was a big \_\_\_\_\_ for Taylor Swift.
- 5 I bought three \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
- 6 Paul McCartney is a great \_\_\_\_\_. He plays guitar and piano.
- 7 Adele was the first \_\_\_\_\_ that I ever saw live.
- 8 I saw Radiohead and the Foo Fighters at a summer \_\_\_\_\_ in 2017.
- 9 David Bowie \_\_\_\_\_ his last album, *Blackstar*, shortly before he died.
- 10 With a computer or smartphone, you have the \_\_\_\_\_ to download music.

### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

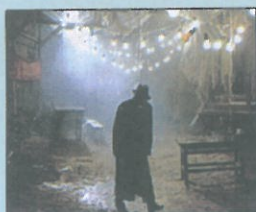
- 1 Who's your favourite group/band? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you buy their CDs or download their music? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Have you ever seen them live? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What's their best album? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do they often go on tour? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do they have many hit records? Why? / Why not? \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

# 84 Films

## A Describing films



A thriller is often exciting.



A comedy is funny.



A war film is often violent.



A love story is romantic.



An action film  
(ALSO an adventure film)  
is exciting.



A horror film is scary.



A cartoon is often funny.



A science fiction film  
(ALSO sci-fi) can be scary.

### SPOTLIGHT What kind/type/sort of ...?

- What kind of film is it? ~ It's a thriller.
- What type of music do you like? ~ Rock music.
- What sort of films are exciting? ~ Action films.

1 Tick the words with the same pronunciation as the underlined letters in *buy*, *fly*, *like*.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |            |          |         |       |
|------------|----------|---------|-------|
| describe ✓ | fiction  | science | film  |
| violent    | exciting | scary   | crime |

2 Complete the kinds of films.

► wa r fi lm

1 thl e r

2 cm

3 ct n f

4 scn ft n

5 ct n

6 lv st

7 hr f

3 Complete the sentences.

► Was the film a thriller?

~ Yes, and quite violent.

1 What sort of film is it?

2 I went to see an action film.

3 What kind of films do you like?

4 Do you like romantic films?

5 It was a very scary horror film.

6 Was it a good comedy?

~ Yes, it was funny.

7 The film was a thriller of thriller.

4 Write one adjective to describe each picture.



► exciting



1



2



3



4



### TEST YOURSELF



## B What's on?

- A** What's on at the cinema?  
**B** There's a film on called *Pacific Rim Uprising*.  
**A** What kind of film is it?  
**B** It's a sci-fi movie. It's about people from another planet who arrive on Earth. It's had brilliant reviews.  
**A** OK. Who's in it?  
**B** It stars John Boyega – he's the hero.  
**A** Oh, I like John Boyega – he's a good actor. Who's the director?  
**B** Stephen DeKnight. I've never heard of him, actually.  
**A** And where's it on?  
**B** The Odeon.  
**A** OK. Well, let's go and see it.



### GLOSSARY

<b>What's on?</b>	= What films can we see?	<b>star</b>	be one of the main actors in a film/programme. The person is a <b>star</b> .
<b>cinema</b>	a place where you see films	<b>hero</b>	the most important man in a book or film. A woman is a <b>heroine</b> .
<b>movie</b>	film	<b>actor</b>	e.g. Idris Elba or Meryl Streep. A female actor can also be called an <b>actress</b> .
<b>It's about ...</b>	the subject is ...	<b>director</b>	a person who makes a film, e.g. Alfred Hitchcock
<b>planet Earth</b>	where we live. Mars and Venus are also <b>planets</b> .	<b>Where's it on?</b>	= Where can we see the film?
<b>brilliant</b>	inf very good	<b>let's</b>	used for making a suggestion for sth to do
<b>review</b>	an article about a film in a newspaper or on the internet		
<b>Who's in it?</b>	= Which actors are in the film?		

### 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- A film is a movie. T  
**1** Antonio Banderas is an actress. ....  
**2** The star is the main actor in a film. ....  
**3** A review is a kind of article. ....  
**4** Mars is a planet. ....  
**5** The heroine is a man. ....  
**6** The Earth is round. ....  
**7** Steven Spielberg is an actor. ....

### 6 Complete the conversation.

- What 's on at the cinema? ~ An old film called *Dark Star*.  
 Oh, what sort of film is it? ~ It's a sci-fi movie, but it's also funny.  
 What's it **(1)** ? ~ I'm not sure, but it's had **(2)** reviews.  
 OK, and who's **(3)** it? ~ It **(4)** Dan O'Bannon, who plays the **(5)**.  
 Oh, I like him. He's a good **(6)**.  
 Who's the **(7)** ? ~ John Carpenter. He's great.  
 OK. And where's it **(8)** ? ~ At the ABC cinema.  
 OK. **(9)** go and see it tonight. ~ Fine.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1** What kind of films do you like? .....  
**2** What was the last film you saw? .....  
**3** Where was it on? .....  
**4** Who are the stars of the film? .....  
**5** Who's the director? .....  
**6** What's it about? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 85 The media

## A Media questionnaire

### 1 What do you watch on TV / the internet?

- a ☐ the news  
b ☐ crime drama  
c ☐ films  
d ☐ nothing

### 2 Why do people read a newspaper or look at the news online?

- a ☐ to find out what has happened  
b ☐ because it has interesting articles  
c ☐ for the sports results  
d ☐ for the business news

### 3 What do you listen to on the radio?

- a ☐ the news  
b ☐ music programmes  
c ☐ something else  
d ☐ nothing

### 4 Do you believe what you read or hear in the news?

- a ☐ yes, all of it  
b ☐ most of it  
c ☐ some of it  
d ☐ no, none of it

### GLOSSARY

the news [U]	a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world. <b>News</b> [U] is information about things that have just happened.
crime drama	a police story on TV
newspaper	e.g. <i>The Times</i> , <i>The Washington Post</i> ALSO <b>paper</b>
find out	get information or facts about sth
happen	take place: <i>We don't know what will happen tomorrow.</i>
article	a piece of writing in a newspaper or magazine, or on the internet
on TV / on the radio	(NOT <i>in TV</i> / <i>in the radio</i> ) ALSO <b>in the (news)paper</b>
programme	a TV/radio show, e.g. the news, a comedy
believe	think that sth is true
all (of sth)	100%
most (of sth)	80%
some (of sth)	30-50%
none (of sth)	0%

### SPOTLIGHT watch, see, listen, hear

We **watch** TV, but we **see** or **watch** a programme, a film, etc.

We **listen to the radio**, but we **hear** a programme or **listen to a programme**.

### 1 Circle the correct answer. – means that no word is needed.

- See ☐ to the film.  
1 Read an article **on** / **in** the paper.  
2 Let's listen to **the** / **a** news.  
3 Watch a programme **in** / **on** TV.  
4 Find – / **out** what has happened.  
5 I heard it **in** / **on** the radio.  
6 See the **programme** / **article** on TV.  
7 Did you hear – / **to** the sports results?  
8 I heard all – / **of** it.  
9 I bought **a newspaper** / **the news**.  
10 I watched most – / **of** it.  
11 There's a new **crime** / **news** drama.

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- I always **read** \_\_\_\_\_ a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read **all** \_\_\_\_\_ of it?  
1 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ TV last night? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ a programme about dogs.  
2 I read the story but I don't \_\_\_\_\_ it's true. ~ No, \_\_\_\_\_ of it is true. It's completely false.  
3 Have you heard the \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, what's \_\_\_\_\_?  
4 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ the 8 o'clock news.  
5 What's in the \_\_\_\_\_ this morning? ~ I don't know – I never buy one.  
6 What did you watch \_\_\_\_\_ TV? ~ A new crime \_\_\_\_\_. It was good.  
7 What did you listen \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Oh, nothing interesting.  
8 Did you see anything on Saturday? ~ Yeah, a \_\_\_\_\_ about climate change.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Read the questionnaire again. Tick (✓) your answers, or write a different answer. If possible, ask another student.



#### TEST YOURSELF



## B Media vocabulary

Word	Example	Meaning
media	The <b>media</b> often write about famous people.	TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet
magazine	Do you read women's <b>magazines</b> ?	something you can buy every week or month, e.g. <i>Time</i> , <i>National Geographic</i>
opinion	What's your <b>opinion</b> of this story?	what you think about sth
report	Journalists <b>report</b> the news from all over the world.	give information on the news. The person is a <b>reporter/journalist</b> .
event	The Olympic Games is a very big <b>event</b> .	something important that happens. It can be good or bad.
die	Nobody <b>died</b> in the accident.	stop living
war	The two countries were <b>at war</b> for ten years.	fighting between countries or groups of people. When a <b>war</b> ends, there is <b>peace</b> .
disaster	The tsunami was a terrible <b>disaster</b> .	something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die
celebrity (pl celebrities)	There were a lot of <b>celebrities</b> at the first night of the film.	a famous person, usually from TV, film or sport
advertisement (ALSO advert/ad inf)	There are too many <b>adverts</b> on TV and in the papers.	text, a picture or a short film which tries to sell you sth

### 4 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- What do the media say about him? / What does the newspaper say about him? **D**
- 1 There is peace between the two groups. / There is war between the two groups. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What's your opinion of the news? / What do you think of the news? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 It was a great event. / It was a great advertisement. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I read a magazine article. / I read a newspaper article. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He is reporting from Seoul. / He is a journalist working in Seoul. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I saw it in an ad. / I saw it in an advertisement. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 She's a TV celebrity. / She's on TV a lot. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Where did he live? / Where did he die? \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 She's a good reporter. / She's a good journalist. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the text with words from the table in the correct form.

The ► **media** is TV, radio, newspapers, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and the internet. The media (2) \_\_\_\_\_ important (3) \_\_\_\_\_ from around the world, for example, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ like the Asian Tsunami, or (5) \_\_\_\_\_ between different countries. As well as reporting the news, the media give their (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of events round the world. And, of course, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ also like to write about (8) \_\_\_\_\_ such as Taylor Swift and Usain Bolt, and so on.

### 6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What has happened in the news this week? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What has been an important event in the last five years? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do you usually get news from TV, radio, newspapers or the internet? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Can you think of a popular TV advert now? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Can you name a famous TV news reporter? \_\_\_\_\_



#### TEST YOURSELF

# 86 Books

## A Fiction

J.K. Rowling is a famous British **author**. She has written a **series** of **novels** in which the **main character** is a young boy called Harry Potter, who is always **in trouble**. Rowling has also **created** a number of novels about a private **detective** called Cormoran Strike. He's also **in trouble** a lot because, like Harry Potter, he doesn't like **rules**. But in the end, like Harry, he **solves** the crime or the problem.



### GLOSSARY

<b>fiction</b>	stories that sb writes that are not about real events <i>OPP non-fiction</i>
<b>author</b>	a person who writes books or stories <i>SYN writer</i>
<b>series</b>	a number of things of the same kind that come one after another: <i>a TV series</i>
<b>novel</b>	a book of fiction
<b>main character</b>	the most important person in a book, film, etc.
<b>create</b>	make sth new happen or be
<b>detective</b>	a person who tries to find out who did a crime; usually a police officer
<b>rule</b>	sth that tells you what you must or must not do: <i>school rules</i> . If you <b>break a rule</b> , you do sth you mustn't do.
<b>solve</b>	find the answer to a question or problem <i>solution n</i>

### SPOTLIGHT *trouble*

**Trouble** (*often singular*) means difficulty, problems or worry:

■ *I had a lot of trouble finding a job.*

If you **are in trouble**, you are in a situation which is dangerous or where you have problems, often with parents, the police or a boss.

### 1 True or false? Write T or F.

► A series is more than one. T

1 **Non-fiction** and **fiction** are the same thing. ....

2 An **author** is a **writer**. ....

3 A **detective** is often a policeman. ....

4 If you are **in trouble**, that's good. ....

5 The **main character** in a book is the most important person. ....

6 **Rules** are things that you must do and follow. ....

7 A **novel** is a book of real events. ....

8 If you **solve** something, you find an answer to a problem. ....

9 If you **create** something, you break it. ....

10 A **solution** to a problem is an answer. ....

### 2 Complete the text.

Adrian McKinty is an Irish ► author who has written a (1) series of crime (2) novels. The main (3) character in these stories is a (4) detective called Sean Duffy, but he isn't a typical policeman. McKinty has (5) created a character who often breaks (6) rules, and because of this, he's often in (7) trouble with his bosses. But in the end, of course, he always (8) solves the crime.

### 3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- A famous author from your country who writes novels. ....
- A novel that this person has written. ....
- A popular series on TV in your country. ....
- One of the main characters in this TV series. ....
- The name of a famous detective in fiction. ....
- A rule that you sometimes break or have broken. ....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Fact and fiction

Mary Shelley is a famous English writer from the 19<sup>th</sup> century. **In the past**, she was **mostly** famous for the novel *Frankenstein*, but in **recent** years, people have **realized** that she **achieved** much more. **In fact**, she wrote a **variety** of books, **including** novels, short stories, travel books and biographies (stories about other people's lives). During her life, she also **tried** to **publish** work written by her husband, Percy Bysshe Shelley, who died when he was only 29.



### GLOSSARY

<b>in the past</b>	in the time before now
<b>mostly</b>	almost all: <i>My students are <b>mostly</b> Japanese.</i> <small>SYN mainly</small>
<b>recent</b>	that happened or began only a short time ago
<b>realize</b>	understand and know something: <i>I studied law, but I <b>realize</b> now that it was a mistake.</i>
<b>achieve</b>	do sth well after trying hard: <i>She <b>achieved</b> a lot in her life.</i>
<b>in fact</b>	often used for introducing more information
<b>variety</b>	a lot of different things
<b>including</b>	with: <i>There were 12, <b>including</b> me.</i> (= 11 plus me)
<b>try</b>	If you <b>try</b> to do sth, you work hard to do it: <i>I <b>tried</b> to call Clara yesterday, but she was busy all day.</i>
<b>publish</b>	prepare a book so you can sell it

#### 4 Circle the two words that have the same sound underlined. Use the APP to help you.

Practise saying the words.

▶ past arm / at

1 mine / same / mainly

2 mostly / hot / home

3 fit / realize / fine

4 achieve / child / receive

5 pull / butter / publish

6 man / variety / another

7 blue / run / including

8 recent / red / see

#### 5 Circle the correct answer.

▶ In the past is around / before now.

1 Including you is with you / without you.

2 If you realize something, you know it / don't know it.

3 If you achieve something, that's bad / good.

4 A variety is one thing / lots of different things.

5 If you publish a book, it is / isn't ready to sell.

6 If something is recent, it happened a long / short time ago.

7 I mostly work means the same as I possibly / mainly work.

8 You use in fact to give more information / an example of something.

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

▶ The book isn't difficult. In fact , it's a very easy book to read, and also quite short.

1 In the p....., bookshops were closed on Sundays, but now they are m..... open.

2 I've got ten books in English, i..... this one.

3 I wanted to buy a dictionary, but I r..... I didn't have enough money.

4 The company p..... Maria's first book last year, and it is selling very well.

5 You will find a wide v..... of books on cooking in this shop.

6 He t..... many times to write a novel. Finally at the age of 36, he a..... it. Now he's a famous author.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 87 Arranging a holiday

## A Things you need to do

Things you might do or arrange before you go on holiday:

- \* book the flight
- \* book the accommodation
- \* check your passport <sup>1</sup>
- \* get foreign money
- \* pack your suitcase



### GLOSSARY

<b>arrange</b>	plan and organize sth
<b>holiday</b>	a period of rest from work or school
<b>(go) on holiday</b>	If you <b>go on holiday</b> or <b>are on holiday</b> , you are not at work and you are usually away from home.
<b>book</b>	arrange to do or have sth, e.g. a table at a restaurant
<b>flight</b>	a journey by plane <b>fly</b> v pt <b>flew</b> pp <b>flown</b>
<b>accommodation</b> [U]	a place to stay, e.g. a hotel
<b>check</b>	look at sth to see it is right, good or safe
<b>foreign</b>	of another country
<b>pack</b>	put clothes in a suitcase
<b>suitcase</b>	a large bag you put your clothes in when you travel

### SPOTLIGHT *might + verb*

**Might** means 'it is possible that / perhaps'. **Might** is the same in all forms.

- You **might** be ill on holiday. = It's possible that you will be ill.
- He **might** forget his passport. ■ He **might** be on holiday now.

### 1 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- |               |       |                     |
|---------------|-------|---------------------|
| ► fly         | e     | a on holiday        |
| 1 book        | ..... | b the accommodation |
| 2 get foreign | ..... | c your passport     |
| 3 pack        | ..... | d money             |
| 4 arrange     | ..... | e to Rome airport ✓ |
| 5 go          | ..... | f your suitcase     |
| 6 check       | ..... | g a flight          |

### 2 Complete the text.

I'm going on ► **holiday** ..... for two weeks this Saturday. I finally decided to go to Turkey, so I booked the (1) ..... with Turkish Airlines. I needed (2) ..... too, so I looked on the internet for hotels in Izmir. I found a nice one and (3) ..... to stay there for the first week. After that, we're not sure but we (4) ..... go and stay near the beach. I also got some (5) ..... money. I'm very organized, so I have already (6) ..... that my passport is OK, and I have also (7) ..... my suitcase. I'm ready to go. Unfortunately, my husband is not so organized. He never looks at his passport and won't pack his (8) ..... until the night before we travel.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

When you go on holiday ...

- do you arrange it yourself, or does somebody else do it? *I don't do it. My wife does. She usually arranges everything.*
- 1 do you usually book a flight a long time before you travel? Why? / Why not? .....
- 2 do you usually need to book accommodation? Why? / Why not? .....
- 3 do you usually get foreign money before you travel? .....
- 4 do you always pack your suitcase yourself? .....
- 5 do you often check your passport? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B Booking accommodation

A Hotel Metropole. How can I help you?

B Oh, good morning. I'd like to book a room for next Friday please, that's the 24<sup>th</sup>.

A OK. Yes, we have rooms available. Single or double?

B A double room, please.

A OK. A double room is £90 a night, and all our rooms are en suite.

B Good. And is breakfast extra?

A No, breakfast is included.

B OK, great. How about parking?

A I'm afraid we don't have parking at the hotel.

B Oh dear!

A But there's a car park very near.

B OK, well it doesn't matter. Yes, I'll take the room.

A Fine. Could I just take a few details then ...



double room



single room

### GLOSSARY

<b>available</b>	ready for you to use, have or see
<b>(£90) a night</b>	= (£90) for one night <b>ALSO</b> (£90) <b>a week/a month</b>
<b>en suite</b>	a bedroom with a bathroom
<b>extra</b>	more than is usual: <i>You pay an extra £20 for a large room.</i>
<b>include</b>	have sth or sb as part of sth else: <i>The meal will be about £30, but that includes service.</i>
<b>parking</b>	a place to leave a car
<b>I'm afraid</b>	= I'm sorry (NOT <del>I'm afraid but</del> ) I'm afraid not = I'm sorry but no.
<b>Oh dear!</b>	used for showing that you are surprised or unhappy about sth
<b>it doesn't matter</b>	= it isn't important
<b>details</b>	information, e.g. your name, address, phone number

### 4 Is this good news? Write Yes or No.

- There is parking. Yes
- 1 I'm afraid ...
- 2 The room's en suite.
- 3 Breakfast is extra.

4 There are rooms available.

5 Oh dear!

6 Breakfast is included.

7 I'm afraid not.

### 5 Match 1-5 with a-f.

- Breakfast c
- 1 book
- 2 I'm afraid
- 3 It doesn't
- 4 Oh
- 5 £100
- a matter.
- b dear!
- c is included. ✓
- d a room
- e a week
- f not.

### 6 Complete the dialogue. Write one word in each space.

- A Regent Hotel, can I help you?
- B Oh, hello. Do you have any rooms (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for this weekend?
- A Would you like a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ room or a (3) \_\_\_\_\_?
- B A double, please.
- A OK. All our rooms are (4) \_\_\_\_\_.
- B Good. Is that with a bath and shower?
- A Just a shower.
- B Oh (5) \_\_\_\_\_ - I prefer baths. Oh well, it doesn't (6) \_\_\_\_\_. A shower's OK.
- A And a double room is €75 (7) \_\_\_\_\_ night.
- B That's fine. And does that (8) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast?
- A No, I'm (9) \_\_\_\_\_ not. Breakfast is (10) \_\_\_\_\_.
- B Right. And what about (11) \_\_\_\_\_?
- A Yes, there is a car park at the hotel. Is there anything else?
- B No, that's great. I'd like to book the room.
- A Fine. Could you just give me a few (12) \_\_\_\_\_, please?



### TEST YOURSELF

# 88 Hotels

## A Describe a hotel

### travel blog

#### Atlanta Hotel (VILNIUS Lithuania)

When we **went on a trip** to Lithuania, we **stayed** at this hotel near the Old Town. The bedrooms were good, and the **service** was **excellent**: everyone was friendly and very **helpful** with all the information that **tourists** need. There was also a café bar where we could meet and **chat** to other **guests**. I would **definitely recommend** both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short **stay**.



### GLOSSARY

<b>trip</b>	a journey to a place and back again: <i>go on a trip</i>	<b>tourist</b>	sb who goes to a place on holiday <b>tourism</b> <i>n</i>
<b>stay</b> (at a hotel)	live for a short time (in a hotel) <b>stay</b> <i>n</i>	<b>chat</b>	talk in a friendly informal way to sb <b>chat</b> <i>n</i>
<b>service</b> [U]	the work that sb does for guests in a hotel, customers in a shop or restaurant, etc.	<b>guest</b>	a person staying in a hotel or your home
<b>excellent</b>	very good: <i>an excellent student/musician</i>	<b>definitely</b>	for sure; 100% <b>SYN</b> <b>certainly</b>
<b>helpful</b>	wanting to help	<b>recommend</b>	tell sb that a thing or a person is good

### 1 Circle the correct answer.

- We lived / stayed at a hotel for our holiday.
- 1 We went on / made a trip to India last month.
- 2 It was lovely – I recommend / don't recommend it.
- 3 The dinner was excellent / helpful.
- 4 A lot of tourists / guests visit our city.
- 5 It was great, so I definitely / possibly want to go again.
- 6 We had a short service / stay in Budapest last year.
- 7 I think service / tourism is important to Lithuania.
- 8 We often stay / chat to other guests in the hotel in the evening.

### 2 Complete the text.

Last month we had a short ► stay in Amsterdam. We were at quite a small hotel, but all the people who worked there spoke (1) English, and they were very (2) friendly. They told us about the best places for (3) visiting to visit such as the Van Gogh Museum, and they also introduced us to other (4) guests who were (5) staying at the hotel. If you are thinking of going to Amsterdam, I would (6) recommend this hotel, and you should (7) definitely go to the Van Gogh Museum while you are there.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions.

- What was the last hotel you stayed at ?
- 1 How long did you stay there?
- 2 Was the service good?
- 3 Did you chat to other guests in the hotel?
- 4 Would you recommend this hotel to other people?
- 5 Was the place popular with tourists ?

I stayed in the Hotel Victoria in Turin

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B In a hotel

A hotel guest might ask these questions:

- Could I have my key, please?
- It's room 402.
- When do you serve breakfast?
- Could I pay my bill, please?
- Can I change money here?
- Can I leave my luggage here?
- Could you call a taxi, please?
- Do I have to pay now?



The hotel receptionist might say or ask:

- Could you just sign here, please?
- You can collect your passport later.
- You have to check out of your room by 10 o'clock.
- Breakfast is served until 9.30.

### GLOSSARY

key



serve

give food or drink to sb

pay

give sb money for work or services

bill

a piece of paper that shows how much money you must pay, e.g. in a hotel or restaurant

change (money)

If you give sb pounds (£), and they change them into dollars, they give you dollars for the pounds.

leave sth somewhere

let sth or sb stay in the same place *leave the door open*

call

phone sb (make) a call

sign

write your name on a form or letter

collect

go and get sth from a place

check out

pay the bill and leave a hotel *OPP check in*

until

up to a certain time *SYN till*

### SPOTLIGHT have to + verb

**Have to** is used for saying that somebody must do something or that something must happen.

- You **have to** pay the hotel bill when you leave.
- **Do I have to** pay for breakfast? ~ No, breakfast is included.
- You **don't have to** work on Sunday, but you can if you want.

### 5 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- ▶ change *c*
- 1 call
- 2 pay
- 3 sign
- 4 leave
- 5 serve
- 6 collect

- a the bill
- b food
- c money ✓
- d a bag in the hotel
- e a ticket from the station
- f a form
- g a taxi

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you want to get in your room, you need a key.
- 1 If you write your name on a form, you sign it.
- 2 If your room is hot at night, you can leave the window open.
- 3 If you want to get somewhere quickly, you can call a taxi.
- 4 If you're leaving a hotel or restaurant, you have to pay the bill.
- 5 If you give food and drink to people, you serve them.
- 6 If you have pounds (£) and want euros (€), you need to change some money.
- 7 If you go to a place to get a key, you collect it.
- 8 When you arrive at the hotel, you check in at reception.

### 7 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ I'm leaving now, so could I pay the bill? ~ Yes, of course.
- 1 Can I have my key, please? ~ Of course. What's your room number?
- 2 Do the shops close at 5.30? ~ No, they're open until 7.30.
- 3 Excuse me, what time do you serve lunch? ~ From 12.00 to 2.00.
- 4 Will I have to get a taxi to the airport? ~ No, you don't have to. There is a bus from the hotel that will take you to the airport.
- 5 When do I have to leave my room and pay? ~ You have to check out by 10 a.m.
- 6 I'd like to go to the train station. Could you call a taxi for me? ~ Yes, of course.



### TEST YOURSELF

# 89 Airports

## A Check-in



Some **passengers** buy a ticket online and **print** a **boarding pass** 24 hours before they fly. Some passengers print a **boarding pass** at a **ticket machine** when they **reach** the airport. Some get one at the **check-in desk**. You need to **check in** if you have a lot of **luggage** (e.g. suitcases and bags), but you can take some **hand luggage** on the plane with you. After check-in, you can go through **security**, then look for the **gate** number where your flight leaves from and wait to **board** the plane.

GLOSSARY	
<b>print</b>	put words or pictures onto paper using a machine
<b>boarding pass</b>	a card that you must show when you get on a plane or ship <b>SYN boarding card</b>
<b>reach</b>	arrive somewhere
<b>check-in n</b>	(see picture) <b>check in v</b> : You <b>check in</b> at the <b>check-in desk</b> .
<b>hand luggage</b>	a bag you can take on the plane with you
<b>security</b>	the place in an airport where people check you and your hand luggage
<b>gate</b>	in an airport, the place near your plane where you wait to get on
<b>board</b>	walk onto a plane, ship or bus

**SPOTLIGHT airports**  
An **airport** is a place where people get on and off **planes/aeroplanes**. An **airline** is a company that takes people by plane to different places.

### 1 Complete the words.

- p \_ a \_ s \_ s \_ e \_ n \_ g \_ e \_ r  
1 b \_ \_ \_ r \_ d  
2 ch \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ i \_  
3 b \_ \_ \_ \_ d \_ \_ \_ \_ g \_ c \_ \_ \_ d  
4 ae \_ \_ \_ pl \_ \_ \_  
5 a \_ \_ \_ p \_ \_ \_ t  
6 h \_ \_ nd l \_ \_ gg \_ \_ ge  
7 a \_ \_ \_ l \_ \_ \_ e  
8 s \_ \_ c \_ \_ it \_ \_

### 2 Make five more phrases from the words in the box.

airline ✓	boarding company ✓	desk	board	check-in	pass
ticket		luggage	machine	the plane	hand

► airline company

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- We flew in a large aeroplane.  
1 There were a lot of \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ waiting at the \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ desk.  
2 If we hurry, we'll \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ the airport by 3.30.  
3 I printed my \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ card at home, and I only had hand \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ , so I didn't need to \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ in when I got to the airport.  
4 I went to \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ 7, but I sat there for half an hour before we could \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ the plane.  
5 Heathrow and Charles de Gaulle are very busy \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .  
6 If you don't have a boarding pass, you can \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ one at the ticket \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ .  
7 I had a lot of \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ : a large suitcase and a heavy bag as well.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Are these sentences true for you?

- I travel by plane a lot. No, I don't travel by plane very much.  
1 I usually use the same airline when I fly. \_ \_ \_ \_ \_  
2 I usually print my boarding pass at home. \_ \_ \_ \_ \_  
3 When I reach the airport, the first thing I do is have a coffee. \_ \_ \_ \_ \_  
4 I want to go through security very quickly. \_ \_ \_ \_ \_  
5 I like to be one of the first people to board the plane. \_ \_ \_ \_ \_  
6 I like to sit at the front of the plane. \_ \_ \_ \_ \_





## B Departure and arrival



You get on / board the plane.



You fasten your seat belt.



The plane takes off.



Flight attendants provide food and drinks.



The plane lands and passengers get off.



Somebody checks your passport.



You collect your luggage and leave the airport.

### GLOSSARY

<b>departure</b>	leaving a place
<b>arrival</b>	coming to a place: <i>There's always someone to meet me <b>on arrival</b>.</i>
<b>arrive v</b>	
<b>provide</b>	give sth to sb who needs it
<b>check</b>	look at sth to see if it is correct or good: <b>check</b> your ticket ( <del>NOT control your ticket</del> )
<b>collect</b>	go and take sth from a place

### 5 Cover the pictures and put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.

You collect your luggage. ☐  
 You get on the plane. ☐  
 You get off the plane. ☐  
 You fasten your seat belt. ☐  
 Someone checks your passport. ☐

The plane lands. ☐  
 You leave the airport. ☐  
 The plane takes off. ☐  
 Flight attendants provide drinks. ☐

### 6 Complete the text.

I don't like sitting in airports, and now you often have to ► **arrive** at the airport two hours before (1) \_\_\_\_\_, which is terrible. When I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the plane, the first thing I do is (3) \_\_\_\_\_ my seat belt. I then sit nervously until the plane (4) \_\_\_\_\_. Fortunately, the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ attendants are usually very kind, and always (6) \_\_\_\_\_ food and drinks, but I'm so nervous I can't eat anything. I only feel safe when the plane has (7) \_\_\_\_\_. On (8) \_\_\_\_\_, I'm very happy when someone has (9) \_\_\_\_\_ my passport, so that I can (10) \_\_\_\_\_ my luggage and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the airport with my brother, who usually meets me.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- What's the first thing you do when you get on a plane? I fasten my seatbelt.
- How do you feel when the plane takes off? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Do you always eat the food the airlines provide? \_\_\_\_\_
  - How do you feel when the plane lands? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Do you usually need to collect luggage, or do you travel with hand luggage? \_\_\_\_\_

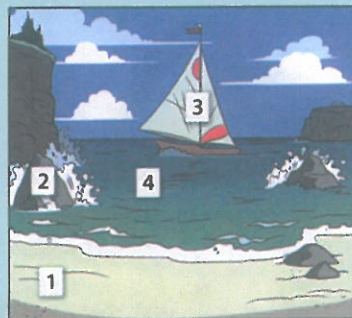


### TEST YOURSELF

# 90 Types of holiday

## A A beach holiday

For many years, we **used to go** to Hyères – a **typical** little town by the sea in the south of France. We **used to fly** to Nice, then get a bus to Hyères, where we stayed in an apartment. In the mornings, I was happy to sit on the **beach**<sup>1</sup> near the **rocks**<sup>2</sup> and read and write **postcards**, **while** my husband **used to go out** on a **boat**<sup>3</sup> or go swimming – the **sea**<sup>4</sup> was lovely and warm. We usually had lunch in the apartment, then **relaxed** for a **couple of** hours. In the evening, there were nice restaurants near the beach where we could have dinner.



### GLOSSARY

<b>typical</b>	Something that is <b>typical</b> is a good example of its kind.
<b>fly</b> <i>pt flew pp flown</i>	travel by plane
<b>postcard</b>	a card with a picture on one side. You write on the other side and then send it by post.
<b>while</b>	at the same time as: <i>Max watched TV <b>while</b> I cooked dinner.</i>
<b>relax</b>	do nothing and enjoy yourself
<b>a couple of</b> (hours/days, etc.)	two or maybe three (hours/days, etc.)

### SPOTLIGHT **used to + verb**

We use **used to + verb** to talk about something that happened often or was true in the past, but not now.

- **I used to live** in New York, but now I live in London.
- My father **used to be** a police officer, now he works in a bank.

### 1 Write five more things that the wife, the husband, or both of them used to do on their holiday.

- ▶ They used to fly to Nice.
- 1 ..... 3 .....
- 2 ..... 4 .....
- 5 .....

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Bournemouth is a typical place for a beach holiday in England.
- 1 We stayed there for a ..... of weeks.
- 2 We just sat on the ..... and looked at the sea.
- 3 I would like to go on a ..... on the river.
- 4 We sat on the ..... at the back of the beach. You could see more from there.
- 5 My idea of a perfect holiday is to ..... and do nothing.
- 6 We ..... from London to Rome, then took a train for the rest of the journey.
- 7 My cousin didn't like beach holidays. He ..... to go to the mountains every year.

### 3 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it and where does it go?

- ▶ We had lovely / in France when ..... holidays
- I was a child. We to stay in Cassis ..... 1 .....
- usually for a couple weeks. Every ..... 2 .....
- morning I to swim a lot, but I also ..... 3 .....
- played with my dad, my mum ..... 4 .....
- wrote lots of to family and friends. ..... 5 .....
- That was a day. ..... 6 .....

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- ▶ Where did you go for holidays as a child? We used to have beach holidays in England or Spain.
- 1 Did you go to several places or the same place? .....
- 2 How long did you usually go for? .....
- 3 Did you ever go on a boat? .....
- 4 Do you enjoy relaxing on holiday, or do you do many things? .....



### TEST YOURSELF



## B A sightseeing holiday

### Tourist questionnaire

When you **go sightseeing** on holiday do you:

- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| * buy a <b>map</b> <sup>1</sup> of the town?       | Yes / No |
| * buy a <b>guidebook</b> ?                         | Yes / No |
| * <b>go on a guided tour</b> with a <b>guide</b> ? | Yes / No |
| * <b>prefer to</b> go sightseeing on your own?     | Yes / No |
| * <b>visit</b> museums and art galleries?          | Yes / No |
| * like to <b>look round</b> ?                      | Yes / No |
| * <b>take</b> lots of <b>photos</b> <sup>2</sup> ? | Yes / No |
| * often <b>get lost</b> ?                          | Yes / No |

What is your **ideal** place for a sightseeing holiday?



#### GLOSSARY

<b>go sightseeing</b>	go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places	<b>prefer to do sth</b>	like to do one thing more than another
<b>guidebook</b>	a book that describes a place for tourists	<b>visit</b>	go to see a person or place for a short time
<b>tour</b>	a short visit around a town or building; <b>go on a guided tour</b> visit a place with a person who tells you about it	<b>look round</b>	visit a place
<b>guide</b>	a person who gives a guided tour and tells tourists about places	<b>get lost</b>	If you <b>get lost</b> or <b>are lost</b> , you don't know where you are.
		<b>ideal</b>	the best or exactly right <b>syn perfect</b>

#### 5 Circle the correct word.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ▶ prefer <u>to go</u> / go              | 5 <b>guide</b> / <b>guided</b> tour        |
| 1 <b>go</b> / <b>have</b> sightseeing   | 6 <b>make</b> / <b>take</b> photos         |
| 2 a <b>guide map</b> / <b>guidebook</b> | 7 <b>look round</b> / <b>about</b> a place |
| 3 <b>go on</b> / <b>make</b> a tour     | 8 a <b>guide</b> / <b>an ideal</b> holiday |
| 4 <b>visit</b> / <b>go</b> a museum     |  |

#### 6 Complete the sentences with one word.

- ▶ We went on a guided tour.
- She took a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ of old buildings in the town centre.
  - We \_\_\_\_\_ on a tour of the town, and the \_\_\_\_\_ was interesting and very funny.
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ lost because I didn't have a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - We went \_\_\_\_\_ the day after we arrived. It was quite tiring.
  - I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ tours of places – I \_\_\_\_\_ to visit places on my own.
  - You get a lot of useful information in a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Do you want to go on on a guided \_\_\_\_\_?
  - I want to \_\_\_\_\_ the Science Museum when I'm in London.
  - My sister can never find her way – she often \_\_\_\_\_ lost.
  - I like to look \_\_\_\_\_ a place and \_\_\_\_\_ lots of photos.
  - A beach holiday is \_\_\_\_\_ for families with young children.
  - When you're on holiday, do you prefer to \_\_\_\_\_ round on your own?

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the tourist questionnaire, or ask another student.



#### TEST YOURSELF

# 91 Meet and greet

## A Introductions

Liam and Sienna meet for the first time ...

... and two hours later ...



### GLOSSARY

<b>greet</b>	say hello when you meet a new person or a friend <b>greeting</b> <i>n</i>
<b>introduce sb (to sb)</b>	bring people together for the first time and say their names <b>introduction</b> <i>n</i>
<b>This is ...</b>	When we introduce people, we say <b>this is</b> Liam, etc. (NOT <i>he/she is</i> OR <i>here is</i> )
<b>hi</b>	<i>inf</i> hello
<b>welcome</b>	If sb is <b>welcome</b> , you are happy to see them: <b>Welcome to our home!</b> <b>welcome</b> <i>v, n</i> : <i>He welcomed us. They gave us a warm welcome.</i>
<b>bye</b>	a short form of <i>goodbye</i>
<b>hope to (see you again)</b>	used for saying that you want sth to happen

### SPOTLIGHT introductions

You often use **Nice to meet you** or **Good to meet you** when you meet people for the first time, and when you say goodbye after the first time you meet them.

**How do you do?** was common in the past, but is now very formal and not used very much.

### 1 Make correct sentences from the words.

- ▶ do / how / do / you How do you do ?
- 1 meet / nice / hello / you / to .....
- 2 this / Max / Emma / is .....
- 3 again / hope / you / bye / to / see .....
- 4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet .....

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Bye is just a short form of goodbye.
- 1 When we ..... somebody to another person, we say: 'This is (Sophy)'.
- 2 We often ..... hands when we meet people for the first time.
- 3 When we ..... friends, we usually say *hello* or *hi*.
- 4 ..... and greetings are often different in other countries and languages.
- 5 When we visit my aunt and uncle, they always give us a warm .....
- 6 *Hello* and *Hi* are common ..... in English.

### 3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 LUCY Emma, ▶ this is Alex.
- EMMA .....
- ALEX Hi, ..... to .....  
you.
- 2 EMMA Goodbye, Alex. Hope to see you  
.....
- ALEX Yes, .....
- 3 MAX Lucy, ..... is Dan.
- LUCY Hi, Dan. Good to .....  
..... And ..... to  
Cambridge.
- DAN Thank you.
- 4 LUCY Bye, Dan, ..... to see you  
again. Have a good journey.
- DAN Thanks, .....



## B Meeting a friend



Matt meets his friend Tess in a café.

**Matt** Hi, Tess. **How are you?**  
**Tess** Fine, thanks. And you?  
**Matt** Yeah, very well.  
**Tess** Good. And how's Sarah?  
**Matt** She's in bed, actually.  
**Tess** Oh! What's the matter?  
**Matt** Flu, I think.  
**Tess** Oh dear!



An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

**Tess** Anyway, Matt, I've got to go now. **See you later.**  
**Matt** Yeah. About 7.00?  
**Tess** Yes, that's fine.  
**Matt** Good. **See you then.**  
**Tess** Sure. And give my love to Sarah. Hope she gets better soon.  
**Matt** Yes, I will.

### GLOSSARY

**How are you?** You say this to a friend when you meet. **ALSO How are things?**

**fine** OR **very well** OR **good** OR **not bad** are common replies to 'How are you?'. (NOT **very fine**)

**oh!** used for showing a strong feeling, e.g. when you're surprised or afraid  
= What's the problem?

**What's the matter?**

**Oh dear!** sth you say if you are surprised or sad

**anyway** a word you can use when you start to talk about sth different

**have got to do sth** have to do/must do  
**Have got to** is more informal than **have to**. It is usually contracted, e.g. **I've got to go**.

**give my love to sb** say a big, warm hello to sb

**will** You use **will** when you agree or promise to do sth.

### SPOTLIGHT *see you ...*

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.

**See you later** is usually the same day. Other common expressions are: **see you soon**, **see you** (next Saturday, etc.), **see you then**, etc.

#### 4 Complete the phrases.

► How are you?

1 S\_\_\_\_\_ you tomorrow.

2 He's v\_\_\_\_\_y w\_\_\_\_\_l.

3 Wh\_\_\_\_\_ the m\_\_\_\_\_?

4 S\_\_\_\_\_ you l\_\_\_\_\_t\_\_\_\_\_.

5 S\_\_\_\_\_ you s\_\_\_\_\_.

6 H\_\_\_\_\_w\_\_\_\_\_r\_\_\_\_\_th\_\_\_\_\_s?

7 G\_\_\_\_\_ my l\_\_\_\_\_ to Suki.

8 I've g\_\_\_\_\_t\_\_\_\_\_ go n\_\_\_\_\_w.

9 Th\_\_\_\_\_s f\_\_\_\_\_n\_\_\_\_\_.

#### 5 Replace the underlined words with another word or words that have the same meaning.

ROB Hello. ► Hi How are you?

FINN Good. And you?

ROB Hmm, not great.

FINN What's the problem?

ROB I have to work all weekend.

FINN Oh no.

ROB Yes, so I can't come on Sunday. But say hello to Elle.

FINN Yes, I promise.

#### 6 Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.

1 JIM Hi, How ► are you ?

SAM I'm very ..... And you?

JIM Yeah, .....

And ..... your wife?

SAM She's .....

2 JIM ....., Sam, I ..... go now.

SAM OK. See you .....

JIM Sure. What time?

SAM 6.30.

JIM Yeah, ..... fine. See you .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 92 Ask for information

## A About people

Who do you live with, Tracey?  
 And what's your brother like?  
 And your boyfriend – what does he do?  
 How long have you known him?  
 And you're learning Spanish. How often do you study?  
 And why Spanish?  
 Whose idea was it to live in Spain?  
 OK. But what do you think?  
 What kind of work can you do in Spain?

~ My parents, and my younger brother.  
 ~ He's OK – he's quite funny.  
 ~ He works for an airline company.  
 ~ About two years.  
 ~ Twice a week.  
 ~ Because we want to live in Spain.  
 ~ My boyfriend's.  
 ~ Yeah, I think it's a good idea.  
 ~ I can probably get a job in a restaurant.

### GLOSSARY

twice (a week/ month, etc.)	two times every week/month, etc.
idea	a plan or a new thought: <i>It was a good idea to arrive early.</i>
yeah inf	yes
kind (of sth)	a group of things or people that are the same in some way <b>SYNS</b> sort/ <b>type</b> : <i>What kind/sort/type of books do you read?</i>

### SPOTLIGHT *whose and belong to someone*

Whose money is that?	~ It's <b>mine</b> . = It's my money.
Who does that money belong to?	~ It <b>belongs to</b> my brother.
Whose is this bag?	~ It's Ben's. = The bag <b>belongs to</b> Ben.
Who does this bag belong to?	~ It's Ben's.

### 1 Make correct questions from the words.

- ▶ for / do / work / who / you
- 1 you / often / there / go / how / do
- 2 like / what / music / do / sort of / you
- 3 he / does / what / do
- 4 have / lived / how long / there / you
- 5 type of / do / watch / what / films / you
- 6 this / to / belong / does / who
- 7 his / like / what's / flat
- 8 like / you / why / her / do

Who do you work for? .....

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

.....?

### 2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

- ▶ Because she's very kind. **b**
- a Ten years. ....
- b I like romantic movies. ....
- c It's small but very nice. ....
- d Twice a year. ....
- e It's mine. ....
- f He's a doctor. ....
- g Rock and pop. ....

### 3 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

- ▶ Why ..... did you leave your job? ~ Because I didn't like it.
- 1 How ..... do you go to Italy? ~ ..... a year.
- 2 ..... jacket is this? ~ It's ..... I bought it yesterday.
- 3 ..... 's Alicia like? ~ She's very nice.
- 4 Do you speak German? ~ ....., a bit.
- 5 Who does this ..... to? ~ I think it's Mark's.
- 6 What ..... of animal is it? ~ I think it's a horse.
- 7 Do you want to go out this evening? ~ Yeah, that's a good .....
- 8 How ..... have you worked there? ~ Six months.



### TEST YOURSELF



## B About places

How long is it open?  
(= how many hours?)

What do you recommend?  
(= What do you think is good?)

What time / When does  
the palace close/shut?  
( open)

How far is it to  
the river?  
(= how many  
metres?)

Where's the  
nearest bank?  
(= Where's the first  
bank from here?)

How many places can  
we visit with this ticket?  
(= what number?)

Is the castle worth  
seeing?  
(= Do you recommend  
the castle?)

How much are the tickets?  
(= How much money?)

Which restaurant do you recommend?

### SPOTLIGHT *which or what?*

Use **which** when there is a small number of possibilities.

■ We have a double room or a single. **Which** would you like? (There are only two possibilities.)

In other situations with more possibilities, use **what**.

■ **What's** the address of the hotel? (NOT **Which** is the address?)

#### 4 Circle the correct answer.

► When time / What time does it close?

1 Which / What is your address?

2 How long / long time do you need?

3 What hour / time does it open?

4 How many / much places did you visit?

5 Where's the next / nearest café?

6 Is the museum worth to see / seeing?

7 There are two films. What / Which do you prefer?

8 How far / long is it to the museum?

#### 5 Complete the questions.

► When ..... does the post office open?

1 How ..... is it to the station?

2 It opens at 8.00, but when does it ..... ?

3 How ..... places did you go to?

4 Is it ..... going to see Angkor Wat?

5 We've got two or three types of pen.

..... one do you want?

6 Where's the ..... underground station?

7 ..... 's the phone number of the bank?

8 There's a lot to see. What do you ..... ?

#### 6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Where do you live? .....

2 How long have you lived there? .....

3 Which places are worth visiting? .....

4 How far are they from your home? .....

5 Can you recommend any restaurants? .....

6 Where's the nearest restaurant? .....



#### TEST YOURSELF

# 93 Requests and permission

## A Requests and responses

Requests (in the classroom)	Responses
Can you <b>bring</b> <sup>1</sup> the dictionaries here, <b>please</b> ?	✓ Yes, of course.
Could you <b>finish</b> this exercise for homework, <b>please</b> ?	Sure. Yeah, no problem.
Yuri, could you <b>take</b> <sup>2</sup> these books to the library?	✗
Elena, can you <b>change places</b> with Gabi, <b>please</b> ?	(No), I'm afraid I can't.
Could you <b>lend</b> me a pen, Oleg?	
Please <b>make sure</b> you <b>put</b> the books <b>back</b> .	

### SPOTLIGHT being polite

In English, it is **polite** to say **please** when you ask a person for something, and to say **thank you** if the person says yes.  
**I'm afraid** is a polite way to say **no**, and to say you are sorry about something.

- **I'm afraid** I can't come this evening.
- Can you come this evening? ~ **I'm afraid not**.

**Can** and **could** are both used for requests. **Could** is a bit more polite.

### GLOSSARY



1 bring

2 take

<b>request</b>	asking for sth in a polite way
<b>response</b>	an answer to sb or sth <b>respond</b> v
<b>finish</b>	do/complete the last part of sth
<b>change places</b>	e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's seat, and Gabi sits in Elena's seat
<b>lend</b>	give sth to sb to use for a short time
<b>make sure (you do sth)</b>	be certain (that you do sth)
<b>put sth back</b>	return sth to its place
<b>I'm afraid I can't</b>	= I'm sorry, but I can't. (NOT <del>I'm afraid but I can't</del> )

### 1 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

- Can \_\_\_\_\_ you clean the board, **please** \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 1 Can \_\_\_\_\_ lend \_\_\_\_\_ a pen, please? ~ Yes, of \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 2 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the books here, \_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ Yeah, no \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 3 \_\_\_\_\_ you lend me some money? ~ No, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ not. I don't have any.  
 4 Is it \_\_\_\_\_ to say **please** and **thank you** in English? ~ Yes, it is.  
 5 Do you often use **sure** and **no problem**? ~ Yes, they're common \_\_\_\_\_ to requests in English.  
 6 Can I \_\_\_\_\_ this book home tonight? ~ Yes, but please \_\_\_\_\_ it back tomorrow.  
 7 I must \_\_\_\_\_ sure I remember Katya's book next week.  
 8 Do you use **can** and **could** for \_\_\_\_\_ in English? ~ Yes. **Could** is a bit more \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 9 We have to \_\_\_\_\_ all the books back on the shelf when we finish the lesson.

### 2 Write requests and responses using **can** and **could**, and different responses.

- put / books / over there  
 A Could you put these books over there, please?  
 B Yes, sure.
- 1 finish / exercise / homework  
 A \_\_\_\_\_  
 B \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Luca / change places / Maria  
 A \_\_\_\_\_  
 B \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 bring / notebook / tomorrow  
 A \_\_\_\_\_  
 B \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 lend / pencil  
 A \_\_\_\_\_  
 B \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 take / books / library  
 A \_\_\_\_\_  
 B \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 finish / essay / Monday  
 A \_\_\_\_\_  
 B \_\_\_\_\_





## B Asking for and giving permission



### SPOTLIGHT *lend and borrow*

If you **borrow** a pen **from** someone, you use their pen, then give it back.

If you **lend** someone a pen, or **lend** a pen **to** someone, you give them your pen to use for a short time.

■ **Could I borrow your pen?** = **Could you lend me your pen?**

### GLOSSARY

**permission** allowing sb to do sth; telling them it is OK to do sth: *She gave me **permission** to leave class early.*

**go ahead / that's fine** You say **go ahead** or **that's fine** when you give sb permission to do sth. Also **of course / no problem**

**all right** OK

**Do you mind if ...?** = Is it a problem for you if ...? (The answer **No, go ahead** means 'It's not a problem'.)

### 3 Write new sentences. Change only the bold words. The meaning must stay the same.

- Can we sit down? Is it OK if we sit down?
- 1 Is it **OK** if I use this dictionary?
- 2 Is it **OK** if I make a coffee?
- 3 **Can** I stay for another ten minutes?
- 4 Is it OK **to** close the window?
- 5 Can **you lend me** your book?
- 6 Can I sit here? ~ Yes, **of course**.
- 7 Can I use the computer? ~ I'm **sorry but** I need it.
- 8 Is it OK if I have my coffee here? ~ Yes, **sure**.

### 4 Ask for permission in these situations. Use the word in CAPITALS.

- You want to sit near the window. CAN Can I sit near the window?
- 1 You want to go at one o'clock today. MIND
- 2 You want to borrow a piece of paper. COULD
- 3 You want to go to the toilet. OK
- 4 You want to sit in a different seat. ALL RIGHT
- 5 You want somebody to lend you a pen. CAN

### 5 Find five more responses in the box to the question below.

no need	ahead sure ✓	fine that's	afraid yes ✓	problem go	of I'm	I course	it
------------	-----------------	----------------	-----------------	---------------	-----------	-------------	----

Could I possibly borrow your car tomorrow?

► Yes sure.

- 1
- 2
- 3

- 4
- 5



TEST YOURSELF

# 94 Invitations and suggestions

## A Inviting people



### Inviting

Would you like to ...

Do you want to ...

go out for a meal / a drink?

come round for a coffee?

come to a party?

### Saying yes

Yes, great!

Yeah, I'd love to!

That sounds lovely/fun/good.

That would be lovely/nice.

### Saying no

I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.

I'm sorry, but I'm busy.

I'm afraid I can't.

### GLOSSARY

invite	ask sb to come to a party, your house, etc. <b>invitation</b> <i>n</i>
Would you like to ...?	= <b>Do you want to ...?</b> (Would you like to is a bit more polite.)
go out for (a meal/drink)	go to a restaurant or a café/bar
come round	visit a person at their house, often near your house
party	a time when friends meet to eat, drink, dance, etc.
great	very good SYNS <b>lovely/wonderful</b>
I'd love to	= I want to very much; I'd = I would ALSO <b>That would be lovely. / That sounds lovely.</b>
busy	If you're <b>busy</b> , you have a lot of things to do.
I'm afraid I can't	= I'm sorry, (but) I can't (NOT <i>I'm afraid but I can't</i> )

1 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

► meal / great **D**

1 love / wonderful

2 would / sound

3 sorry / come

4 afraid / great

5 yeah / there

6 busy / but

2 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

► Do you / to go out later? **want**

1 Would you to come round later?

2 Yes, I'd love.

3 Do you want to out for dinner?

4 That lovely.

5 I've just got an to a party.

6 I'm afraid can't.

7 That be nice.

8 Do you want come to a party?

9 I'm, but I'm busy tonight.

10 Ben me to lunch on Saturday.

3 Complete the questions and answers.

► Invite someone for a drink in a bar.

Say yes.

1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.

Say yes.

2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee.

Say no politely.

3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow.

Say yes.

4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café.

Say no politely.

Do you want to go out for a drink?

That would be lovely.

Would ..?

Yes, g ..?

Do ..?

I'm a ..?

Would ..?

Yes, that s ..?

Do ..?

I'd .., but .. gym.



TEST YOURSELF



## B Making suggestions

<b>ask for a suggestion</b>	What shall we do Where shall we go } this weekend?		
<b>make a suggestion</b>	Shall we go to the beach? Maybe we could go out for a meal.	What about going to an art gallery? Let's go out for a drink.	
<b>say 'yes'</b>	Yes, (that's a) good/great idea! Yeah, let's do that. OK, fine.	<b>say 'no', or make another suggestion</b>	I'm not sure (about that). I think I'd prefer to stay at home. Yeah, or perhaps we could go to the mountains.

### GLOSSARY

<b>suggestion</b>	an idea that sb gives you to think about <b>suggest v</b>
<b>maybe</b>	possibly <b>SYN perhaps</b>
<b>that's a great idea</b>	= that's a very good plan
<b>prefer to do sth</b>	like to do one thing more than another

#### 4 Put the dialogues in order. Write the numbers in the boxes.

##### dialogue 1

- ☐ I'd prefer to get them at the station.
- ☐ The weather's nice, so
- ☐ Yes, that's a good idea.
- ☐ 1 What shall we do this weekend?
- ☐ And maybe we could take the train.
- ☐ Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
- ☐ what about going to the beach?

##### dialogue 2

- ☐ But it's going to rain.
- ☐ I think I'd prefer to go out.
- ☐ OK, fine.
- ☐ What about a nice meal at home?
- ☐ OK, then let's order a pizza.
- ☐ Where shall we go tomorrow?

#### 5 Correct the mistakes.

- We could to have a party this weekend. We could have a party this weekend.
- 1 What do we do this evening? .....
- 2 Do you have a suggest? .....
- 3 What about go to see a film? .....
- 4 I'd prefer go by train. ....
- 5 Yes, is a good idea. ....
- 6 Where we shall go tomorrow? .....

#### 6 Write in a word where there is a /.

- 1 ► A What / we do / evening? What shall we do this evening?
- B What / going / the theatre? .....
- A I'm / sure / that. ....
- 2 A What / we / on Saturday? .....
- B Perhaps we / go out for a meal. ....
- A OK, let's / that. ....
- 3 A Where / we go / afternoon? .....
- B / go to a museum. ....
- A Yeah, / 's a good / .....



### TEST YOURSELF

# 95 Offers and saying sorry

## A Offers



**Offering food/drink**  
Would you like a drink?  
Do you want something to eat?



**Offering help**  
Do you need some help?  
Let me help you.

Accept	Refuse
Yes, please. Thanks. Thanks. Could I have ...?	No, thanks.

Accept	Refuse
Yes, please. Thanks a lot. Thank you (very much).	No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.

### GLOSSARY

**offer** say or show that you will give sth if another person wants it *offer n*  
**need** If you **need** sth, you must have it.  
**help** the act of doing sth good for sb *help v*  
**let me ...** used for asking permission to help another person

**accept** say 'yes' *OPP refuse*  
**thanks a lot** *inf* = thanks very much  
**don't worry** used to tell sb that sth is not important  
**worry n**

### 1 Correct the mistakes.

- ~~Could~~ you like a drink? Would  
1 You want something to eat? .....  
2 Thanks, no. ....  
3 I fine, thanks. ....  
4 Do you like something to eat? .....  
5 Let me to help you. ....  
6 I thank you very much. ....  
7 Thanks. Could I take a coffee? .....

### 2 Complete the sentences with one word.

- Would you like something to eat? ~ Oh, thank you very much.  
1 Do you need some ..... with your luggage? ~ Oh, yes, .....  
2 Did you ..... her a drink when she arrived? ~ Yes, of course.  
3 Do you ..... some help with those books? ~ Yes I do. .... a lot.  
4 Here, ..... me help you. ~ No, don't ..... I'm OK, thanks.  
5 I offered to help but she ..... She said she didn't need help.  
6 When people offer me a drink, I usually say 'yes'. I think it's polite to .....

### 3 Complete the questions and answers.

- Offer someone food.  
1 Offer someone a drink.  
Accept, and ask for some water.  
2 Offer someone help.  
Say no politely.  
3 Offer someone food.  
Accept, and ask for an apple.  
4 Offer someone help.  
Say no politely.  
Do you want something to eat?  
A Would ..... drink?  
B Yes, ..... water?  
A Do ..... help?  
B No, ..... , thanks.  
A Would ..... eat?  
B ..... an apple?  
A Let .....  
B No, ..... worry.



TEST YOURSELF



## B Saying sorry

He pushed me but didn't say sorry.



Really! That's so rude.

Saying sorry	Responses
Sorry, I don't speak English very well.	<b>That's all right.</b> I'll speak slowly.
Oh no! I've broken a cup. I'm so sorry.	That's OK. <b>Don't worry.</b>
I'm very sorry – I've lost your pen.	<b>It doesn't matter.</b> I've got lots of pens.
I forgot to post your letter – I'm really sorry.	<b>Never mind.</b> I can post it later.
Sorry I'm late – the traffic was terrible.	Oh, don't worry about it.

### SPOTLIGHT (I'm) sorry

You use **(very/really/so) sorry** when you:

- 1 feel bad about something you've done:  
*I'm sorry, I've broken your cup.*
- 2 feel sad about something:  
*I'm sorry you can't come to the party.*
- 3 want somebody to repeat something:  
*Sorry, could you repeat that, please?*

### GLOSSARY

<b>rude</b>	not speaking or behaving in a way that is correct for the social situation <b>OPP polite</b>	<b>break pt broke pp broken</b>	make sth go into smaller pieces, e.g. by dropping it
<b>that's all right / don't worry / it doesn't matter / never mind</b>	These phrases all mean 'it's not important' / 'it's OK'.	<b>lose pt/pp lost</b>	If you <b>lose</b> sth, you can't find it.
		<b>forget pt forgot pp forgotten</b>	= not remember
		<b>(I'm) sorry I'm late</b>	(NOT <i>Sorry for be late</i> .)

### 4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- That's .....  
1 It doesn't .....  
2 I forgot to .....  
3 Never .....  
4 Don't .....  
5 Sorry .....  
6 I'm really .....  
7 I've broken .....  
8 I've lost .....

- a bring your book.  
b my car keys.  
c all right. ✓  
d I'm late.  
e sorry.  
f matter.  
g your pencil.  
h worry.  
i mind.

### 5 Complete the dialogues with a word or a contraction (e.g. *don't*).

- I'm very sorry ..... ~ That's OK.  
1 I'm really sorry. ~ ..... all right.  
2 I'm sorry ..... late. The traffic was terrible. ~ That's OK.  
3 I'm afraid I've ..... my homework. ~ That's all ..... Bring it tomorrow.  
4 I'm ..... sorry. ~ It doesn't .....  
5 Sorry I'm late. ~ Oh, never ..... It's not important.  
6 Did he say ..... to you? ~ Yes, he did. He's always very .....  
7 I think I've ..... your chair. I'm very sorry. ~ Don't ..... It's very old.  
8 Did he say sorry? ~ No, he's very .....

### 6 Write down:

- 1 three words you can use before *sorry* ► very .....  
2 four phrases you can use to say 'it's OK' or 'it's not important':  
.....  
3 three different meanings of 'sorry':  
.....



### TEST YOURSELF

## 96 Probably or possibly



Noah and Ava are getting married. Sonja is an old girlfriend of Noah's, and Noah has invited her to the **wedding**. Ava doesn't like Sonja very much. Do you think Sonja will **attend** the wedding?

### GLOSSARY

<b>wedding</b>	a time when a man and woman get married
<b>attend formal</b>	go to or be present at a place where sth is happening
<b>certain</b>	sure about sth <b>certainly</b> <i>adv</i> <b>syn</b> <b>definitely</b>
<b>probably</b>	If sth will <b>probably</b> happen, you think it will happen but you are not sure. <b>probable</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>likely (to)</b>	If sth is <b>likely to</b> happen, it will probably happen.
<b>chance</b>	a possibility that sth may happen. A <b>good chance</b> means it is more probable.
<b>possible</b>	If sth is <b>possible</b> , it can happen. <b>opp</b> <b>impossible</b> ; <b>possibility</b> <i>n</i>
<b>maybe</b>	a word that shows that sth is possible <b>syn</b> <b>perhaps</b>
<b>may</b>	a word that shows that sth is possible, and will perhaps happen. <b>syn</b> <b>might</b> : He <b>may/might</b> come with us. ( <b>NOT</b> He <b>may/might to come with us</b> .)

### SPOTLIGHT *I think so / I hope so*

You can use these expressions if you think or hope something is going to happen. Notice the difference in the negative.

- Are you going? ~ Yes, **I think so**. (= it is likely that this will happen)
- Is the exam difficult? ~ No, **I don't think so**.
- Will you get more money? ~ **I hope so**. (= I would like this to happen)
- Is it going to rain? ~ **I hope not**.

100%	<b>CERTAIN</b>	Yes, She'll <b>definitely</b> go.
	<b>PROBABLE</b>	Yeah, I <b>think so</b> . Yeah, she's <b>likely to</b> go. Yeah, she'll <b>probably</b> go.  I think there's a (good) <b>chance</b> that she'll go.
	<b>POSSIBLE</b>	I think she <b>may/might</b> go. Yeah, <b>maybe/perhaps</b> .
	<b>UNLIKELY</b>	No, I <b>don't think so</b> . No, I don't think she'll go.
0%	<b>IMPOSSIBLE</b>	No, she <b>definitely</b> won't go.

### 1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| ▶ possible    | 4 definitely |
| 1 certainly   | 5 likely     |
| 2 impossible  | 6 probably   |
| 3 possibility | 7 perhaps    |

### 2 Are the sentences similar in meaning or different? Write S or D.

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| ▶ It's certainly true. / It's definitely true.                             | S     |
| 1 The team will probably win. / The team will definitely win.              | ..... |
| 2 I may stay in tonight. / I might stay in tonight.                        | ..... |
| 3 John and Shar are likely to come. / John and Shar will definitely come.  | ..... |
| 4 Will Jo come? ~ Maybe. / Will Jo come? ~ Perhaps.                        | ..... |
| 5 Is it sunny outside? ~ I think so. / ~ I hope so.                        | ..... |
| 6 I'm probably going to change jobs. / I'm likely to change jobs.          | ..... |
| 7 I think it's likely. / I think it's impossible.                          | ..... |
| 8 There's a chance it will happen. / There's a possibility it will happen. | ..... |



**3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?**

- Is Marta coming with you? ~ It's not / but I think she will. certain
- 1 I probably work this evening. ....
- 2 My parents are not likely come this afternoon. ....
- 3 Are you going tonight? ~ Yes, I think. ....
- 4 Have you lost your money? ~ No, I hope. ....
- 5 I think there's chance that he'll be here. ....
- 6 Are you seeing Jacob this evening? ~ I'm not sure. I see him. ....

**4 Complete the conversations.**

- A Are you going tonight?  
B I don't know yet. Perhaps
- 1 A What are you doing this evening?  
B I'll p. .... stay at home, and I m. .... finish reading my book.
- 2 A Who's coming to the cinema this evening?  
B Well, Elle will d. .... come, and Briony will p. .... come with her. And I think three or four more are l. .... to come. So, about seven or eight, including us.
- 3 A What are you doing this weekend?  
B I'm going to a w. .... My cousin is getting married.  
A Well, enjoy yourself.  
B Thanks. It will c. .... be interesting – I don't think the two families like each other very much.
- 4 A Is the team going to win this weekend?  
B Yes, there's a good c. .... we will – we're playing quite well.
- 5 A What are you doing next week?  
B I have to a. .... an important meeting for my company in Manchester.  
A Are you going to drive?  
B I don't think that's l. .... : it's a long way. I m. .... take the train. Then I can work.
- 6 A Will everyone come to the meeting this afternoon?  
B There's a p. .... they will all be here, but I don't think s. ....
- 7 A Are you leaving at the end of the year?  
B Well, m. ...., but nothing's c. .... yet. I'll p. .... decide at the end of this month.
- 8 A Will you finish the exercise by the end of the lesson?  
B No, that's i. .... It's really difficult.

**5 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions using words and phrases from page 184.**

- Are you going to do anything this evening? I might do some work. I'm not sure.
- 1 Are you going to have a good weekend? .....
- 2 Are you going to go out with friends? .....
- 3 Are you going to stay at home on Sunday? .....
- 4 Are you going to do any work? .....
- 5 Are you going to watch much TV? .....
- 6 Are you going to spend a lot of money? .....
- 7 Are you going to visit other members of your family? .....
- 8 Are you going to go shopping? .....



**TEST YOURSELF**

## 97 Link words (1)

### A Giving more information

These words give more information.

Word	Example	Meaning
and	The city centre is dirty <b>and</b> very expensive.	links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,)
also	The centre is dirty. <i>It's <b>also</b> very expensive. It <b>also</b> costs a lot to live there.</i>	goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. <i>be, can</i> , but before the main verb
too and as well	The centre is dirty. <i>It's very expensive It costs a lot to live there</i> <b>too. as well.</b>	go at the end of the sentence <b>Too</b> and <b>as well</b> are used more in spoken English.

#### 1 Are **also**, **too** and **as well** in the correct position? Put a tick (✓) or a cross (X). Then correct the mistakes.

- ▶ You need a dictionary, **and** as well a grammar book is useful. **X** and a grammar book is useful as well
- The house is beautiful, **and** it's near the park **also**.
  - He speaks German, **and** he understands **too** Greek.
  - We went out for dinner **and** Lucy came **as well**.
  - I cleaned the house **and** washed **also** the car.
  - She worked in Rome, **and** I think she worked in Ravenna **too**.
  - We've got a big garden, **and** there's **as well** a park near the house.

#### 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- ▶ too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / in winter  
The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too
- I often eat / ice cream / cake / **also** / like / **and** I  
I often eat \_\_\_\_\_
  - I enjoy / **and** I go / **too** / watching tv / to the cinema a lot  
I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_
  - I can speak / German / **as well** / understand / English / I can / **and**  
I can speak \_\_\_\_\_
  - I read a lot / **also** / **and** I / music / of books / listen to  
I read a lot \_\_\_\_\_
  - and** / on TV / I play / I watch it / **as well** / football  
I play \_\_\_\_\_
  - I drive / **too** / a lot / **and** / I / walk  
I drive \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you or your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too  
That's not true. The weather in winter is very cold and it rains a lot as well.

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_



TEST YOURSELF



## B Introducing a surprising idea

These words link two ideas when the second idea is surprising after the first idea.

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>but</b>	<i>We had sunny weather, <b>but</b> it was quite cold. He worked hard, <b>but</b> he didn't pass the exam.</i>	links two ideas, usually in one sentence. Sometimes there is a comma (,) with a longer sentence.
<b>however</b>	<i>We had sunny weather. <b>However</b>, it was quite cold. He worked hard. <b>However</b>, he didn't pass the exam.</i>	links two ideas, usually in two different sentences. There is a comma after <b>however</b> . <b>However</b> is more formal than <b>but</b> .
<b>although/though</b>	<i><b>Although</b> we had sunny weather, it was quite cold, especially in the morning. He worked hard, <b>although</b> he didn't pass the exam. I went to the party. I was quite tired, <b>though</b>.</i>	(the second part sounds like go) links two ideas in one sentence. <b>Although</b> often goes at the beginning of the sentence, but can go in the middle, after a comma. In spoken English, you often use <b>though</b> .

### SPOTLIGHT *still*

You can use **still** to make the second idea a bigger surprise:

- We had sunny weather, **but** it was **still** quite cold in the evenings.
- He worked hard. **However**, he **still** didn't pass the exam.

#### 4 Rewrite the sentences using the link word in CAPITALS.

- ▶ The exam was easy. I didn't pass. **HOWEVER** The exam was easy. However, I didn't pass.
- 1 He went to bed late. He couldn't sleep. **BUT** \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 People don't like her very much. She's very kind. **HOWEVER** \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The food was terrible. The service was good. **ALTHOUGH** \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It was snowing. We decided to go out. **BUT/STILL** \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We lost our dog. We found it after an hour. **HOWEVER** \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I wore a coat. I was cold. **ALTHOUGH/STILL** \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I watched the whole programme. I didn't enjoy it. **THOUGH** \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 We had a big lunch. Jason was hungry. **HOWEVER/STILL** \_\_\_\_\_

#### 5 Make six sentences or pairs of sentences from the table using **but** or **however**.

▶ I didn't feel well. ✓	<b>but</b> <b>However,</b>	I only had to wait five minutes.
I was really hungry,		I stayed at work to finish the job.
I was last in the queue.		someone lent me a jacket.
I was very cold.		I had to wait until 10.00 for dinner.
I was very frightened,		someone held my hand.
I was late for the party.		I was fine the next day. ✓
I was really tired.		everybody was still there.

- ▶ I didn't feel well. However, I was fine the next day.

#### 6 Complete the sentences in a way that makes sense.

- ▶ I took my umbrella but it didn't rain.
- 1 Everyone says it's a great film, though \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Although it was raining, \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The dog looked dangerous but \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Although she was ill, \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 She's very intelligent. However, \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I thought the shop was open. However, \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

## 98 Link words (2)

### A Reason and result

Why did you go into the café?

Link word before the **reason**:

<b>because + clause</b>	<i>I went into the café <b>because</b> it was raining.</i>
<b>because of + noun</b>	<i>I went into the café <b>because of</b> the rain.</i>
<b>(in order) to + verb</b> <b>In order to</b> is more formal than <b>to</b> .	<i>I went into the café <b>(in order) to</b> get out of the rain.</i>

Link word before the **result**:

<b>so + clause</b> <b>= because of this</b>	<i>It was raining, <b>so</b> I went into the café. = 'I went in the café' is the result of the rain.</i>
<b>as a result + clause</b> <b>= because of this</b> <b>As a result</b> can also start a new sentence.	<i>I went to bed very late, <b>and as a result</b> I was tired the next morning. The others had a map but I didn't. <b>As a result</b>, I was the last person to arrive.</i>

#### GLOSSARY

<b>reason</b>	an explanation for why you do sth
<b>result</b>	sth that happens because of sth else

#### 1 Circle the correct word(s).

- ▶ I took my umbrella because so it was raining.
- 1 I stayed at home because / because of the weather.
- 2 We went to Paris so / to see a friend.
- 3 I couldn't go out because / because of I had to study.
- 4 I got lost and in order to / as a result I was late for the meeting.
- 5 It was my birthday, so / because we had a party.
- 6 She went to the market in order to / as a result get some meat.
- 7 She lost her passport, so / because she couldn't go to China.

#### 2 Write **because**, **because of**, **so**, **(in order) to** or **as a result**.

- ▶ They were late because of the traffic.
- 1 I'm going to the chemist's ..... get some medicine.
- 2 It was a nice day, ..... we went out.
- 3 I bought the house ..... the beautiful view.
- 4 I didn't take a coat. ...., I was cold most of the time.
- 5 I don't go to the theatre very often ..... it's too expensive.
- 6 I'm going out now, ..... I will phone you later.
- 7 She went to the town centre ..... meet her friend.
- 8 Our two best players were ill, and ..... we lost the game.

#### 3 Complete the sentences with your own reasons and results.

I stayed at home last night ...

- ▶ because I had to do some work
- 1 because of .....
- 2 in order to .....

I had to wait half an hour for a train, ...

- 3 so .....
- 4 and as a result .....

I went to bed very late ...

- 5 because .....
- 6 so .....



TEST YOURSELF



## B A series of actions or events

Luke is a waiter now. **Before that**, he worked in a factory.

**First of all**, you fry the meat.  
**Secondly**, you fry some onions and add them to the meat. **After that**, you add the red wine and water and cook it slowly for three hours.  
**Finally**, you add the mushrooms and cook it for another fifteen minutes.

... and we had a really nice time. **Firstly**, we spent a couple of days in Budapest. **After that**, we went to Vienna, where we spent the rest of the week. It was very easy to ...

### GLOSSARY

<b>before that</b>	earlier than sth
<b>firstly</b>	You say <b>firstly</b> when you are talking about the first thing in a list. <b>ALSO first / first of all</b>
<b>after that</b>	You say <b>after that</b> when you are talking about the next thing in a list. <b>ALSO (and) then</b>
<b>secondly</b>	You say <b>secondly</b> to talk about the second thing in a list.
<b>finally</b>	You use <b>finally</b> when you are talking about the last thing in a list, usually a long list of four or more things.

#### 4 Complete the link words in the texts.

For this job, ► firstly, you have to fill in a form. (1) S..., you have to go and talk to the boss. (2) A..., you meet other people who work in the company.

(3) F..., you have to do a written test.

(4) F..., I checked the train times on the internet, and

(5) t... I looked at flights to see if they were cheaper.

James got his first job last year. (6) B..., he was a student.

#### 5 Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.

► I checked the answers. / I did the grammar exercises.

First of all, I did the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.

1 You make the pasta sauce. / You boil the pasta. / You add the sauce to the pasta.

2 I trained to be a teacher. / I did a degree in History. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.

3 We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a week. / We spent the second week in Heidelberg. / We left our home in Rome.

4 I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list.

5 I rang for a taxi and left home. / I had a shower. / I got dressed. / I had breakfast.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.

► First of all, I ...



### TEST YOURSELF

# 99 Phrasal verbs

## A Meaning

Most phrasal verbs are very common in spoken English. They have a verb (*sit, stand, get*, etc.) and a particle (*up, on, off*, etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.



sit down



stand up



lie down



fall over

Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
give sth up	He had to <b>give up</b> football.	stop doing something
look sth up	I had to <b>look up</b> the meaning.	try to find information in a book or on the internet
take off	The plane couldn't <b>take off</b> .	leave the ground and start flying
grow up	When Ben <b>grows up</b> , he wants to be a doctor.	slowly change from a child to an adult
find sth out	I must <b>find out</b> the times of the trains to Southampton.	find a fact or piece of information you need or want
go out	Let's <b>go out</b> this evening.	leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. go to a cinema, a club, etc.

### 1 Underline the correct particle.

- ▶ I'd like to lie up / down for a minute.
- 1 Can we find out / over how much it costs?
- 2 Where did she grow out / up?
- 3 He fell over / off when he left the house.
- 4 Do you want to go out / off tonight?
- 5 Pepe wants to give on / up his job.
- 6 Look it out / up in your dictionary.
- 7 The plane couldn't take off / up.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

- ▶ Paola doesn't want to go out this evening. She's tired.
- 1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Everyone stood \_\_\_\_\_ when he came into the room.
- 3 Susana lives in England now, but she grew \_\_\_\_\_ in Spain.
- 4 She sat \_\_\_\_\_ at the table and started eating.
- 5 The doctor told me to lie \_\_\_\_\_ on the bed.
- 6 I told my brother to give \_\_\_\_\_ smoking.
- 7 The plane took \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
- 8 She fell \_\_\_\_\_ in the street, but several people helped her.
- 9 I asked James to look \_\_\_\_\_ the meaning of a word for me.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Do you often look up English words in a dictionary? Yes, quite often.
- 1 Is there anything you would like to give up? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Where did you grow up? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 When you fly, how do you feel when the plane takes off? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 How often do you go out in the evenings? What do you do? \_\_\_\_\_



TEST YOURSELF



## B Grammar

Some phrasal verbs never have an object.

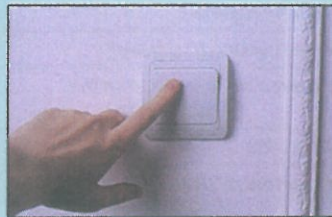
Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
go up	The price of petrol will <b>go up</b> soon.	⬆ increase, become more OPP <b>go down</b> ⬇
carry on (with sth)	Can we <b>carry on</b> with the exercise?	continue with something
go back	She wants to <b>go back</b> to London.	return to a place
wake up	I always <b>wake up</b> at 7.00 a.m.	stop sleeping
go away	<b>Go away!</b> I'm working.	leave a person or a place

Other phrasal verbs need an object. In the following verbs, the object can go before or after the particle.



Take off your jacket.

Take your jacket off.



Could you turn on the light?

Could you turn the light on?



Put on your shoes.

Put your shoes on.

When the object is a pronoun (it, them, etc.) it must go before the particle.

Take it off. (NOT ~~Take off it~~.)

Put them on. (NOT ~~Put on them~~.)

### 4 Change the underlined noun to *it* or *them*, and put it in the correct place.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ▶ Look up <u>the word</u> . <u>Look it up.</u>     | 4 Put <u>those socks</u> on.    .....   |
| ▶ Look up <u>both words</u> . <u>Look them up.</u> | 5 Take off <u>your shoes</u> .    ..... |
| 1 Take off <u>your jacket</u> .    .....           | 6 Give up <u>chocolate</u> .    .....   |
| 2 Put on <u>this tie</u> .    .....                | 7 Turn on <u>the lights</u> .    .....  |
| 3 Turn on <u>the TV</u> .    .....                 | 8 Put <u>your coat</u> on.    .....     |

### 5 Are the sentences correct, or do they need the pronoun *it*? Where? Look at the examples.

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| ▶ Look up in the dictionary. <u>Look it up in the dictionary.</u> | ▶ Please sit down. <u>Correct</u> |
| 1 The price will soon go down.    .....                           |                                   |
| 2 Do you want to go back?    .....                                |                                   |
| 3 Could you turn on, please?    .....                             |                                   |
| 4 You can take off if you're hot.    .....                        |                                   |
| 5 His salary will go up soon.    .....                            |                                   |
| 6 Do they want to stop or carry on?    .....                      |                                   |
| 7 Did you put on?    .....  |                                   |
| 8 What time do you usually wake up?    .....                      |                                   |

### 6 Place the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb that has the same meaning.

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| The price will <u>decrease</u> soon.  | <u>go down</u> |
| 1 I loved Tokyo, and I want to <u>return</u> next year.                       | .....          |
| 2 When we finish Exercise 1, we can <u>continue</u> with Exercise 2.          | .....          |
| 3 I was busy so I told them to <u>leave me on my own</u> .                    | .....          |
| 4 Can I <u>remove</u> my coat?  | .....          |
| 5 I think my salary will <u>increase</u> next year.                           | .....          |
| 6 I was so tired, I didn't <u>stop sleeping</u> until 9 o'clock this morning. | .....          |



### TEST YOURSELF

# 100 Common expressions

## A Expressions with get

Expression	Example	Meaning
get ready	We need to <b>get ready</b> now – the film starts at 6.30.	be prepared and able to do sth
get dressed	I <b>got dressed</b> , had breakfast, then went to work.	put on clothes
get to know sb	I <b>got to know</b> Charlie when we were at university.	meet sb and become friends
get changed (into sth different)	I've been for a long walk, so I'm going to <b>get changed</b> .	take your clothes off and put on different clothes
get in	What time does our train <b>get in</b> ?	arrive at a place
get to sleep	Do you have problems <b>getting to sleep</b> ?	start to sleep
go and get sth	Could you <b>go and get</b> a clean towel from the bathroom?	go to a place and return with sth SYN fetch
get back	I want to <b>get back</b> by 7.00, if possible.	return from a place
get better	I feel my English is <b>getting better</b> now.	reach a higher level, improve
get out of sth	Be careful when you <b>get out of</b> the car.	leave a vehicle such as a car or taxi
we/you get	We <b>get</b> a lot of tourists where I live.	= there are / you can see

### 1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- |                        |       |                            |
|------------------------|-------|----------------------------|
| ▶ get better           | g     | a put on clothes           |
| 1 get in               | ..... | b meet and become friends  |
| 2 get back             | ..... | c return                   |
| 3 get to know somebody | ..... | d arrive                   |
| 4 go and get           | ..... | e put on different clothes |
| 5 get dressed          | ..... | f fetch                    |
| 6 get changed          | ..... | g reach a higher level ✓   |

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I started learning the guitar last year, and I'm definitely getting better now.
- 1 Ed, could you ..... and get my laptop from the bedroom?
- 2 We all got ..... of the car and pushed it to the side of the road.
- 3 I'm meeting Sophia at the station. Her bus gets ..... at 3.15.
- 4 I left Amelia's flat at 10.00, but I didn't get ..... until 11.30.
- 5 We're going out in ten minutes, so we need to get .....
- 6 You ..... a lot of people sleeping on the streets in big cities.

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Do you get to know ..... people easily?
- 1 Do you usually get ..... before or after you have breakfast?
- 2 When you go out, does it take you a long time to get ..... ?
- 3 When you get home from school/college/work, do you usually get ..... into different clothes?
- 4 Do you ever have problems getting to ..... at night?
- 5 Do you think your English is getting ..... ?
- 6 Do you ..... a lot of tourists in your town?

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Do you get to know people easily? Yes, I think so.



TEST YOURSELF



## B In conversation

These expressions are common in informal spoken English.

Guess what! I passed the exam. I heard this morning.

Wow! Well done! That's great.

Yes, I can now relax for the rest of the week.

I don't feel like going to the beach.

But everyone else will be there.

I know, but I'm going to stay here and take care of the dog.

Are you going to the meeting on Friday?

I guess so.

Well, can you let me know by tomorrow?

Come on! We have to go.

What, now?

Yes, right now.

### SPOTLIGHT else

You can use **else** to mean 'different' after words like **everyone**, **somewhere** and **nothing**.

- I didn't like it, but **everyone else** did. (= all the other people)
- The restaurant was full so we went **somewhere else**. (= to another place)
- We had bread because there was **nothing else** to eat. (= no other thing)

### GLOSSARY

<b>Guess what!</b>	used for introducing surprising news
<b>Wow!</b>	a word that shows you are surprised and happy
<b>Well done!</b>	You say this to sb when you are happy because they have done sth well. <b>SYN Congratulations!</b>
<b>the rest</b>	the part that is left or remains: <b>the rest of the day/time</b>
<b>feel like (doing) sth</b>	want (to do) sth: <b>I feel like a nice cold drink.</b>
<b>take care of sth/sb</b>	do everything to make sth/sb safe: <b>I can take care of the children while you go shopping.</b> <b>SYN look after sth/sb</b>
<b>I guess so</b>	= I think so <b>SYN I suppose so</b>
<b>let sb know</b>	tell sb
<b>Come on!</b>	used for telling sb to hurry, be quick <b>SYN hurry up!</b>
<b>right now</b>	at this minute; immediately <b>SYN right away</b>

## 5 Find eight more expressions using words from each box.

somewhere ✓  
the rest

let  
I guess

come  
well

hurry  
right

on!  
me know

up  
now

so  
of the time

done  
else ✓

▶ somewhere else

## 6 Complete the dialogues.

- We need to go right away or we'll be late. ~ Yes, let's go.
- You had all the biscuits. ~ Sorry, there was else to eat.
- Do you feel a drink? ~ Yes, let's go out.
- Do we need to get ready now? ~ Yes, right , so up!
- what? I came first in the English exam. ~ ! Well !
- Are you staying? ~ Yes, I'm going to look the two girls.
- Are you staying at Jon's? ~ Yes, I so. I'll you know at the weekend.
- Why are you going back to the flat? ~ Because there's nowhere to go.

## 7 Rewrite the sentences using the word in CAPITALS. The meaning must stay the same.

- We need to go right now. **AWAY** We need to go right away.
- The bar was busy, so we went to another place. **ELSE** \_\_\_\_\_
- Could you tell me later? **LET** \_\_\_\_\_
- Who is going to look after the children? **TAKE** \_\_\_\_\_
- Come on, Sacha! **HURRY** \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you want to go out? **FEEL** \_\_\_\_\_
- Penny is here. All the others went out. **EVERYONE** \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

# Vocabulary building

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Elementary level.

The words in blue are people.



## TEST YOURSELF

cover one column, and say the word or words in the other column.

### 1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun(s)
act	<b>actor, actress</b>
advertise	<b>advert/advertisement, advertising</b>
agree	agreement
appear	<b>appearance</b>
argue	<b>argument</b>
arrange	<b>arrangement</b>
arrive	<b>arrival</b>
begin	beginning
build	<b>building, builder</b>
choose	<b>choice</b>
clean	<b>cleaner</b>
climb	climbing
collect	collection
complain	<b>complaint</b>
cook	<b>cooker</b>
dance	<b>dance, dancing, dancer</b>
decide	<b>decision</b>
depart	<b>departure</b>
describe	<b>description</b>
design	<b>designer</b>
disagree	disagreement
discover	<b>discovery</b>
discuss	<b>discussion</b>
draw	<b>drawing</b>
drive	<b>driving, driver</b>
educate	<b>education</b>
employ	<b>employer, employee</b>
enter	<b>entrance</b>
examine	<b>exam/examination</b>
explain	<b>explanation</b>
fail	failure
farm	<b>farming, farmer</b>
feel	<b>feeling</b>
fly	<b>flight, flying</b>
greet	<b>greeting</b>
grow	growth
hear	hearing
improve	<b>improvement</b>
instruct	<b>instruction, instructor</b>
invent	<b>invention</b>
invite	<b>invitation</b>
listen	listening, <b>listener</b>
manage	<b>manager</b>



mean	meaning
meet	meeting
move	movement
organize	organization
own	owner
park	parking
pay	payment
perform	performance, performer
play	player
prefer	preference
print	printer
pronounce	pronunciation
read	reading, reader
recommend	recommendation
record	record, recording
report	report, reporter
reserve	reservation
respond	response
ride	riding, rider
run	run, running, runner
serve	service
sign	signature
sing	song, singer
smoke	smoke, smoking
solve	solution
speak	speaking, speaker
spell	spelling
study	study, student
succeed	success
suggest	suggestion
swim	swim, swimming
teach	teaching, teacher
think	thinking, thought
travel	travelling, travel, traveller
visit	visiting, visitor
walk	walk, walking
wash	wash, washing
weigh	weight
win	winner
work	working, worker

## 2 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun(s)
attractive	attraction
beautiful	beauty
cloudy	cloud
cold	cold
crowded	crowd
dangerous	danger
different	difference
direct	direction
electric, electrical	electricity

<b>excited, exciting</b>	excitement
<b>friendly, unfriendly</b>	<b>friend</b>
<b>happy, unhappy</b>	happiness
<b>healthy, unhealthy</b>	<b>health</b>
<b>icy</b>	<b>ice</b>
<b>ill</b>	<b>illness</b>
industrial	<b>industry</b>
<b>intelligent</b>	intelligence
<b>long</b>	length
<b>lucky, unlucky</b>	luck
<b>medical</b>	<b>medicine</b>
<b>musical</b>	<b>music</b>
<b>national</b>	<b>nationality</b>
<b>natural</b>	<b>nature</b>
<b>noisy</b>	<b>noise</b>
painful	<b>pain</b>
peaceful	<b>peace</b>
<b>personal</b>	<b>person</b>
<b>possible, impossible</b>	<b>possibility</b>
scientific	<b>science, scientist</b>
<b>strong</b>	strength
<b>sunny</b>	<b>sun</b>
<b>surprised, surprising</b>	<b>surprise</b>
<b>true</b>	truth
<b>various</b>	<b>variety</b>
<b>wide</b>	width
<b>windy</b>	<b>wind</b>
<b>wooden</b>	<b>wood</b>
<b>young</b>	youth

### 3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Elementary level in both noun and verb form.

answer	guide	<b>record</b>	use
<b>brush</b>	<b>help</b>	repair	visit
<b>call</b>	hope	<b>reply</b>	wash
<b>cause</b>	<b>increase</b>	request	work
change	<b>interview</b>	research	worry
<b>chat</b>	jump	<b>rest</b>	
<b>circle</b>	<b>land</b>	ride	
<b>comment</b>	laugh	ring	
<b>control</b>	<b>look</b>	<b>score</b>	
cook	<b>love</b>	<b>search</b>	
<b>copy</b>	<b>matter</b>	share	
<b>cost</b>	<b>name</b>	shave	
cough	need	<b>smell</b>	
<b>cut</b>	<b>offer</b>	<b>smile</b>	
dance	<b>phone</b>	<b>snow</b>	
download	<b>plan</b>	<b>star</b>	
<b>dream</b>	<b>plant</b>	<b>start</b>	
<b>drink</b>	<b>post</b>	<b>stay</b>	
<b>email</b>	<b>promise</b>	taste	
fall	queue	<b>text</b>	
<b>guess</b>	<b>rain</b>	tour	



#### 4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective(s)
death	<b>die</b>	<b>dead</b>
employment	<b>employ</b>	employed, <b>unemployed</b>
enjoyment	<b>enjoy</b>	<b>enjoyable</b>
excitement	excite	<b>exciting, excited</b>
<b>help</b>	<b>help</b>	<b>helpful</b>
interest	interest	<b>interested, interesting</b>
marriage	marry/ <b>get married</b>	<b>married</b>
<b>organization</b>	<b>organize</b>	organized
<b>pollution</b>	pollute	polluted
<b>sleep</b>	<b>sleep</b>	asleep
speaking, <b>speaker</b>	<b>speak</b>	spoken
<b>surprise</b>	<b>surprise</b>	<b>surprised, surprising</b>
<b>writing, writer</b>	<b>write</b>	written
<b>worry</b>	<b>worry</b>	<b>worried</b> , worrying
<b>reading, reader</b>	<b>read</b>	reading

#### 5 Verbs and adjectives

Verb	Adjective(s)
<b>boil</b>	<b>boiled</b> , boiling
bore	<b>bored</b> , boring
<b>break</b>	<b>broken</b>
<b>clean</b>	<b>clean</b>
<b>close</b>	<b>closed</b>
<b>complete</b>	complete
<b>correct</b>	<b>correct</b>
<b>empty</b>	<b>empty</b>
<b>include</b>	<b>included, including</b>
lose	<b>lost</b>
<b>open</b>	open
<b>relax</b>	<b>relaxed</b> , relaxing
<b>shut</b>	<b>shut</b>
<b>sleep</b>	<b>asleep</b>
<b>speak</b>	spoken
tidy	<b>tidy</b>
tire	<b>tired</b> , tiring
<b>wake up</b>	<b>awake</b>

## Common irregular verbs

be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left



lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

# Answer key

## Unit 1

1 You can put these things in a bag: pencil, notice, CD player, coursebook, dictionary, piece of paper. You can't put these in a bag: desk, table, chair, noticeboard.

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 2 1 board pen | 4 exercise book  |
| 2 coursebook  | 5 piece of paper |
| 3 noticeboard | 6 CD player      |

- |                                 |                 |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| 3 1 a whiteboard/board          | 5 a noticeboard |
| 2 a dictionary                  | 6 a CD          |
| 3 a desk/table                  | 7 a bag         |
| 4 a notebook / an exercise book | 8 a coursebook  |

### 4 possible answers:

I've got a dictionary, a CD player, a desk and a pen. I haven't got a noticeboard, a board, a board pen or a notice.

## Unit 2

- |                     |                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 1 indefinite      | 5 pronouns                          |
| 2 noun              | 6 verbs                             |
| 3 preposition       | 7 adverbs                           |
| 4 an irregular      | 8 past participle                   |
| 2 1 I               | 9 asked                             |
| 2 an                | 10 This morning                     |
| 3 lesson            | 11 class                            |
| 4 young             | 12 think/'s                         |
| 5 from/in           | 13 wrong                            |
| 6 a                 | 14 I/he                             |
| 7 quietly           | 15 I think he's in the wrong class. |
| 8 spoke             |                                     |
| 3 1 preposition     | 6 indefinite article                |
| 2 definite article  | 7 adjective                         |
| 3 noun              | 8 noun                              |
| 4 verb (past tense) | 9 pronoun                           |
| 5 preposition       | 10 verb (past tense)                |

## Unit 3

- 1 1 third  
2 Circle  
3 sentence  
4 small/little  
5 possible answers:  
wonderful/marvellous/great  
6 mistake  
7 thanks  
8 false  
9 is  
10 yes  
11 wrong  
12 do

- 2 1 d 2 a 3 e 4 b

- 3 1 for example  
2 yes/correct/right  
3 informal  
4 synonym  
5 equals / is the same as  
6 etcetera / and so on

- 4 1 etc.  
2 missing  
3 order  
4 wrong  
5 symbol; the same as  
6 mistakes; corrects  
7 test; cover  
8 short form  
9 match  
10 informal  
11 false  
12 error  
13 columns  
14 underline  
15 circle

## Unit 4

- |   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 1 helped  | 5 pronounce       |
| 2 loud  | 6 situation       |
| 3 record  | 7 use             |
| 4 down  | 8 things          |
| 2 1 out loud  |                   |
| 2 notebook; keep  |                   |
| 3 meaning   |                   |
| 4 use   |                   |
| 5 situations  |                   |
| 3 1 To practise the pronunciation. / To practise how to pronounce them. |                   |
| 2 In a notebook.  |                   |
| 3 To keep a record.   |                   |
| 4 In English or your own language.                                      |                   |
| 5 To help you to understand how to use the word.                        |                   |
| 6 Think of situations where you can use the word.                       |                   |
| 4 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 e   |                   |
| 5 1 called  | 5 wrong/not right |
| 2 like  | 6 opposite        |
| 3 How do  | 7 does            |
| 4 between   | 8 explain         |
| 6 possible answers:   |                   |
| 1 What does this word mean?   |                   |
| 2 How do you spell this word?   |                   |
| 3 How do you say this in English?                                       |                   |
| 4 Could you explain this word?  |                   |
| 5 What's the opposite of this word?                                     |                   |
| 6 What's this called in English?  |                   |



## Unit 5

- 1 1 e                      3 b                      5 a                      7 d  
2 i                      4 h                      6 f                      8 g

2 explanation; description; guess;  
instruction; invention; practice; education

- 3 1 repeat                      5 compared  
2 homework                      6 do; forgot  
3 guess                      7 made; up  
4 practise                      8 described

- 4 1 text                      5 an essay  
2 paragraph                      6 context  
3 dialogue                      7 discussion  
4 activities                      8 simple

- 5 1 revise                      5 dialogue  
2 looked; up                      6 activity  
3 conversation                      7 simple  
4 exercises                      8 essay

6 possible answers, from Hungary:

- 1 Twice a day. I usually read the news in the morning and in the evening, or sometimes I read something for my English class.
- 2 Yes, because looking up words in a dictionary would take a long time.
- 3 Not very often – only when I am preparing for an exam.
- 4 Only before tests. I know I should do it more regularly but I don't have time for that.
- 5 Discussing things in groups in class, and watching videos or my favourite series outside class.
- 6 I like listening to dialogues several times. It helps me with pronunciation and understanding conversation in English. I think they help if I know a word already and hear it again.

## Unit 6

- 1 1 eight                      6 six  
2 twenty                      7 thirteen  
3 sixty-seven                      8 seventy-two  
4 fifty                      9 twenty-four  
5 thirty-five                      10 eighty-nine

- 2 1 about/around a hundred euros  
2 about/around ten lessons  
3 about/around thirty years  
4 about/around forty students  
5 about/around fifty dollars  
6 about/around eighty people  
7 about/around seventy pounds  
8 about/around twenty chairs

- 3 1 twenty-nine                      4 thirty-one  
2 seventy-seven                      5 twenty-four  
3 sixty-three                      6 forty-five

- 5 1 two hundred  
2 three hundred and forty  
3 one thousand five hundred  
4 two thousand six hundred and fifty  
5 seven thousand  
6 42,500

- 6 1 a/one thousand  
2 five thousand and fifty-six  
3 eleven thousand three hundred and one  
4 a/one million  
5 two thousand five hundred  
6 three hundred and twenty-five thousand  
7 a/one billion  
8 two thousand

- 7 1 They said it was thousands of dollars.  
2 It's about/around fifty minutes.  
3 There are thousands (of them).  
4 I bought about/around twenty books.  
5 We want to grow hundreds of trees.  
6 There are millions of people with this problem.

## Unit 7

- 1 1 nine fifteen                      5 five fifty  
2 ten twenty-five                      6 seven twenty  
3 three thirty-five                      7 two thirty  
4 six forty-five                      8 four forty

- 2 1 (a) quarter past seven  
2 half past nine  
3 twenty-five to twelve  
4 ten to four  
5 five to nine  
6 three minutes past one  
7 (a) quarter to three  
8 seventeen minutes past four

- 3 1 At five past eight.  
2 At eight forty-five/(a) quarter to nine.  
3 At two minutes past nine.  
4 At nine thirty-five/twenty-five to ten.  
5 At ten past ten.

4 possible answers for England:

- 1 They usually open at 9.00 and they close at 5.00.
- 2 Supermarkets usually open at 8.00, and other shops usually open at 9.00 or 9.30. They usually close between 5.30 and 7.00.
- 3 Restaurants in England are often open all day from 12.00 p.m. to 10.00 p.m.
- 4 Most schools start at half past eight or nine o'clock and finish at three o'clock. Most people start work at 9 a.m. and finish at 5 p.m.
- 5 I have lunch at about 12.30.
- 6 I have dinner at around 7.00 p.m.

- 5 1 S                      4 S                      7 S                      10 S  
2 D                      5 S                      8 D                      11 D  
3 S                      6 D                      9 S                      12 S

- 6 1 just 2 almost/nearly 3 at 4 midday/noon 5 in
- 7 1 at midday 2 in the morning 3 all day 4 in the evening 5 all evening
- 6 at 7 all 8 almost/nearly 9 just 10 all
- 6 at midnight 7 at night 8 almost/nearly 8.00 9 just before

### Unit 8

- 1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday  
2 spring, summer, autumn, winter  
3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
- 3 1 Tuesday 2 September 3 summer 4 December 5 Saturday
- 6 April 7 February 8 winter 9 Thursday 10 July
- 4 possible answers:  
1 September.  
2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.  
3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.  
4 I go and see my family, and we have a big lunch together.  
5 New Year's Day is a holiday. My family and I go for a long walk.  
6 May 1<sup>st</sup> is a public holiday for people who work, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.
- 5 1 third 2 twentieth 3 fifth 4 first 5 eighth
- 6 sixteen 7 fourteenth 8 thirteenth 9 second
- 6 1 April the tenth/the tenth of April  
2 March the fourth/the fourth of March  
3 April the seventeenth/the seventeenth of April  
4 March the twenty-first/the twenty-first of March  
5 April the eleventh/the eleventh of April  
6 April the sixth/the sixth of April  
7 March the thirty-first/the thirty-first of March  
8 April the twenty-third/the twenty-third of April
- 7 1 February the third/the third of February  
2 July the fourth/the fourth of July  
3 December the tenth/the tenth of December  
4 August the twelfth/the twelfth of August  
5 January the fifteenth/the fifteenth of January  
6 twenty twenty-two/two thousand and twenty-two  
7 May the twenty-first/the twenty-first of May

- 8 November the thirtieth/the thirtieth of November  
9 April the twenty-second/the twenty-second of April  
10 twenty fifteen/two thousand and fifteen  
11 your answer  
12 your answer

### Unit 9

- 1 1 F – I got back six days ago.  
2 T  
3 F – I paid it two days ago.  
4 T  
5 F – I was in Moscow.  
6 F – I'm going to the cinema this evening.  
7 T  
8 F – I'm seeing Scott in five days.  
9 T  
10 T
- 2 1 ago 2 diary 3 night 4 this 5 appointment 6 next
- 3 1 I went to the cinema  
2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's café  
3 I stayed at Will's/I went to Will's  
4 I've got a doctor's appointment  
5 It's Callum's birthday  
6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad for lunch
- 4 1 since 2 for 3 for 4 for 5 since 6 since
- 5 1 just 2 while 3 ever 4 since 5 recently 6 yet 7 ever 8 recently; for
- 6 1 yet 2 already 3 just 4 recently 5 ever 6 yet 7 while 8 since

### Unit 10

- 1 Two: feet, ears, knees, shoulders, legs, hands, ankles, arms
- 2 1 shoulder 2 stomach 3 neck 4 bottom 5 blood 6 teeth 7 finger
- 3 1 skin 2 nose 3 back 4 chin 5 face 6 head/hand 7 teeth 8 chest 9 blood 10 brain 11 bottom 12 stomach



- |   |               |    |           |
|---|---------------|----|-----------|
| 4 | 1 S           | 6  | D         |
|   | 2 S           | 7  | S         |
|   | 3 D           | 8  | D         |
|   | 4 S           | 9  | D         |
|   | 5 S           | 10 | S         |
| 5 | 1 arm         | 4  | neck      |
|   | 2 bottom      | 5  | eyes/ears |
|   | 3 foot        | 6  | leg/knee  |
| 6 | 1 eye         | 8  | skin      |
|   | 2 toes        | 9  | leg       |
|   | 3 finger      | 10 | blood     |
|   | 4 bottom      | 11 | heart     |
|   | 5 hair        | 12 | brain     |
|   | 6 tooth/teeth | 13 | bone      |
|   | 7 waist       | 14 | body      |

### Unit 11

- 1 1 F – 'average height' means not tall and not short.
  - 2 F – 'quite thin' means not very thin, but thinner than average.
  - 3 T
  - 4 T
  - 5 F – the answer to 'How much does he weigh' is 60kg (for example).
  - 6 T
  - 7 F – 'average weight' means not heavy and not slim.
  - 8 F – 'slim' is more positive than 'thin'.
  - 9 T
  - 10 F – 'height' describes how tall somebody is, 'weight' describes how heavy somebody is.
- |   |          |    |        |
|---|----------|----|--------|
| 2 | 1 height | 6  | weighs |
|   | 2 slim   | 7  | short  |
|   | 3 fat    | 8  | lost   |
|   | 4 quite  | 9  | much   |
|   | 5 put on | 10 | quite  |
- 3 1 T
  - 2 F – she's got blonde hair.
  - 3 F – it's long.
  - 4 F – the young man is handsome/good-looking.
  - 5 T
  - 6 F – The woman's got fair hair.
  - 7 T
  - 8 T
  - 9 F – he's middle aged.
  - 10 F – it's grey.
- |   |                |    |              |
|---|----------------|----|--------------|
| 4 | 1 pretty       | 10 | handsome     |
|   | 2 dark         | 11 | grey         |
|   | 3 smile        | 12 | blonde       |
|   | 4 features     | 13 | beautiful    |
|   | 5 teenager     | 14 | attractive   |
|   | 6 good-looking | 15 | teenage      |
|   | 7 straight     | 16 | fair         |
|   | 8 beard        | 17 | curly        |
|   | 9 middle-aged  | 18 | good-looking |

- 5 possible answers:  
 I'm a middle aged woman with short dark curly hair. I'm quite attractive.  
 I think all of the young people are attractive, but I don't like beards. The middle-aged man has a nice smile, but I think he's put on weight.

### Unit 12

- |   |             |   |          |
|---|-------------|---|----------|
| 1 | 1 lie down  | 5 | sit down |
|   | 2 fall over | 6 | get on   |
|   | 3 ride      | 7 | run      |
|   | 4 stand up  |   |          |
- 2 1 dance
  - 2 sit down/lie down
  - 3 fall over
  - 4 ride
  - 5 get on
- |   |                     |   |             |
|---|---------------------|---|-------------|
| 3 | 1 stand up          | 6 | jumped      |
|   | 2 walk              | 7 | rode        |
|   | 3 climb             | 8 | ran; fell   |
|   | 4 dance             | 9 | got off; on |
|   | 5 lie down/sit down |   |             |
- 4 1 a door
  - 2 a ball
  - 3 a book
  - 4 a person
  - 5 a dictionary
  - 6 a pencil
  - 7 a bicycle
- 5 1 pick up a cup 1; drop a cup 1
  - 2 pick up a TV 2; turn on a TV 1
  - 3 break a bottle 1; open a bottle 2
  - 4 pull a person 2; carry a person 2
  - 5 throw a ball 1; catch a ball 1 or 2
  - 6 drop a ruler 1; break a ruler 2
  - 7 carry a door 2; close a door 1
  - 8 pick up a baby 2; hold a baby 2
- 6 1 closed/shut
  - 2 picked up; put it down
  - 3 dropped
  - 4 pulled; carried/pushed
  - 5 gave; held
  - 6 threw
  - 7 carry

### Unit 13

- 1 1 I need some personal information.
  - 2 Where do you come from?
  - 3 What do you do?
  - 4 What is your postcode?
  - 5 How old are you?
  - 6 Where is the receptionist from?
- 2 1 Where do you come from?
  - 2 Where in Poland exactly?
  - 3 What do you do?
  - 4 What's your address?
  - 5 How old are you?

- 3 1 first  
2 from  
3 Whereabouts  
4 What's  
5 postcode  
6 do  
7 married  
8 old

4 possible answers:

ABOUT YOU
Gomez.
Alicia.
I'm from Spain.
From Sevilla.
Yes, it's Gaspar Perez 27 Sta Clara, Sevilla.
41007.
I'm a history teacher.
Yes, I am.
I'm 34.

- 5 1 F – 'perfect' means so good it cannot be better.  
2 T  
3 F – 'improve' means become better.  
4 T  
5 F – a language course is a number of lessons.  
Your language level is how good you are at the language.  
6 T  
7 F – 'how long?' means 'how much time?'  
8 T
- 6 1 improving  
2 level  
3 can communicate very well  
4 abroad  
5 planning  
6 great/wonderful  
7 progress  
8 help (people)
- 7 possible answers:  
1 I'm elementary level.  
2 It's difficult, and I can only understand a little.  
3 Yes, I want to improve for my job, and my girlfriend is English.  
4 Yes, slowly.  
5 Yes, to England to visit my girlfriend's family.  
6 Yes, I'd like a job in London to improve my English.

## Unit 14

- 1 1 daughter 7 husband  
2 nephew 8 grandmother  
3 niece 9 uncle  
4 sister-in-law 10 aunt  
5 cousin 11 relatives  
6 grandparents

2

MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE
father	mother	brother-in-law	sister-in-law
brother	sister	grandfather	grandmother
husband	wife	grandson	granddaughter
nephew	niece	cousin	cousin
relative	relative	parent	parent
son	daughter	uncle	aunt

3 your own answers

- 4 1 F – they are married.  
2 T  
3 F – he's older than Karen.  
4 T  
5 T  
6 F – Luke is Amy's boyfriend.  
7 F – there are 5 in Damon's family.  
8 T  
9 T  
10 F – Luke is Damon's brother.
- 5 1 I was born in 2001.  
2 We spend a lot of time together.  
3 My girlfriend is older than me.  
4 There are six of us in my family.  
5 I am the youngest in my family.  
6 I've got an older brother and a younger sister.  
OR an older sister and a younger brother.

6 possible answers:

- 1 There are five of us.  
2 1999.  
3 I've got two sisters: one is three years older than me, and the other is two years younger than me.  
4 I spend a lot of time with my younger sister because she goes out with my best friend, Ben.  
5 No, my older sister is married and lives with her husband.

## Unit 15

- 1 1 nice 5 friendly  
2 funny 6 patient  
3 clever 8 laugh  
4 strange 9 relaxed
- 2 1 unfriendly 5 funny  
2 intelligent 6 patient  
3 stupid 7 relaxed  
4 clever/intelligent



- 3 1 laugh  
2 like; fun; strange  
3 What; kind; clever/intelligent
- 4 *possible answers:*  
My mother is very kind.  
My cousin Lucia is very friendly.  
My teacher Mrs Amato is very patient with me.  
Dino, my boyfriend, is good fun.  
My friend Alicia is very intelligent.  
Mr Fideo, my neighbour upstairs, is quite strange.
- 5 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S
- 6 1 T  
2 F – they're completely different.  
3 T  
4 T  
5 F – Sophie's quite lazy.  
6 T  
7 F – she's tidy.  
8 F – it didn't matter.
- 7 1 own  
2 life  
3 share  
4 matter  
5 completely/really  
6 other
- 8 *possible answers:*  
1 I'm very tidy, but my wife is really untidy.  
2 I'm hard-working some of the time!  
3 Yes, I'm really quiet. I don't like a lot of noise.  
4 No, I'm not very serious.  
5 Yes, I've got a lot of friends and I go out quite often.  
6 No, I don't.

#### Unit 16

- 1 get to know somebody, ex-boyfriend, get married, go out with somebody, have a baby, romantic relationship
- 2 1 They had a baby last year.  
2 They separated in January.  
3 We have a very good relationship.  
4 *How did you get to know your boyfriend?/ How did your boyfriend get to know you?*  
5 They were together for three years.  
6 I went out with him for six months.
- 3 1 got; wife  
2 got; together  
3 couple  
4 out; separated  
5 ex-  
6 divorced; partner/girlfriend; get
- 4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

- 5 1 advice  
2 each  
3 old; known  
4 get  
5 met  
6 known; see  
7 meeting  
8 flatmate; best, personalities
- 6 *possible answers:*  
1 A man called Noah.  
2 About 20 years.  
3 At work.  
4 About once a week, because we don't work together now.  
5 He's good fun and we laugh at the same things.  
6 Yes, he gives me good advice if I have a problem. I'm not as good at giving advice as he is.

#### Unit 17

- 1 1 angry 4 scared 7 afraid  
2 worried 5 embarrassed 8 surprised  
3 bored 6 unhappy 9 excited
- 2 1 emotions 4 scared  
2 bored 5 in love  
3 sad 6 embarrassed
- 3 1 worried  
2 surprised  
3 excited  
4 felt; embarrassed  
5 happy  
6 bored  
7 afraid/scared  
8 love  
9 emotions/feelings
- 4 1 upset  
2 nervous  
3 thirsty  
4 hungry  
5 in pain  
6 pleased  
7 sorry
- 5 1 nervous 5 argument; argue  
2 tired 6 sorry  
3 pleased 7 thirsty  
4 pain 8 upset; crying
- 6 *possible answers:*  
1 I felt tired when I got up this morning.  
2 I felt nervous before my exam last week.  
3 I felt hungry an hour ago.  
4 I felt thirsty during the night.  
5 I argued with my boyfriend on Saturday.  
6 I was in pain last week when I fell over.  
7 I cried a couple of weeks ago when I saw a very sad film.  
8 I felt pleased when I finished work on Friday afternoon.

## Unit 18

- 1 1 2020 6 midnight  
2 Friday 7 the autumn  
3 April 8 winter  
4 the morning 9 lunchtime  
5 4:00 10 the evening
- 2 1 at 3 in 5 On 7 in 9 At  
2 at 4 in 6 in 8 at 10 on

### 3 possible answers:

I get up **at** seven o'clock.  
I study English **on** Tuesday and Thursday evenings.  
I go swimming **in** the summer.  
I usually go out with friends **at** the weekend.  
I watch TV **in** the evenings.  
I go to bed **at** about eleven o'clock.  
My birthday is **on** 6th June.  
I was born **in** 1997.  
We have public holidays **on** Christmas Day, **on** New Year's Day, **on** May Day (in early May), and several other days.

## Unit 19

- 1 1 trees  
2 motorway  
3 river  
4 shop  
5 church  
6 gate  
7 mountain  
8 field  
9 building
- 2 1 under 4 towards 7 out of  
2 into 5 past 8 down  
3 up 6 through 9 across

- 3 1 across/over/under  
2 across/over  
3 through  
4 along  
5 past

### 4 your own answers

## Unit 20

- 1 1 in 8 on  
2 on 9 on  
3 at 10 in  
4 in 11 on  
5 in 12 at  
6 on 13 on  
7 in 14 at
- 2 1 in 5 on  
2 in 6 in  
3 on 7 at  
4 on 8 at; at; in

### 3 possible answers:

- 1 I live in a town.  
2 I live in a house.  
3 Yes, it's the River Ebro.  
4 My bedroom is on the first floor.  
5 I've got lots of pictures and lights on the wall.  
6 Yes, I do.  
7 Yes, but not often.  
8 At school.

### 4 1 T

- 2 T  
3 T  
4 F – the people are in front of the garage.  
5 T  
6 F – the gate is between the house and the garage.  
7 F – the children are in front of Mum and Dad.  
8 T  
9 T  
10 T

- 5 1 next to 5 near  
2 in front of 6 in front of  
3 in front of 7 next to  
4 between 8 behind

### 6 possible answers:

- 1 There's another house.  
2 There's a garden and a hill.  
3 Another house.  
4 No, there aren't.  
5 My parents' bedroom.  
6 The dining room.  
7 A bathroom.  
8 Yes, a tree.

## Unit 21

- 1 1 night  
2 pencil  
3 book  
4 apple  
5 milk  
6 sky  
7 mountain

- 2 1 at the top  
2 at the back  
3 at the bottom  
4 At first  
5 at the front  
6 at the end  
7 in the middle  
8 in the end  
9 on the other side  
10 At the start/beginning  
11 At first; In the end



- 3 **AT:** least, the same time, the time, the moment  
**ON:** holiday, time, the phone  
**IN:** fact, prison, hospital
- 4 1 at the same time  
 2 on holiday  
 3 at the moment  
 4 in hospital  
 5 At least  
 6 on time  
 7 at school/university
- 5 1 at the time 5 in prison  
 2 in hospital 6 in fact/actually  
 3 at least 7 at university  
 4 by the end of 8 on his phone

### Unit 22

- 1 1 good at  
 2 I agree.  
 3 depends on  
 4 bored with  
 5 Do you ask your parents for money?  
 6 care about  
 7 live with  
 8 interested in speaking
- 2 1 thank; present/gift 4 spent  
 2 cares 5 interested  
 3 depends 6 ask
- 3 1 with 4 for 7 at  
 2 for 5 on 8 with  
 3 in 6 about 9 with
- 4 **possible answers:**  
 I live with my wife.  
 I sometimes ask my parents for advice, but I don't think I depend on them.  
 No, I never ask them for money.  
 Yes, I usually agree with them.  
 No, I don't spend much on clothes.  
 I don't really care about making money, but I would quite like a bit more.  
 I almost always thank people for presents.  
 I'm interested in sailing, photography and going to the theatre.  
 I'm quite good at photography, and I'm good at my job.  
 I get bored with things like housework.
- 5 1 f 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 g 6 d
- 6 1 at 4 about 7 about  
 2 for 5 on 8 of  
 3 for 6 for 9 of
- 7 1 based 3 pay 5 applied  
 2 heard 4 noticed 6 think

- 8 **possible answers:**  
 Yes, I listen to the radio when I have my breakfast.  
 No, that's not true. I don't like social media.  
 No, that's not true. I usually notice what people are wearing.  
 Yes, I like films based on true stories.  
 I like furniture made of wood very much.  
 I don't like waiting for buses. I don't take taxis, so I don't pay for them.  
 I applied for a job in the summer and I got it.  
 I think about the future a lot, more than the past.

### Unit 23

- 1 1 D 3 D 5 S  
 2 S 4 D 6 D
- 2 1 get up  
 2 have a shower  
 3 get dressed  
 4 I arrive at  
 5 I finish/leave work  
 6 I have/eat dinner  
 7 go to bed  
 8 usually sleep  
 9 daily routine is
- 3 1 get 5 arrive at/get to  
 2 have 6 dinner  
 3 have/eat 7 go  
 4 leave 8 sleep
- 4 **possible answers:**  
 1 I get dressed before I have breakfast.  
 2 Yes, before breakfast.  
 3 In the kitchen.  
 4 I leave home at about 7.15.  
 5 I get to work at 8.00.  
 6 I have dinner with my husband.  
 7 I go to bed at about 11.30.  
 8 I sleep for about six or seven hours a night.
- 5 1 Do you often do the shopping?  
 2 He is never late for school.  
 3 We sometimes get up early and play tennis.  
 4 Do you always go shopping at the weekend?  
 5 Martha often goes out during the week.  
 6 I see my sister once or twice a week.
- 6 1 stay 4 go 7 during  
 2 go 5 do 8 once  
 3 play 6 at 9 twice
- 7 **possible answers:**  
 1 F – I **sometimes** play tennis in the summer, but in the winter too.  
 2 F – In my family, I **often** do the shopping, or my sister does.  
 3 F – I **never** go for a long walk during the week.  
 4 F – I **often** play video games at the weekend.  
 5 F – I **often** have dinner with my family.  
 6 F – **At the weekend**, I go out a lot.  
 7 T  
 8 F – I **sometimes** go shopping with a friend.

## Unit 24

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1 jacket   | 8 pocket   |
| 2 trousers | 9 jeans    |
| 3 jumper   | 10 tie     |
| 4 button   | 11 shirt   |
| 5 coat     | 12 skirt   |
| 6 T-shirt  | 13 shorts  |
| 7 dress    | 14 sweater |

- 2 1 Megan  
2 Enzo  
3 Osman  
4 Milla  
5 Megan  
6 Enzo  
7 Milla  
8 Osman  
9 Milla, Enzo and Megan  
10 Kim  
11 Enzo and Osman  
12 Milla, Osman, Kim, Megan  
13 Enzo and Megan  
14 no

- 3 **WHOLE BODY:** suit, dress, coat, uniform  
**ABOVE THE WAIST:** top, tie, T-shirt, shirt, jumper  
**BELOW THE WAIST:** trousers, skirt, shorts, jeans

- 4 1 skirts; dresses  
2 put your coat on  
3 trousers; jeans  
4 hot  
5 a uniform  
6 an item of clothing

- |       |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|
| 5 1 D | 4 S | 7 D |
| 2 S   | 5 D | 8 D |
| 3 D   | 6 S | 9 D |

### 6 possible answers:

- I'm wearing a blue T-shirt, a pair of jeans and a jacket.
- It was Sunday, so I wore a dress. I also put my coat on when I went out.
- I wear jeans and sweaters a lot at the weekends, but if I'm going out, I often wear a skirt and top, or a dress.
- I don't go to parties very often, but I usually wear a dress.
- Yes. I worked in a restaurant when I was younger and I wore a uniform. I didn't like it!

## Unit 25

- 1 1 T  
2 F – glasses are made of glass, plastic or metal.  
3 T  
4 F – you can carry an umbrella.  
5 T  
6 T  
7 T  
8 F – people usually wear one scarf.

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| 2 1 socks      | 6 glasses  |
| 2 hat          | 7 scarf    |
| 3 ring         | 8 watch    |
| 4 boots/socks  | 9 umbrella |
| 5 tights/socks | 10 handbag |

- |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 3 1 S | 3 S | 5 S | 7 D |
| 2 D   | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- 4 1 Give me the sock.  
2 not possible  
3 I've got one pair of trainers.  
4 Where's my glove?  
5 a gold necklace; a watch; a pair of leather boots; a pair of trainers; a pair of gloves; a leather belt; a pair of tights; a plastic ring

### 6 possible answers:

- I always wear a watch, a ring and a necklace.
- I never wear socks or a hat.
- Yes, I wear them a lot.
- I wear glasses for reading and I often wear sunglasses when I'm driving.
- I wear jewellery every day and I always wear a watch, but I take it off when I go to bed. I never wear a hat. I sometimes wear a scarf in the winter.

## Unit 26

- 1 red, green, pink, purple, orange, grey, dark blue, cream, brown, light blue, black, yellow, white

- |              |             |           |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| 2 1 purple   | 4 pink      | 7 brown   |
| 2 light blue | 5 grey      | 8 cream   |
| 3 green      | 6 dark blue | 9 colours |

- |                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 3 1 uncomfortable | 4 long        |
| 2 expensive       | 5 cheap       |
| 3 small           | 6 comfortable |

- 4 1 a short blue skirt  
2 comfortable brown shoes  
3 a large orange handbag  
4 a long red skirt  
5 uncomfortable red shoes  
6 an expensive purple tie  
7 a small green handbag

- |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 5 1 S | 3 D | 5 S | 7 D |
| 2 S   | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- 6 1 take/am/'m  
2 style  
3 wrong  
4 take  
5 fit; too  
6 look/are  
7 size; too  
8 great/lovely/nice; great/lovely/nice  
9 fit; too  
10 right  
11 appearance



## Unit 27

1 1 T

2 F – the total is £60.

3 F – you have got enough.

4 T

5 F – they cost the same.

6 T

7 T

- |               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| 2 1 cash      | 6 -dollar |
| 2 purse       | 7 dollars |
| 3 credit card | 8 total   |
| 4 coins       | 9 enough  |
| 5 cost        | 10 each   |

3 possible answers:

- Yes, I usually have about €80. I need it because I often buy food when I'm out.
- I keep it in my purse. Sometimes I just have money in my pocket.
- Yes, I have enough for a coffee and a book, but not jewellery.
- If I'm not buying many things, I pay in cash, but if I buy a lot, I pay by debit card.

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 4 1 price | 6 online |
| 2 spend   | 7 earn   |
| 3 saved   | 8 sold   |
| 4 won     | 9 bill   |
| 5 price   | 10 off   |

- |            |          |        |
|------------|----------|--------|
| 5 1 bought | 3 sold   | 5 won  |
| 2 spent    | 4 earned | 6 paid |

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 6 1 online | 5 sale       |
| 2 bills    | 6 earn/spend |
| 3 free     | 7 products   |
| 4 price    | 8 prize      |

7 possible answers:

- Yes, I sometimes buy books online.
- No, I don't. I usually use my debit card.
- It's usually free, yes.
- It's about £1.
- No, I don't like sales very much.
- No, in general they earn less than men.
- They buy DVDs and books, I think.
- Yes, I won a prize at school – it was an art book.

## Unit 28

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 1 chemist's      | 5 medicine         |
| 2 pharmacy         | 6 clothes shop     |
| 3 department store | 7 present          |
| 4 shopping centre  | 8 electrical store |

2 bookshop, department store, clothes shop, pharmacy, supermarket, electrical store, furniture shop, everything, medicine, except

- |                  |                            |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| 3 1 toyshop      | 4 fruit and vegetable shop |
| 2 gift shop      | 5 music shop               |
| 3 furniture shop | 6 chemist's                |

- |   |
|---|
| 4 1 baker's/supermarket                                 |
| 2 toy shop/department store/shopping centre/gift shop   |
| 3 gift shop/department store/shopping centre/music shop |
| 4 music shop/shopping centre                            |
| 5 chemist's/pharmacy/supermarket                        |
| 6 shoe shop/department store                            |
| 7 furniture shop/department store                       |
| 8 clothes shop/department store                         |
| 9 electrical store/shopping centre/department store     |

- |                   |
|-------------------|
| 5 1 two things    |
| 2 to              |
| 3 the shoes on    |
| 4 of two things   |
| 5 personal        |
| 6 online          |
| 7 DVD             |
| 8 the price       |
| 9 somebody's face |

- |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 6 1 d | 3 h | 5 e | 7 c |
| 2 a   | 4 g | 6 b |     |

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| 7 1 prefer   | 5 try; on |
| 2 choose     | 6 online  |
| 3 service    | 7 sales   |
| 4 particular | 8 touch   |

8 possible answers:

- I like both of them, but I prefer small shops for meat and fish.
- No, it's difficult to choose. I often make mistakes.
- Yes, it is.
- I prefer comfortable shoes.
- No, sometimes I buy clothes online and try them on at home. I can always send them back.
- I prefer to go to the shops, but sometimes it's easier and cheaper online.
- The sales are usually in January, and also in the summer.
- Yes, I like to touch clothes.

## Unit 29

- |              |
|--------------|
| 1 1 recipe   |
| 2 memory     |
| 3 diary      |
| 4 camera     |
| 5 possession |

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 2 1 camera    | 5 voice      |
| 2 recipes     | 6 diary      |
| 3 possessions | 7 recordings |
| 4 gun         | 8 memory     |

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 3 1 any more | 5 gun         |
| 2 tool       | 6 voice       |
| 3 recipe     | 7 belongs     |
| 4 memories   | 8 possessions |

4 possible answers:

- 1 I've got some very old books that belonged to my grandfather, and my father's watch.
- 2 Yes, I really enjoyed school. I had a lot of friends, and the teachers were very good.
- 3 I use the camera on my mobile phone because I always have it with me.
- 4 I've got a recording of my mother and sister on my phone. They're singing and laughing.

5 1 F – Clothes are made of material.

- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 F – an alarm clock is usually made of plastic or metal.
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 F – if something is unusual, you don't see it often, or it doesn't happen often.
- 8 F – an electric fan is useful if it's very hot.
- 9 T

6 1 I use my mobile as an alarm clock in the mornings.

- 2 My desk is made of wood and is very old.
- 3 What shape is the table? ~ I think it's round.
- 4 He's got a very unusual alarm clock – it's made of wood.
- 5 The garden chairs are made of white plastic and they're very hard.
- 6 A computer is made of metal and plastic.
- 7 What do you call the device that turns the TV on and off?

7 possible answers:

- 1 My dining room table is round.
- 2 No, I use a real alarm clock.
- 3 My desk is made of wood, and the computer, keyboard and printer are plastic and metal. There are some pencils made of wood too. And the lamp is made of plastic, I think.
- 4 Yes, I've got a digital TV.
- 5 I use an electric fan in the summer.

Unit 30

- |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 S | 3 S | 5 D | 7 S |
| 2 D   | 4 D | 6 S | 8 D |

- |        |       |
|--------|-------|
| 2 1 No | 5 No  |
| 2 Yes  | 6 Yes |
| 3 Yes  | 7 No  |
| 4 Yes  | 8 No  |

- |                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 3 1 found/discovered | 5 killed        |
| 2 area/part          | 6 crimes        |
| 3 named              | 7 series/number |
| 4 attacked           | 8 alive         |

- |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 4 1 D | 3 D | 5 D | 7 D |
| 2 S   | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| 5 1 find     | 4 think   |
| 2 team/group | 5 people  |
| 3 important  | 6 happens |

- 6 1 late  
2 statement  
3 danger  
4 searching

- 5 major  
6 believe  
7 happen  
8 public

Unit 31

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1 1 What's   | 8 feel         |
| 2 's got     | 9 feel         |
| 3 feel       | 10 a common    |
| 4 've got    | 11 's          |
| 5 a headache | 12 flu         |
| 6 Has        | 13 haven't got |
| 7 healthy    | 14 Has he got  |

- 2 1 cough; unhealthy  
2 temperature  
3 matter; well; toothache  
4 stomach ache  
5 sick  
6 flu  
7 health  
8 illness; common  
9 cold

- 3 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D

- 4 1 F – If you get better, you feel less ill.  
2 F – A couple of weeks is about 2 weeks.  
3 T  
4 F – If you don't sleep for a week, you feel weak.  
5 T  
6 T  
7 F – You should keep warm if you have flu.  
8 F – If you stay in bed, you don't get up.  
9 T  
10 T

- 5 1 stayed  
2 couple  
3 get better/improve  
4 advice  
5 tablets/pills  
6 should  
7 chemist's/pharmacy  
8 rest  
9 keep  
10 getting  
11 weak

Unit 32

- 1 1 hurts/hurt (present or past both possible)  
2 cut  
3 accident  
4 broken  
5 drugs  
6 injury  
7 pain  
8 cut  
9 serious



- 2 1 She had a pain in her arm.  
2 He had a serious injury.  
3 I hit my head on the door.  
4 I knocked my head on the wall.  
5 I burnt my mouth on the hot soup.  
6 She cut her foot on the broken glass.  
7 My arm hurts a lot.  
8 The doctor gave me some drugs for the pain.  
9 I broke / have broken a bone in my ankle.

- 3 1 broken  
2 drugs  
3 pain(s)  
4 your  
5 burnt/cut

4 possible answers:

- 1 I broke my arm when I was 10. I fell over at the swimming pool.  
2 No, I haven't.  
3 Sometimes, if I work at the computer for too long.  
4 Last week. I cut my finger when I was cutting vegetables.  
5 Yes, I often burn my hands and fingers in the kitchen, but nothing serious.

Unit 33

- 1 1 S 3 D 5 D 7 S  
2 D 4 S 6 D 8 D  
2 1 Yes 3 Yes 5 No 7 No  
2 No 4 No 6 Yes 8 No  
3 1 anywhere 5 nowhere  
2 nowhere 6 somewhere  
3 somewhere 7 anywhere  
4 everywhere 8 somewhere  
4 1 2,000  
2 the Sahara Desert  
3 two billion years old  
4 the Pacific Ocean  
5 Siberia, in Russia  
6 Yes, a few places.

Unit 34

- 1 1 government  
2 disaster  
3 environment  
4 disappear  
5 destroy  
2 1 increasing 4 build  
2 disappearing 5 destroying  
3 government 6 land  
3 1 increases 5 environment  
2 government 6 disappears  
3 disaster 7 destroy  
4 land 8 extreme

- 4 1 recycle 5 petrol  
2 energy 6 electricity  
3 gas 7 develop  
4 coal 8 cause

- 5 1 F – Pollution is a bad thing.  
2 T  
3 T  
4 T  
5 F – You can't see gas.  
6 T  
7 F – If you develop something, you make it.  
8 T  
9 F – Pollution is bad for fish and animals.  
10 T

- 6 1 f 2 d 3 g 4 a 5 c 6 b

7 possible answers:

- 1 We use gas and electricity.  
2 Electricity is more expensive – about double the cost of gas. I think coal is cheap, but people don't use it a lot now.  
3 Yes, it's very bad in the centre of the city.  
4 It's the buses, cars and lorries, and some industry too.  
5 Yes, I recycle bottles, paper, cardboard and plastic every week.

Unit 35

- 1 1 Chinese 5 Japanese  
2 Hungarian 6 Canadian  
3 German 7 Korean  
4 Italian 8 Egyptian  
2 1 T  
2 T  
3 F – They speak Thai.  
4 T  
5 F – They speak English.  
6 T  
7 T  
8 F – They speak French, Italian or German.  
3 1 Britain  
2 Europe  
3 Central/Latin  
4 continent  
5 South/Latin  
6 Africa/Asia  
7 the Middle East  
8 Asia  
9 continent  
4 1 Italy, C 9 Brazil, C  
2 Hungary, C 10 Turkey, C  
3 Mexico, C 11 Greek, N  
4 Swiss, N 12 French, N  
5 China, C 13 Germany, C  
6 Czech, N 14 Russia C  
7 Egypt, C 15 Argentinian, N  
8 Spanish, N 16 Portugal, C

- 5 1 Poland 7 Korean  
2 Brazilian 8 Turkish  
3 Russia 9 Italian  
4 Russian 10 Chinese  
5 Polish 11 Spain  
6 Japanese 12 Australian
- 6 -ian: Argentinian, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Indian, Russian  
-ish: British, Polish, Spanish, Turkish  
-an: American, German, Korean, Mexican  
-ese: Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese

7 your own answers

### Unit 36

- 1 1 river 7 Ocean, east  
2 mountain 8 major  
3 coast 9 north  
4 high 10 enormous  
5 long 11 popular  
6 border
- 2 1 famous 5 ocean  
2 huge 6 long; long  
3 west 7 beach  
4 north 8 popular
- 3 possible answers about Britain (England, Scotland and Wales):  
1 London, in the south of England/Britain.  
2 Manchester, Liverpool, Birmingham, Edinburgh, Glasgow and Cardiff.  
3 No.  
4 The River Severn, in south-west England (290 kilometres).  
5 Ben Nevis, in Scotland.  
6 Trafalgar Square, Buckingham Palace, The Tower of London, Edinburgh Castle, The Lake District, Stonehenge, etc.
- 4 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S
- 5 SIZE: a small village, a large city, a small town  
LOCATION: on the coast, south-west of the capital, on the River Duero  
POPULATION: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000  
INTERESTING FACTS: famous for its modern buildings, mobile phone industry, a warm climate, city full of culture
- 6 1 of 5 population  
2 in 6 industry  
3 of 7 ancient  
4 on 8 climate

7 possible answer:

Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England. It's on the River Avon. It has a population of just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist city in England, with lots of ancient buildings, including the Roman Baths and many museums. It is cool and wet in winter and quite warm in summer.

### Unit 37

- 1 1 c 4 j 7 a  
2 i 5 b 8 f  
3 h 6 e 9 g
- 2 1 raining 5 weather  
2 sunny/bright 6 cloudy  
3 snows 7 icy  
4 windy 8 blowing
- 3 1 a bit 5 a bit  
2 a lot of 6 a lot  
3 a lot 7 a bit  
4 a bit of 8 a lot of
- 4 1 showers 4 minutes  
2 Suddenly 5 strong  
3 clear 6 changes
- 5 1 There was heavy rain last night.  
2 The weather in Spain is better than here.  
3 There was a shower in the afternoon.  
4 The weather changes every day.  
5 It's dry today.  
6 We had a storm.  
7 There are clear skies.  
8 It snows all the time in winter.
- 6 possible answers, from India:  
1 Not, really! We get some rain occasionally in spring.  
2 We get snowfall only in a few parts of the country, up in the hill stations.  
3 We have horrible hot and dusty summers!  
4 Yes, most parts of my country have dry winters, however it rains in the southern parts!  
5 No, we don't have heavy rains in spring unless they are hail storms.  
6 Yes, some parts of the country get strong winds and in fact dust storms in summers. Some parts get strong winds during monsoons!

### Unit 38

- 1 whale, elephant, bear, lion, sheep, monkey, cat, mouse, fly
- 2 PETS: dog, cat  
FARM ANIMALS: horse, pig, cow  
INSECTS: bee, fly  
WILD ANIMALS: elephant, tiger, lion, bear
- 3 1 most 5 hair  
2 lion 6 tiger  
3 whale 7 wild  
4 son
- 4 (Other answers may be possible.)  
1 people 6 mice  
2 horses/elephants 7 farms  
3 sea 8 zoo  
4 insects 9 wings  
5 fly



- 5 1 pets 5 insect  
2 farmer; farm 6 zoo  
3 wild 7 wings  
4 both 8 both

- 6 1 **four legs:** lion, tiger, elephant, horse, sheep, cow, pig, cat, dog, mouse, bear (but some people say 2)  
2 **two legs:** bird, monkey, bear (but some people say 4)  
3 **six legs:** bee, fly  
4 **no legs:** snake, whale

7 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:

- 1 Yes, I have a cat.  
2 Yes, in the zoo, and also in a forest.  
3 I'm afraid of spiders.  
4 Cows, pigs, sheep, hens and goats.  
5 Probably. I like going to zoos.  
6 No.

### Unit 39

- 1 1 taught 8 drove  
2 put 9 spoke  
3 let 10 held  
4 brought 11 spelt/spelled  
5 bought 12 rang  
6 sang 13 sat  
7 spent 14 burnt

- 2 1 swam; began 4 sent; built  
2 wrote; drove 5 put; cut  
3 bought; thought 6 got; fell

3 possible answers:

- 1 I swam a kilometre.  
2 He forgot my homework.  
3 She sent the letter to the lawyer.  
4 He lent me his bike.  
5 She put them in the cupboard.  
6 He fell on the stairs.  
7 She lost 100 euros.  
8 They ran three kilometres.

- 4 1 swam 7 cost  
2 caught 8 came/got  
3 rode; rode 9 rang  
4 cut/broke/burnt; hurt 10 bought  
5 drove 11 began  
6 wrote/sent 12 woke (up)

- 5 1 driven 5 spoken  
2 ridden 6 hit/hurt  
3 cut 7 broken  
4 won/lost/spent 8 fallen

possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I drove my brother's car last summer. I was quite scared.  
2 No, I haven't.  
3 Yes, I cut my hair very badly when I was a child.  
4 Yes, I have. I spent a large sum of money to buy a house.  
5 No, I haven't.  
6 No, I haven't.  
7 Yes, I have. I broke my arm last year.  
8 Yes, I have. I fell from a tree when I was six years old.

### Unit 40

- 1 1 She's got blue eyes.  
2 They've got a small dog.  
3 I haven't got a smartphone.  
4 He hasn't got any money.  
5 Have you got any sisters?  
6 Has she got a flat in town?  
7 They haven't got a shop now.  
8 Have they got a big office?

- 2 1 Has she got any children?  
2 They've got a lovely garden.  
3 Has she got long hair?  
4 My sister hasn't got/doesn't have a boyfriend.  
5 Have you got a computer?/Do you have a computer?  
6 We haven't got any friends here./We don't have any friends here.

- 3 1 got 4 Do  
2 Do 5 Have  
3 Have 6 Do

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.  
2 Yes, I do. It's an Apple.  
3 Yes, they have. His name's Barney.  
4 No, they don't.  
5 Yes, I've got the *Oxford Essential Dictionary*.  
6 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

5	GROUP 1	GROUP 2	GROUP 3	GROUP 4	GROUP 5
	rest	breakfast	bath	swim	holiday
	break	lunch	shower	run	weekend
		dinner	wash	walk	journey

- 6 1 walk/look 4 swim  
2 drink 5 rest  
3 dinner 6 journey  
7 1 eat 5 time/day  
2 walk/run 6 weekend  
3 break 7 holiday/time  
4 look/walk 8 bath

## Unit 41

- 1 1 What does his wife do?  
2 His company makes software programs./  
His software company makes programs.  
3 Why does English make you tired?  
4 I want to do Spanish at school next year./  
Next year I want to do Spanish at school.  
5 Is this jumper made of wool?  
6 What did you do last night?
- 2 1 made 5 made  
2 do 6 made  
3 do 7 do  
4 makes 8 make
- 3 possible answers:  
1 Cars and pianos are made in the UK.  
2 I make little bags for friends.  
3 Music makes me cry, and sometimes films as well.  
4 I did maths, English, French, German, History, Geography, Chemistry, Physics, Biology and PE.  
5 I'll probably watch TV after dinner.  
6 I went shopping, saw an exhibition at an art gallery, and had dinner in a restaurant with friends.
- 4 your own answers
- 5 1 done 5 did  
2 do 6 made  
3 make 7 make  
4 made 8 make
- 6 1 e 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 c
- 7 1 make 5 do  
2 make 6 make  
3 make 7 do  
4 do
- 8 possible answers:  
1 Yes, always.  
2 Yes, usually when I'm speaking.  
3 No, they're very quiet.  
4 Not a lot.  
5 Yes, very often.  
6 No, not really, but I don't want to be poor.  
7 No, not always. It depends how important something is.

## Unit 42

- 1 1 Did you get my message?  
2 He gets angry if you're late.  
3 We got home late last night.  
4 It's getting cold.  
5 I got three letters today.  
6 Where did you get that bag?  
7 He needs to get a job.  
8 Do you want to get a/the train?

- 2 1 receive 5 receive  
2 become 6 buy  
3 arrive 7 be given  
4 become 8 travel

### 3 possible answers:

- 1 getting cold
- 2 get here/home/back
- 3 get them
- 4 get a/the bus
- 5 get one
- 6 get it.
- 7 getting late.
- 8 get a bus/taxi
- 9 got a good mark/grade
- 10 get every day/week

### 4 possible answers:

- 1 I get the bus every day.
- 2 It doesn't get very cold in my country.
- 3 I get around/about 10 texts every day.
- 4 I got a new skirt.
- 5 You can get information about my town from the internet.

## Unit 43

- 1 1 1 3 4 5 5 7 4  
2 2 4 3 6 1 8 5
- 2 1 see 5 watch  
2 watch 6 see  
3 see/watch 7 saw  
4 see 8 saw/watched
- 3 1 see 5 see  
2 watch 6 see  
3 see/watch 7 see  
4 saw/watched

### 4 possible answers:

- 1 No, I can't see very well without glasses because my eyes are bad. When I'm driving, I have to wear them.
- 2 Yes, I watch him often – it's lovely to watch him.
- 3 I always watch the news and sports.
- 4 I saw a programme yesterday about Iran – it was very interesting.
- 5 I see her every week.
- 6 I see them every day.
- 7 Yes, it's difficult because it has a lot of meanings.

## Unit 44

- 1 1 control 4 cause  
2 promise 5 copy  
3 over
- 2 1 H 2 M 3 H 4 Hand M 5 H 6 M
- 3 1 cost 6 surprise  
2 fighting 7 smell  
3 control 8 dreaming  
4 promised 9 caused  
5 chat 10 sleep



- 4 1 I had a dream about you.
- 2 Did he make a comment on the report?
- 3 She made a promise to help me.
- 4 Does this soap have a nice smell?
- 5 They gave him a surprise.
- 6 I must send/write a reply to Jilly's letter. / I must send/write Jilly a reply.
- 7 Did you give Mo a call?
- 8 I had a look at her newspaper.
- 9 Could you make a copy of this?
- 10 He gave me a smile this morning.

5 possible answers:

- 1 I sometimes dream about people in my family who I don't see very often. It's strange.
- 2 Travelling by train costs a lot of money in the UK.
- 3 Some cheese has a very strong smell. And my dog has a strong smell too, but I don't mind it!
- 4 The fact that people are extremely rich or extremely poor causes a lot of problems.
- 5 It surprises me that people have such different ideas about politics.
- 6 The world can't control the internet. It's very good in some ways, but dangerous in others.

### Unit 45

- 1 1 ✓
  - 2 ✓
  - 3 butter/some butter
  - 4 ✓
  - 5 bread/some bread
  - 6 ✓
  - 7 olive oil/some olive oil
  - 8 rice/some rice
  - 9 jam/some jam
  - 10 ✓
  - 11 cheese/some cheese/a piece of cheese
- 2 1 pasta 5 pasta
  - 2 cheese 6 chocolates
  - 3 cake 7 Butter
  - 4 rice 8 biscuits

3 your own answers

- 4 1 a 3 b 5 e
- 2 g 4 c 6 f

- 5 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
- 2 Do you need a bag?
- 3 Have you got any French cheese?
- 4 How much pasta do you need?
- 5 That's just over half a kilo.
- 6 How many oranges do you need?

- 6 1 got; many
- 2 have; much; grams; all
- 3 Could/Can; just; That's;
- 4 ready; need

### Unit 46

- 1 grapes, lemon, nuts, strawberries, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple
- 2 1 oranges
- 2 lemons
- 3 peaches
- 4 pineapples
- 5 bananas
- 6 nuts
- 3 1 Bananas
- 2 Oranges
- 3 Pineapples
- 4 Nuts
- 5 Sweet
- 6 Grapes
- 7 Strawberries
- 8 Peaches
- 9 Fruit

4 your own answers

- 5 1 peas 7 beans
- 2 onion 8 cucumber
- 3 pepper 9 mushroom
- 4 potato 10 tomato
- 5 cabbage 11 garlic
- 6 lettuce 12 carrot
- 6 1 T 6 T
- 2 T 7 T
- 3 F 8 F
- 4 T 9 F
- 5 F 10 T

7 possible answers (for Britain):

**cabbage:** Yes, but not much.

**mushrooms:** Yes, a lot.

**red peppers:** Yes, but not much.

**fresh tomatoes:** Yes, a lot.

**frozen peas:** Yes, a lot.

**cooked onions:** Yes, a lot.

**fresh cucumber:** Yes, a lot.

**lettuce:** Yes, a lot.

**frozen carrots:** Yes, but not much.

**beans:** Yes, a lot.

**cold potatoes:** Yes, but not much.

**garlic:** Yes, but not much.

### Unit 47

- 1 1 F – They don't eat meat or fish.
- 2 T
- 3 F – It's a type of bird.
- 4 F – You get bacon from pigs.
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 F – Squid is a type of seafood.
- 8 F – Pig is an animal.
- 9 T
- 10 F – You get ham from pigs.

- 2 1 beef 6 squid  
2 ham 7 bacon  
3 tuna 8 sausages  
4 duck 9 pork  
5 crab 10 prawns
- 3 1 Pork, because it's a type of meat, not an animal.  
2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.  
3 Tuna, because it's a fish, not a type of meat.  
4 Vegetarian, because it's not a type of meat, fish or seafood.  
5 Cow, because it's an animal, not a type of meat.  
6 Salmon, because it's a fish.
- 4 possible answers:  
1 I like beef but it's expensive so I don't eat it very often.  
2 I don't eat squid. It's very difficult to buy where I live.  
3 I eat a lot of salmon.  
4 I don't like crab so I don't eat it.  
5 I like tuna.  
6 I eat prawns, often with pasta.  
7 I don't like duck – I prefer to see ducks swimming.  
8 I like lamb.

#### Unit 48

- 1 1 3 3 6 5 3 7 1  
2 3 4 6 6 2 8 3

- 2 1 fork 10 white  
2 spoon 11 bottle  
3 plate 12 beer  
4 bowl 13 salt  
5 bottle 14 black pepper  
6 fizzy water 15 bottles  
7 glasses 16 oil  
8 wine 17 vinegar  
9 red

- 3 possible answers, from China:  
On restaurant tables in my country we usually have chopsticks, bowls, spoons, cups or glasses, and a pot of tea or a bottle of water. We have dishes for food. We sometimes have plates, napkins, and pepper, too.

We don't usually have knives, forks, salt, vinegar, white wine, red wine, beer, or fizzy water.

We never have oil on the table.

#### Unit 49

- 1 1 It's boiled rice.  
2 The potatoes are fried.  
3 A cheese sauce.  
4 The first course was salad.  
5 Did you have ice cream?  
6 There was fruit for dessert.  
7 I had tomato soup.  
8 How was the apple pie?

- 2 1 F – You eat ice cream with a spoon.  
2 T  
3 T  
4 F – You eat soup in chips in different bowls.  
5 T  
6 T  
7 F – People don't have cream on pizza.  
8 T  
9 T  
10 F – Apple pie is a dessert.

- 3 1 sauce 5 course  
2 pie 6 cream  
3 fried 7 boiled  
4 soup

- 4 possible answer:  
I'd like the soup for the starter, and then duck with orange sauce and boiled potatoes for the main course. Then for the dessert, I'd like apple pie with cream.

- 5 1 some more 7 of course  
2 to order 8 the  
3 another 9 I'll  
4 meal 10 certainly  
5 all right 11 waiter  
6 tuna instead 12 without

- 6 1 have  
2 without  
3 course  
4 or still  
5 some  
6 Certainly/Sure/Of course  
7 'll  
8 bill  
9 sure/certainly/of course

#### Unit 50

- 1 crisps / snack / cheese sandwich / cake / toasted sandwich  
tea with lemon / drink / black coffee / a fizzy drink / orange juice
- 2 1 F – Ice is frozen water.  
2 T  
3 T  
4 F – Hot chocolate is a drink.  
5 T  
6 T  
7 F – You can have a drink or a snack in a café.  
8 T  
9 F – Crisps are not sweet.  
10 T

- 3 1 bread 7 fizzy/alcoholic/hot  
2 sandwich 8 pub  
3 chocolate 9 white  
4 ice 10 black  
5 coffee/tea 11 juice  
6 drink(s) 12 tea/coffee



#### 4 your own answers

- 5 1 S 3 D 5 S 7 S 9 D  
2 S 4 S 6 D 8 D 10 S
- 6 B I'd like two toasted ham sandwiches, please.  
A Is that to have here or take away?  
B To have here, please.  
A Is that everything?  
B Can I get two teas, please?  
A It will be a couple of minutes.  
Please take a seat.
- 7 1 Can I **have/get** a tea with lemon, please?  
2 To **drink** here or **take** away?  
3 To **drink/have** here.  
4 Would you **like** brown bread?  
5 Yes, **please**.  
6 OK, anything **else**?  
7 **No**, thanks.  
8 Fine. It will be a couple of minutes.  
9 **Take/Have** a seat, please.

#### Unit 51

- 1 1 to 5 ride  
2 car 6 both are correct  
3 both are correct 7 both are correct  
4 on 8 coach
- 2 1 rides 5 motorbike  
2 coach 6 foot  
3 lorries/trucks 7 vehicles  
4 underground/car/train 8 vans/a van
- 3 possible answers:  
1 Yes, I can. I learnt to drive when I was 17.  
2 When I was about 7 or 8, I think.  
3 I usually go by bus, but I can also get a train. I can't walk – it's too far.  
4 No, I can't and I wouldn't like to.  
5 Yes, it's excellent. It's not expensive and it's very clean and safe.  
6 Yes, I sometimes go by coach, for example if I'm going to a football match.
- 4 1 traffic 5 speed limit  
2 rush hour 6 a quiet road  
3 main road 7 motorway  
4 miles per hour
- 5 1 busy; hour  
2 main  
3 far  
4 get; unfortunately  
5 journey

#### 7 possible answers for a driver in Britain:

- 1 Yes. Sometimes there's too much traffic, but often there are accidents or bad weather.  
2 70 miles an hour.  
3 Not very often. I prefer smaller, slower roads.  
4 Yes, we do.  
5 7.30 a.m. – 9.30 a.m. and again between 4.30 p.m. and 6.30 p.m.  
6 I went to Brighton by car a few weeks ago. It's about 130 miles. Unfortunately, there was a lot of traffic and the roads were very busy, so it took about four hours.

#### Unit 52

- 1 get off the bus; How long does it take?; the next stop; It doesn't take long; Excuse me.
- 2 1 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?  
2 Where do I get off for the cinema?  
3 Does the 24 go to the park?  
4 How often does the 24 run?  
5 Which is the last stop for the 16?  
6 How many stops is it to the railway station?  
7 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?  
8 How long does it take to the railway station?
- 3 1 Yes, it does. 5 The railway station.  
2 At the next stop. 6 Five.  
3 No, it doesn't. 7 The 16 or the 24.  
4 Every ten minutes. 8 Fifteen minutes.
- 4 1 routes 7 timetable  
2 stop 8 run  
3 next 9 every  
4 last 10 takes  
5 get off 11 outside  
6 goes 12 long
- 5 possible answers:  
1 Yes, at the end of the road.  
2 The 9 and the 15.  
3 The town centre or the airport.  
4 One runs every 15 minutes, the other every half hour.  
5 Sometimes to the town centre, but I don't get the bus very often.  
6 About six.  
7 About twenty minutes.

#### Unit 53

- 1 1 a fast train  
2 get off the train  
3 the (train) fare  
4 the 7 o'clock train  
5 a seat  
6 at a railway station/train station  
7 the timetable  
8 a carriage

- 2 1 fare 7 waited  
2 coach/carriage 8 timetable  
3 missed 9 for  
4 get/take 10 slow  
5 last 11 journey  
6 get on
- 3 1 seat 6 London  
2 change 7 office  
3 return 8 train  
4 direct 9 there  
5 passengers
- 4 1 change 6 to  
2 leaves 7 single  
3 platform 8 return  
4 gets 9 book/reserve  
5 take/get
- 5 possible answers:  
1 Last Thursday.  
2 A return.  
3 I went to Oxford for a meeting.  
4 It was £10.50.  
5 No, I didn't have time.  
6 I had to change at Didcot.

#### Unit 54

- 1 1 The bookshop is opposite of the hotel.  
2 Go straight on and keep ~~to~~ going.  
3 Is there a cinema near ~~from~~ here?  
4 It's on your left ~~side~~.  
5 Turn ~~to~~ left and go straight on.  
6 It's the third ~~road~~ turning on the right. (also possible: It's the third road ~~turning~~ on the right.)  
7 Where's the ~~most~~ nearest post office?
- 2 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 D
- 3 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the museum?  
2 Go along here and turn left.  
3 Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?  
4 It's the third turning on the right.  
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the station?  
6 Cross the road at the traffic lights.
- 4 1 turning 6 going  
2 much 7 on  
3 left/right/corner 8 here  
4 me 9 way  
5 road/river 10 lights
- 5 Conversation 1  
1 get 3 turning 5 much  
2 straight 4 left 6 problem
- Conversation 2  
1 Excuse 4 take 7 opposite  
2 near 5 turning 8 thanks  
3 along 6 right 9 That's

#### 6 possible answers:

- 1 Go straight on, then turn left into Frith Street, and the hotel is on the next corner on your right.  
2 Go straight on, then turn left into Frith Street. Take the first turning on the right and keep going. The museum is on your left.  
3 Yes, go straight on, and take first turning on your right/turn right. The post office is on the corner.

#### Unit 55

- 1 1 f 4 b 7 d  
2 h 5 i 8 a  
3 j 6 e 9 c
- 2 1 in a road 5 on a drinks machine  
2 in a restaurant 6 in a hotel window  
3 in a school 7 near the sea  
4 in a shop window 8 in a bank
- 3 1 signs/notices 6 gap  
2 notice/sign 7 closed/shut; open  
3 sale 8 feed  
4 allowed 9 Mind  
5 let 10 toilets
- 4 1 no parking  
2 entrance/no exit  
3 no smoking  
4 keep off the grass  
5 out of order  
6 please do not feed the animals  
7 allowed  
8 queue here  
9 danger  
10 keep right
- 5 NO exit  
PLEASE queue here  
MIND the gap, your head  
KEEP right/left

#### Unit 56

- 1 1 S 4 D 7 S  
2 D 5 S 8 D  
3 D 6 D 9 S
- 2 1 art gallery, museum, palace, church and a castle  
2 market  
3 library  
4 museum, palace, castle, art gallery and church  
5 park  
6 tower  
7 post office  
8 bridge  
9 church (or castle or palace)  
10 buildings  
11 places



**3 possible answers:**

- 1 False. No, there are three or four.
- 2 Yes, there is. I go there about once a month.
- 3 Yes, we have both.
- 4 Yes, there are two big parks and several small ones.
- 5 Most of them are.
- 6 False. No, there's a market every Saturday.
- 7 Yes, there is.
- 8 False. No, it's a lovely place to live.

- 4**
- |           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1 noisy   | 5 safe      |
| 2 lots    | 6 dirty     |
| 3 view    | 7 There's   |
| 4 opinion | 8 pollution |

**5 Yes: 2, 3, 6, 7**

**No: 1, 4, 5, 8**

- 6**
- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 opinion      | 5 crowds    |
| 2 dangerous    | 6 clean     |
| 3 do           | 7 pollution |
| 4 busy/crowded | 8 quiet     |

**Unit 57**

**1 own, produce, grow**

**2 1 F – There are cows in the field.**

- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 T
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 T

**8 F – There aren't a lot of trees near the farmer.**

**9 F – The farmer grows fruit and keeps cows.**

**10 F – The lake isn't in the valley.**

- 3**
- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 valley; hill | 5 fields        |
| 2 lake         | 6 own           |
| 3 grass        | 7 farming       |
| 4 gate         | 8 grow; produce |

**4 possible answers:**

- 1 I live on a hill.
- 2 No, there isn't, but there's a river near my home.
- 3 Yes, in my garden.
- 4 Yes, I can, at the end of the garden.
- 5 Yes, there are some on the hill.
- 6 I own two dogs.
- 7 Yes, it is.
- 8 Farmers produce a lot of milk and cheese. They also grow vegetables and wheat.

**5 1 a 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 c 6 d**

- 6**
- |         |            |
|---------|------------|
| 1 water | 5 natural  |
| 2 Fresh | 6 creative |
| 3 area  | 7 pick     |
| 4 earth | 8 nature   |

**7 possible answers:**

- 1 Yes, I often do in the summer.
- 2 Yes. I grow strawberries and raspberries, and I pick them from June to September.
- 3 Yes, I grow a lot of plants outside, but nothing inside.
- 4 Fresh air is really important. I like to see wild flowers in the countryside. The beauty of nature makes me feel happier. I like to see areas with plants in town; it brings more colour to the streets.

**Unit 58**

- 1**
- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 1 Anna and Rob     | 8 the second floor                               |
| 2 on the top floor | 9 on the first floor                             |
| 3 Lucy             | 10 the lift; the stairs                          |
| 4 on the top floor | 11 You put the key in the lock to open the door. |
| 5 the roof         |  |
| 6 8                |  |
| 7 front door       |  |

- 2**
- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1 lift         | 9 top floor      |
| 2 apartment    |                  |
| 3 ground floor | <b>3</b> 1 floor |
| 4 front door   | 2 ground         |
| 5 steps        | 3 neighbours     |
| 6 neighbour    | 4 lift; stairs   |
| 7 roof         | 5 steps          |
| 8 stairs       | 6 key            |

**4 possible answers:**

- 1 I live in an apartment on the second floor.
- 2 There's another flat and the person who looks after the building lives there.
- 3 An older lady called Dona Angeles is my neighbour, and a married couple live on the top floor.
- 4 It's got stairs, no lift.
- 5 No, there are no steps to the front door.
- 6 Yes, you have to open the door with a key.

**5 view / modern / living room / hall / kitchen / home / dining room / upstairs / bedroom / parking / bathroom**

- 6**
- |            |             |              |
|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 living   | 6 views     | 11 bedrooms  |
| 2 bathroom | 7 hall      | 12 bathrooms |
| 3 view     | 8 kitchen   | 13 parking   |
| 4 park     | 9 study     | 14 outside   |
| 5 outside  | 10 Upstairs | 15 inside    |

**7 possible answers:**

- 1 Most houses have two or three floors, but there are some very tall, old houses which have five floors.
- 2 Yes, they've got the same rooms, but in some houses there's an extra room for the washing machine.
- 3 A lot of houses in the modern part of the town have parking, but in the old part, parking is a big problem.

- 4 There are a lot of houses in the countryside, and just outside the centre of cities there are houses too.
- 5 Sometimes a very good garden makes a house a bit more expensive. A view of the sea will often make a house more expensive too.

### Unit 59

- 1 1 S 3 S 5 D 7 S  
2 D 4 D 6 S

- 2 1 washing machine 8 turn the oven;  
2 dishwasher; sink on/off  
3 cupboard 9 rubbish  
4 bin 10 empty  
5 oven 11 tap  
6 fridge 12 equipment  
7 full 13 cooker

3 possible answers:

We've got lots of cupboards, a sink and taps, an oven, a fridge, a washing machine, a bin, and a lot of kitchen equipment.  
We haven't got a dishwasher.

- 4 1 prepare 4 clean  
2 homework 5 look after  
3 do 6 have to
- 5 1 feed 5 do the housework  
2 do the washing 6 did my homework  
3 task 7 look after  
4 washing up 8 have to

6 possible answers:

In my home, my husband and I both do some housework.  
He does the washing up.  
I do the washing.  
He cooks the dinner.  
I clean the kitchen.  
I do the ironing.  
We probably both do the same number of everyday tasks because we both have full-time jobs – and also, he's better at cooking than I am.

### Unit 60

- 1 GROUP A: table, seat, suitcase, sheet  
GROUP B: match, picture, furniture, nature, Portuguese  
GROUP C: international, dictionary

- 2 1 f 3 h 5 g 7 c  
2 i 4 a 6 b 8 e
- 3 1 wardrobe 7 pieces of furniture  
2 sheets 8 wooden  
3 wall 9 table  
4 suitcase 10 national  
5 lamp 11 international  
6 space 12 a few

4 possible answer:

I'm Lucy, and I live at home with my family. There's a bed with sheets, a table and a lamp on it. I've got a wardrobe in a corner of the room and a comfortable chair to sit on. I've got lots of pictures of my family and friends on the wall. I've got a suitcase on top of the wardrobe. The furniture is all wooden and it's a really nice room.

- 5 1 do; a brush 5 washbasin  
2 have 6 towel; have  
3 puts on 7 bath  
4 shave 8 brush; mirror
- 6 1 bath 7 put on  
2 towel 8 teeth  
3 mirror 9 wash  
4 hair 10 brush  
5 clean/brush 11 shave  
6 mirror/washbasin 12 razor

- 7 1 teeth  
2 hair  
3 mirror  
4 brush  
5 make-up; put ...on  
6 have; razor; electric razor

8 possible answers:

- 1 I brush them after breakfast.  
2 Twice a day.  
3 Lots of times!  
4 Yes, I do.  
5 I only wear it sometimes.  
6 My husband shaves every morning with a razor.

### Unit 61

- 1 1 armchair 5 window 9 television  
2 carpet 6 fire 10 curtain  
3 floor 7 sofa 11 clock  
4 light 8 shelf 12 telephone

- 2 1 F – There are two windows.  
2 T  
3 T  
4 T  
5 T  
6 T  
7 T  
8 F – There are two corners.  
9 T  
10 F – There are four curtains.  
11 T  
12 T  
13 F – There are two shelves.  
14 T

- 3 1 phone/telephone 7 light  
2 sofa; armchair 8 shelf  
3 curtains 9 carpet  
4 clock 10 corner  
5 fan 11 window  
6 fire



4 possible answers:

- 1 I've got a sofa, an armchair and a small table in my living room.
- 2 I've got a TV.
- 3 I've got a carpet on the floor and a telephone on a shelf.

Unit 62

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1 1 uncertain | 5 unnecessary |
| 2 unlucky     | 6 unhealthy   |
| 3 irregular   | 7 correct     |
| 4 correct     | 8 impolite    |
- 
- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| 2 1 polite | 5 unnecessary |
| 2 informal | 6 impolite    |
| 3 regular  | 7 uncertain   |
| 4 lucky    | 8 unhealthy   |
- 
- |             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| 3 1 polite  | 5 uncertain/unsure |
| 2 Irregular | 6 unhealthy        |
| 3 informal  | 7 rude             |
| 4 unlucky   | 8 unnecessary      |

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, my neighbours are all lovely.
- 2 That's true.
- 3 Yes, most of them are interesting.
- 4 No, I'm usually lucky – the weather is good.
- 5 That's true.
- 6 That's true.
- 7 That's true, but I sometimes text people when I'm having a meal.
- 8 That's probably true, but I like to have a shower every day.

Unit 63

- |        |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 1 No | 3 No  | 5 Yes | 7 Yes | 9 No  |
| 2 Yes  | 4 Yes | 6 No  | 8 Yes | 10 No |
- 
- |            |         |
|------------|---------|
| 2 1 strong | 5 wide  |
| 2 awake    | 6 alive |
| 3 poor     | 7 light |
| 4 low      |         |
- 
- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 3 1 hard | 6 light  |
| 2 weak   | 7 narrow |
| 3 rich   | 8 asleep |
| 4 dead   | 9 poor   |
| 5 high   | 10 soft  |
- 
- 4 Words that are ticked: useless, common, different, general, media, useful, similar  
Other words: specific, unusual, tradition
- 
- 5 1 T  
2 T  
3 F – A traditional building is not modern in style.  
4 F – An unusual event doesn't happen a lot.  
5 T  
6 F – A useless thing won't help you.  
7 T  
8 F – A lazy person doesn't work hard.  
9 F – It's usually light in the middle of the day.  
10 T

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 6 1 general | 5 traditional |
| 2 useful    | 6 hardworking |
| 3 light     | 7 useless     |
| 4 unusual   |               |

7 possible answers:

It's unusual for me to get colds and flu.  
I prefer modern houses.  
I prefer a dark room.  
We enjoy similar things.  
I think social media is both positive and negative.  
I don't like specific holiday plans.  
Sometimes it's useful to know about history.  
They think I'm quite hardworking.

Unit 64

- |              |         |
|--------------|---------|
| 1 1 only     | 4 only  |
| 2 still      | 5 even  |
| 3 especially | 6 still |
- 
- 2 1 He's 75 and he **still** plays tennis.  
2 It's nice there, **especially** in the morning.  
3 There are **only** three students in the class.  
4 He **even** works on Sundays./He works, **even** on Sundays.  
5 She's **still** at university.  
6 Rio is big, but Sao Paolo is even bigger.
- 
- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 3 1 Only     | 5 Even       |
| 2 still      | 6 especially |
| 3 especially | 7 still      |
| 4 only       | 8 even       |
- 
- 4 1 both answers are correct  
2 really  
3 both answers are correct  
4 really  
5 both answers are correct  
6 quite  
7 both answers are correct  
8 really
- 
- 5 1 extremely/really  
2 rather/pretty  
3 a bit  
4 very/really  
5 a little
- 
- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 6 quite/pretty  | 7 very/extremely |
| 8 rather/pretty |                  |
- 
- 6 possible answers:  
1 slow/unfriendly  
2 handsome/attractive/friendly/nice  
3 enjoyed it/hated it  
4 lonely/bored/unhappy  
5 interesting/good  
6 late  
7 friendly/nice  
8 lazy

### Unit 65

- 1 1 slowly 5 clearly 9 easily  
2 badly 6 happily 10 quietly  
3 angrily 7 well 11 correctly  
4 late 8 hard 12 fast

- 2 1 I write very clearly.  
2 My cousin sings well.  
3 My boss works hard.  
4 Lola drives carefully.  
5 Robina answered the questions correctly.  
6 Julio doesn't pronounce words clearly.  
7 Miriam did the exercise easily.  
8 Amina works very fast.  
9 My little boy reads slowly.  
10 She spoke to Sam angrily.
- 3 1 late 4 badly  
2 loudly 5 carefully  
3 clearly/slowly 6 hard
- 4 possible answers:  
1 I never arrive late; I always arrive at the right time.  
2 My father speaks very loudly.  
3 Yes, she does.  
4 I think I drive well.  
5 Yes, I have to think carefully.  
6 Sometimes I relax a little, but usually I work hard.

### Unit 66

- 1 1 D 3 S 5 S 7 S  
2 S 4 D 6 D
- 2 1 PE/physical education 8 computer science  
2 literature 9 biology  
3 history 10 design and technology  
4 geography 11 physics  
5 art 12 arts subjects  
6 languages 13 science subjects  
7 chemistry
- 3 possible answers:  
1 I was good at English literature.  
2 I was quite good at geography.  
3 I was bad/terrible at maths.  
4 I didn't study biology, physics or chemistry after the age of 15.  
5 The subject I liked most was English literature.  
6 The subject I hated most was physics.

### Unit 67

- 1 2 g 4 e 6 f  
3 b 5 a 7 d
- 2 1 leave 4 options  
2 get/find 5 either  
3 carry on/continue/stay 6 or  
7 training

- 3 1 uniform 4 carry on/continue/  
2 leave stay  
3 get; training 5 at

- 4 possible answers, from Kenya:  
0 Children in Kenya start school when they are between 5 and 7.  
1 Yes, the children usually wear a uniform.  
2 They can leave school at the age of 18.  
3 At this age, they do more training at university or at a college.  
4 Yes, they stay in school since they will not have completed high school education until they complete Form Four at the age of 18.  
5 They can go to university or a college to get training for their future career or a particular job, for example working as a doctor.

- 5 1 no 4 A (for biology)  
2 five 5 E (for maths)  
3 two 6 Grade C (a pass)

- 6 1 take/do 4 results  
2 do 5 badly; failed  
3 well; grade/mark 6 worst

- 7 possible answers:  
1 Most of my lessons were 50 minutes.  
2 Yes, quite hard.  
3 I took important exams at 16 and 18.  
4 I took nine exams when I was 16, and four exams when I was 18.  
5 Yes, fortunately I did.  
6 Biology is my best subject.

### Unit 68

- 1 1 do 6 do  
2 term 7 Unfortunately  
3 write 8 After  
4 last 9 takes  
5 library

- 2 1 degree; in 5 essay; took  
2 research 6 last  
3 fortunately 7 bookshop  
4 again 8 unfortunately

- 3 possible answers, from Mexico:  
1 Here in Mexico, the course lasts five years.  
2 Unfortunately, only 16%.  
3 Unfortunately, most students don't do that.  
4 Between four or five months.  
5 It is not always possible.

- 4 1 S 3 S 5 S 7 D  
2 D 4 D 6 S

- 5 1 doctor 5 lecturer  
2 engineer 6 designer  
3 architect 7 journalist  
4 lawyer 8 businessman



- 6 1 professor  
2 law  
3 manager  
4 journalist  
5 lectures
- 6 business  
7 reporter  
8 engineering  
9 science  
10 businesswoman

7 your own answers

### Unit 69

- 1 1 job  
2 shop assistant  
3 nurse  
4 long  
5 clothes  
6 hasn't
- 7 employee  
8 boss  
9 dentist  
10 Models  
11 builder  
12 in the police
- 2 1 D 3 S 5 D 7 S  
2 S 4 D 6 S
- 3 1 a pilot, a dentist, a teacher  
2 a dentist, a nurse, a fashion designer, a hairdresser, a builder, a chef, a soldier  
3 a pilot, a teacher (a maths teacher), a businessman/woman, a builder  
4 unemployed  
5 a nurse, a soldier, a police officer/policeman/policewoman, a pilot, a chef, a dentist  
6 a secretary, a cleaner, a businessman/businesswoman
- 4 1 secretary 5 a fashion designer  
2 a pilot 6 a model  
3 a hairdresser 7 a teacher  
4 the boss 8 a chef
- 5 possible answers:  
1 My friend Lucia is a secretary.  
2 Carlo is a chef at the pizzeria.  
3 Christelle is my hairdresser.  
4 My friend Marissa is a teacher.  
5 I don't know anyone who is a taxi driver.  
6 Mr Ranelli is my dentist.  
7 My mum is a businesswoman.  
8 My uncle is the boss in a small factory.

### Unit 70

- 1 1 long hours  
2 a factory  
3 an office  
4 work for  
5 does he earn
- 6 hours a day  
7 an American airline  
8 earn much  
9 a year  
10 ten to six
- 2 1 hospital; in  
2 company; salary; a  
3 long; from; to  
4 earn  
5 in; army
- 6 for; airline  
7 advertising  
8 manages; manager
- 3 possible answers:  
1 I'm a reporter.  
2 I work for a local newspaper.  
3 I work in an office, but I go out and talk to people.  
4 I work long hours, often 10 or 12 hours a day.  
5 No, we don't earn very much.

- 4 1 e 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 d

- 5 1 We discussed our problems.  
2 I have a meeting this afternoon.  
3 She spends a lot of time travelling.  
4 Could you organize the meeting?  
5 My job involves using a computer.  
6 I met her for the first time last week.

- 6 1 clients  
2 discuss  
3 project  
4 designing  
5 involves
- 6 organize  
7 send  
8 reports  
9 colleagues  
10 spend

### Unit 71

- 1 She offered me the job. 7  
I went for an interview. 5  
I posted it. 4  
I decided to apply. 2  
I saw an advertisement for a job.  
I accepted the job. 8  
I filled in the form. 3  
The interviewer asked me questions. 6
- 2 1 offered  
2 post  
3 interview  
4 fill  
5 training  
6 applying  
7 experience  
8 accept  
9 advertisement/advert/ad  
10 interviewer
- 3 possible answers:  
1 I've applied for two jobs: a teaching job and a job in advertising.  
2 I had interviews for both jobs.  
3 My training for the teaching job was a one-year teacher training course.  
4 I filled in a form for my interview.  
5 I'd like to work with young people, especially helping them with sports activities.

### Unit 72

- 1 1 Yes  
2 No  
3 Yes  
4 Yes (usually)
- 5 No  
6 Yes  
7 Yes  
8 No
- 2 1 He's at work today.  
2 This is such a good book.  
3 Stand up when she enters the room.  
4 The film was so long.  
5 She's part of a small group.  
6 This is such a difficult job.
- 3 1 worries  
2 whole  
3 so  
4 enter
- 5 such  
6 charities; parts  
7 support  
8 amazing/incredible

**4 possible answers:**

- 1 It was quite good and I enjoyed the work.
- 2 Yes, I was worried about arriving on time and wearing the right clothes.
- 3 Yes, they were very friendly and the boss was amazing.
- 4 Yes, there were three of us and we all worked and had lunch together.

**Unit 73**

- |              |          |           |
|--------------|----------|-----------|
| 1 1 keyboard | 4 menu   | 7 screen  |
| 2 window     | 5 tablet | 8 printer |
| 3 laptop     | 6 mouse  | 9 program |
- 
- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 2 1 laptop/tablet | 6 program         |
| 2 screen          | 7 document/window |
| 3 menu            | 8 mouse           |
| 4 printer         | 9 keep            |
| 5 tablet          |                   |

**3 possible answers:**

- 1 No, I haven't. I've got an Apple Mac.
- 2 Yes, I've got a printer and I use it nearly every day.
- 3 I haven't got a laptop, but I've got a tablet and I keep it in the kitchen.
- 4 Yes, I've got thousands. They're mostly of friends and family.
- 5 I prefer a PC because it has a bigger screen and keyboard.

**4 save, move, type, remove, replace, close**

**5 h, e, d, c, f, a, b, g (also possible: h, e, f, d, c, b, a, g)**

- |              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 6 1 lines    | 6 save          |
| 2 careful    | 7 replace; with |
| 3 copies     | 8 cut           |
| 4 file       | 9 types         |
| 5 print/make | 10 closed       |

**Unit 74**

- 1 1 reply
  - 2 the internet
  - 3 document
  - 4 a reply
  - 6 the internet
- 
- 2 1 Did you get/receive ...
  - 2 The letter got lost ...
  - 3 Have you replied to ...
  - 4 ... not on the internet
  - 5 ... jamie at gmail dot com
  - 6 Could you email/send/post ...
  - 7 I need to check ...
  - 8 ... send it by post/email
  - 9 ... sue 1 at gmail dot com

- |          |               |            |
|----------|---------------|------------|
| 3 A      | B             | C          |
| 1 sent   | 4 receive/get | 6 reply    |
| 2 letter | 5 reply       | 7 on       |
| 3 lost   |               | 8 internet |

**4 website, virus, recognize, online**

- |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 5 1 S | 3 D | 5 D | 7 D |
| 2 S   | 4 D | 6 D | 8 S |
- 
- |             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| 6 1 videos  | 5 virus            |
| 2 passwords | 6 search           |
| 3 blog      | 7 click; recognize |
| 4 websites  | 8 contains         |

**7 possible answers:**

- 1 Yes, I do, usually music videos.
- 2 No, never.
- 3 No, I haven't.
- 4 I use the BBC website, Wikipedia, and the Arsenal football website.
- 5 No, it hasn't.
- 6 Yes, a lot.
- 7 No, I don't because it's dangerous.
- 8 I don't open it. I delete it.

**Unit 75**

- |       |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 S | 3 S | 5 D | 7 S |
| 2 D   | 4 S | 6 S |     |
- 
- |                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 2 1 message; rang; answer | 5 phone; messaged |
| 2 number                  | 6 make            |
| 3 call; busy; phone       | 7 message         |
| 4 wrong                   | 8 mobile; double  |

**3 possible answers:**

- 1 Double three eight, nine seven four. Mobile: oh double seven double oh, nine double oh, six, eight four
- 2 My mother and my sister.
- 3 Yes, I do. I message my friends all the time.
- 4 Hello?
- 5 No, not very often.

**4 correct answers:**

- 1 Oh, hello, is that Jackie?
- 2 Just a moment ...
- 3 Speaking.
- 4 Oh hello, how are you?
- 5 I'm sorry, he's out.
- 6 OK, I'll call back later.
- 7 Yes, bye.

**5 Conversation 1**

- 1 speaking
- 2 This is
- 3 in/there
- 4 please
- 5 at the moment
- 6 call/phone/ring; back
- 7 bye/goodbye

**Conversation 2**

- 8 speak to
- 9 just a
- 10 get

**Conversation 3**

- 11 Is that
- 12 speaking
- 13 it



- 6 a possible answer, from Poland:  
The phrases we use in Polish for answering the phone are quite different. We have a special word for *hello* on the phone: *halo*. Instead of *Speaking*, we say *Słucham*, which means literally 'I'm listening', and we use *Mówi Marisa* ('Marisa is speaking') for *It's Marisa*. When we ask for someone, we can say either *Czy to Marisa?* (which is basically the same as in English) or *Czy zastałam/zastalem Marisę?* (literally, 'Have I got hold of Marisa?').

### Unit 76

- 1 1 owner 5 instructor  
2 visitor 6 driver  
3 traveller 7 television/TV actor  
4 winner 8 factory worker
- 2 radio listener, film actor, bus driver,  
driving instructor, office worker, English teacher
- 3 1 visitors 6 listeners  
2 owner 7 readers  
3 race/competition 8 speaker  
4 driver 9 winner  
5 workers 10 teacher

### Unit 77

- 1 1 flying 5 sightseeing  
2 shopping 6 understanding  
3 camping 7 teaching  
4 spelling 8 driving
- 2 your own answers
- 3 writing English, painting pictures, sleeping  
in a tent, listening to music, playing football,  
learning languages, buying clothes,  
cooking meals
- 4 possible answers:  
1 Writing English is quite difficult.  
2 Painting pictures is not something I do.  
3 Sleeping in a tent is not something I enjoy.  
4 Listening to music is something I do a lot.  
5 Playing football is something I used to do.  
6 Learning languages is fun.  
7 Buying clothes is boring for me.  
8 Cooking meals is something I do every day.

### Unit 78

- 1 1 celebrate; celebration  
2 describe; description  
3 predict; prediction  
4 decide; decision  
5 organize; organization  
Note that the stress in nouns falls on the syllable  
before the last syllable.
- 2 1 invention 4 solution  
2 celebration 5 prediction  
3 description 6 organization

- 3 1 decision, decided 6 organizing;  
2 solve, solution organization  
3 description 7 predicted  
4 celebrate 8 inventions  
5 invented

4	VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
	move	movement	discover	discovery
	succeed	success	think	thought
	arrange	arrangement	argue	argument
	choose	choice	complain	complaint

- 5 1 an argument  
2 complaint  
3 thought  
4 success  
5 arrangements  
6 discovery
- 6 1 complaint 4 argue 7 success  
2 choose 5 argument 8 thoughts  
3 choice 6 succeed
- 7 possible answers:  
1 No, I haven't. My neighbours are very quiet.  
2 No, I like to think about it carefully.  
3 Yes, we could choose between Spanish and  
German, for example.  
4 No, never.  
5 No, I haven't.  
6 No, I'm not interested in business.  
7 No, family is the most important thing for me.  
8 Yes, a lot.

### Unit 79

- 1 bathroom railway station first floor  
address book bus stop phone number  
dishwasher capital letter police officer
- 2 1 a bathroom 5 a railway station  
2 a dining room 6 an art gallery  
3 a bus stop 7 an address book  
4 a DJ (disc jockey) 8 a dishwasher
- 3 1 number 6 floor  
2 officer 7 stop  
3 jockey 8 phrasal  
4 mark 9 full  
5 tense; participle 10 capital
- 4 department store, sports centre, ticket office,  
traffic lights, swimming pool, credit card,  
public transport, high street
- 5 1 public 7 park  
2 credit 8 machine  
3 birthday 9 office  
4 identity 10 sales/shop;  
5 high department  
6 traffic
- 6 1 identity 3 credit 5 birthday  
2 centre 4 pool 6 store

**7 possible answers:**

- 1 Yes, I have an identity card for work. It's got my name and a photo on it.
- 2 No, I don't.
- 3 Yes, I do. I use it for shopping.
- 4 No, I don't.
- 5 I don't send birthday cards. I email or call people to wish them a happy birthday.
- 6 Yes, I do. I usually buy clothes.

**Unit 80**

1 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A

- 2 1 I hate chocolate.
- 2 They don't like doing homework very much.
- 3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.
- 4 I quite like shopping.
- 5 She doesn't like driving.
- 6 I don't mind working at night.

- 3 1 love/like 5 hate
- 2 all 6 like
- 3 mind 7 quite/really
- 4 really 8 at

**4 possible answers:**

- 1 Yes, I like going to the cinema too.
- 2 I quite like classical music, especially Bach and Vivaldi.
- 3 I love shopping – I go with my friends and we have a good time.
- 4 I don't mind driving, but it's not exciting.
- 5 I don't mind writing emails to my friends, but sometimes it's boring writing emails for work.
- 6 I love watching TV.
- 7 No, I hate housework.
- 8 I quite like talking on the phone to my friends.

- 5 1 I enjoy watching TV.
- 2 I'm not interested in politics.
- 3 My favourite film is *Star Wars*.
- 4 She prefers reading to writing.
- 5 He's an amazing boss.
- 6 Was the party good fun?
- 7 It's a boring programme.
- 8 Singing is enjoyable.

- 6 1 fun 5 interesting
- 2 prefer 6 enjoy
- 3 favourite 7 incredible
- 4 interested 8 modern

**7 possible answers:**

- 1 Yes, it's good fun.
- 2 No, I prefer fish.
- 3 I love Rio de Janeiro: it's a very exciting city.
- 4 No, I'm not interested in jazz.
- 5 Yes, I do. I read books and watch history programmes a lot.
- 6 I enjoy walking in the countryside with my dog.
- 7 No, the restaurants where I live aren't very good.
- 8 I prefer old houses.

**Unit 81**

- 1 **Inside your home:** play computer games; do a lot of drawing; collect stamps

2 1 g 2 b 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 d

- 3 1 does 6 goes
- 2 collects 7 play
- 3 play 8 watches
- 4 go 9 go
- 5 do 10 does

**4 possible answers:**

I do a lot of travelling, I go out with friends a lot, I watch TV, I do a lot of cooking.

I would like to go to the gym and play the guitar. I'm not interested in fishing, camping, computer games, golf, drawing or painting.

5 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

**6 1 ✓**

- 2 False. Kolya is a good singer.
- 3 False. Kolya plays the guitar.
- 4 False. There are various clubs in schools.
- 5 ✓
- 6 False. Natasha is quite good at dancing.
- 7 False. Computers and collecting things are popular hobbies.
- 8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

- 7 1 hobby 5 song
- 2 popular 6 at
- 3 various 7 repairing
- 4 singer

**8 possible answers:**

- 0 Yes, I'm a member of a swimming club.
- 1 I love making things like clothes, and I also enjoy painting.
- 2 Young people particularly like sports of all kinds, but gaming is also very popular.
- 3 I have various hobbies.
- 4 I am in a singing group, but if I sing alone, my voice isn't very good.
- 5 I can sing 'Human' by Rag and Bone Man.
- 6 I'm good at making things for the house: cushions, for example.
- 7 Yes, I often break things, so it's a good thing I like repairing things.

**Unit 82**

- 1 ice hockey, motor racing, table tennis, American football, basketball

- 2 1 game 5 do
- 2 skiing 6 bit/lot
- 3 racing 7 players; team
- 4 go 8 goal

- 3 **INSIDE A BUILDING:** basketball, ice hockey, running, swimming, table tennis, tennis  
**OUTSIDE A BUILDING:** American football, baseball, football/soccer, motor racing, running, skiing, swimming, tennis



4 possible answers:

- 1 I play a bit of football and basketball with friends.
- 2 I play tennis every week and go skiing in the winter.
- 3 I watch football, rugby and tennis on TV.
- 4 Football is the most popular sport in Britain, but swimming, cycling, motor racing, rugby and cricket are also popular.

5 1 match/game

- 2 against
- 3 to
- 4 scored
- 5 nil
- 6 beat
- 7 won
- 8 draw
- 9 against

6 1 match/game

- 2 against
- 3 lost
- 4 drew; with/against
- 5 time
- 6 points
- 7 beat
- 8 scored
- 9 won (or lost)
- 10 leading
- 11 score

7 possible answers:

Manchester City beat Arsenal 2-0. Sterling scored just before half-time, and Aguero scored the second goal in the 78<sup>th</sup> minute.

### Unit 83

1 1 concert

- 2 orchestra
- 3 pianist
- 4 audience
- 5 perform
- 6 opera singer
- 7 performance

2 1 classical

- 2 pianist
- 3 violinist
- 4 orchestra
- 5 musical instruments
- 6 performance
- 7 audience
- 8 performed/played
- 9 pieces
- 10 by

3 possible answers:

- 1 I don't go to classical music concerts very often because they're quite expensive.
- 2 *La Bohème* by Puccini, *The Magic Flute* by Mozart, the *Eroica Symphony* by Beethoven and *Swan Lake* by Tchaikovsky
- 3 I learnt to play the piano as a child, but I don't play now.
- 4 No.
- 5 The guitar.

4 1 made

- 2 not good
- 3 cheaper
- 4 go
- 5 are able to
- 6 like

5 1 tour

- 2 live
- 3 album
- 4 hit
- 5 records/albums/CDs
- 6 musician
- 7 performer
- 8 festival
- 9 recorded
- 10 ability

6 possible answers:

- 1 I really like Radiohead.
- 2 I do both.
- 3 Yes, I saw them at Glastonbury.
- 4 *In Rainbows*.
- 5 Yes, they do.
- 6 No, but they have popular albums.

### Unit 84

1 science violent exciting crime

2 1 thriller

- 2 comedy
- 3 action film
- 4 science fiction
- 5 cartoon
- 6 love story
- 7 horror film

3 1 sort

- 2 adventure/action
- 3 kind
- 4 romantic
- 5 horror
- 6 funny
- 7 type

4 1 romantic

- 2 violent
- 3 scary
- 4 funny

5 1 F – He's an actor.

- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 T
- 5 F – It's a woman.
- 6 T
- 7 F – He's a director.

6 1 about

- 2 brilliant
- 3 in
- 4 stars
- 5 hero
- 6 actor
- 7 director
- 8 on
- 9 Let's

7 possible answers:

- 1 I like thrillers and action films.
- 2 It was a Polish film called *Cold War*.
- 3 It was on at our local cinema.
- 4 Joanna Kulig and Tomasz Kot.
- 5 Pawel Pawlikowski.
- 6 It's about two Polish people after the Second World War. It's a love story with an unhappy ending.

## Unit 85

- 1 1 in 7 -  
2 the 8 of  
3 on 9 a newspaper  
4 out 10 of  
5 on 11 crime  
6 programme
- 2 1 watch; saw/watched  
2 believe/think; none  
3 news; happened  
4 listen; heard/listened to  
5 paper/newspaper  
6 on; drama  
7 to  
8 programme
- 4 1 D 4 D 7 S  
2 S 5 S 8 D  
3 D 6 S 9 S
- 5 1 magazines 5 wars  
2 reports 6 opinion(s)  
3 events 7 journalists/reporters  
4 disasters 8 celebrities

### 6 possible answers:

- 1 This week, Greta Thunberg spoke to the US Congress about climate change.  
2 In the last five years, the UK had a referendum on leaving the EU or not.  
3 I buy a newspaper on Saturdays, but during the rest of the week I usually get news from the TV, the radio and the internet.  
4 The meerkat adverts (for Compare the Market) on TV are not new now, but I think they are still popular.  
5 Jon Snow is a famous TV news reporter in the UK.

## Unit 86

- 1 1 F – Non-fiction is about real things, fiction is not about real events.  
2 T  
3 T  
4 F – If you are in trouble, it's bad.  
5 T  
6 T  
7 F – A novel is a story.  
8 T  
9 F – If you create something, you make it or make it happen.  
10 T
- 2 1 series/number 5 created  
2 novels 6 rules  
3 character 7 trouble  
4 detective 8 solves

### 3 possible answers, from Poland:

- 1 Olga Tokarczuk is a famous author who writes novels.  
2 Bieguni (Flights) is a novel by Olga Tokarczuk.  
3 Korona królów (Crown of Kings) is a popular series on TV.  
4 King Kazimierz is one of the main characters in Korona królów.  
5 Eberhard Mock is a famous detective in fiction.  
6 I sometimes ride a bike on a zebra crossing.
- 4 1 same, mainly 5 butter, publish  
2 mostly, home 6 variety, another  
3 realize, fine 7 blue, including  
4 achieve, receive 8 recent, see
- 5 1 with you 5 is  
2 know it 6 short  
3 good 7 mainly  
4 lots of different things 8 more information
- 6 1 past; mostly/mainly 4 published  
2 including 5 variety  
3 realized 6 tried; achieved

## Unit 87

- 1 1 g 2 d 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c
- 2 1 flight 5 foreign  
2 accommodation 6 checked  
3 booked/arranged 7 packed  
4 might 8 suitcase
- 3 possible answers:  
1 Yes, I always book a long time before I travel because it's often cheaper.  
2 Usually I do if I'm travelling with all the family. If I'm alone, I often don't.  
3 No, I don't.  
4 Yes, always. I need to know what I have.  
5 No, never, but I know I should do.
- 4 1 No 3 No 5 No 7 No  
2 Yes 4 Yes 6 Yes
- 5 1 d 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 e
- 6 1 available 7 a  
2 single/double 8 include  
3 double/single 9 afraid  
4 en suite 10 extra  
5 dear 11 parking  
6 matter 12 details

## Unit 88

- 1 1 went on 5 definitely  
2 recommend 6 stay  
3 excellent 7 tourism  
4 tourists 8 chat



- 2 1 excellent 5 staying  
2 helpful 6 recommend  
3 tourists 7 definitely/certainly  
4 guests
- 3 1 stay  
2 service  
3 chat  
4 recommend  
5 tourists
- 4 possible answers:  
1 One night.  
2 Yes, quite good.  
3 Yes, I did.  
4 Yes, definitely/certainly.  
5 No, it's a business hotel.
- 5 1 g 3 f 5 b  
2 a 4 d 6 e
- 6 1 sign 5 serve  
2 leave 6 change  
3 call/take 7 collect  
4 pay 8 check
- 7 1 key 3 serve 5 out  
2 until/till 4 have; have 6 call

### Unit 89

- 1 1 board 5 airport  
2 check-in 6 hand luggage  
3 boarding card 7 airline  
4 aeroplane 8 security
- 2 boarding pass; hand luggage; board the plane;  
check-in desk; ticket machine
- 3 1 passengers; check-in  
2 reach  
3 boarding; luggage; check  
4 gate; board/get on  
5 airports  
6 print; machine  
7 luggage
- 4 possible answers:  
1 No, I use different airlines.  
2 Yes, I do.  
3 No, the first thing I do is check in, then I have a coffee.  
4 Yes, of course.  
5 No, it doesn't matter to me.  
6 Yes, I do.
- 5 1 You get on the plane.  
2 You fasten your seat belt.  
3 The plane takes off.  
4 Flight attendants provide drinks.  
5 The plane lands.  
6 You get off the plane.  
7 Someone checks your passport.  
8 You collect your luggage.  
9 You leave the airport.

- 6 1 departure 7 landed  
2 board/get on 8 arrival  
3 fasten 9 checked  
4 takes off 10 collect  
5 flight 11 leave  
6 provide
- 7 possible answers:  
1 I'm fine, but my wife is very nervous.  
2 I eat some of it, but it's usually terrible.  
3 I'm excited.  
4 I always try to travel with just hand luggage.

### Unit 90

- 1 possible answers:  
They used to go to Hyères on holiday.  
They used to get a bus to Hyères.  
They used to stay in an apartment.  
He used to go swimming.  
She used to sit on the beach.  
She used to read on the beach.  
They used to have lunch in the apartment.  
They used to have dinner in one of the restaurants.  
They used to relax after lunch.  
She used to write postcards.  
He used to go out on a boat.
- 2 1 couple  
2 beach  
3 boat  
4 rocks  
5 relax  
6 flew  
7 used
- 3 1 We used to stay 4 my dad, while my mum  
2 a couple of weeks 5 lots of postcards  
3 used to swim 6 a typical day
- 4 possible answers:  
1 We went to several places: sometimes the south coast of England and sometimes to a couple of places in Spain.  
2 A couple of weeks.  
3 Yes, I went on a boat in England a couple of times – I enjoyed it.  
4 I like being active – swimming and doing other sports.
- 5 1 go 5 guided  
2 guidebook 6 take  
3 go on 7 round  
4 visit 8 an ideal
- 6 1 photos 7 tour  
2 went; guide 8 visit  
3 got; map/ 9 gets  
guidebook 10 round; take  
4 sightseeing 11 ideal/perfect  
5 guided; prefer 12 look  
6 guidebook

**7 possible answers:**

- 1 Yes, I usually get a map from the tourist information office.
- 2 I sometimes buy a guidebook but not often.
- 3 No, but I sometimes go on bus tours.
- 4 Yes, generally I prefer to go sightseeing on my own.
- 5 Yes, almost always.
- 6 Yes, I spend most of my time looking round.
- 7 No, I don't take lots of photos but my wife does.
- 8 Not often, but it sometimes happens.
- 9 My ideal place for a sightseeing holiday is Venice.

**Unit 91**

- 1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.  
2 Max, this is Emma. (or Emma, this is Max.)  
3 Bye. Hope to see you again. (OR Hope to see you again. Bye.)  
4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. (OR Nice to meet you. Goodbye.)
- 2 1 introduce  
2 shake  
3 greet (*also possible*: meet)  
4 Introductions  
5 welcome  
6 greetings
- 3 1 Hello/Hi; Nice/Good to meet you  
2 again; Bye/Goodbye  
3 this; meet you; welcome  
4 Hope/Good; Bye/Goodbye
- 4 1 See you tomorrow.  
2 He's very well.  
3 What's the matter?  
4 See you later.  
5 See you soon.  
6 How are things?  
7 Give my love to Suki.  
8 I've got to go now.  
9 That's fine.
- 5 things; Fine/Very well; matter; 've got to; dear; give my love; will
- 6 well; fine/good; how's; good/fine  
Anyway; 've got to; later; that's; then

**Unit 92**

- 1 1 How often do you go there?  
2 What sort of music do you like?  
3 What does he do?  
4 How long have you lived there?  
5 What type of films do you watch?  
6 Who does this belong to?  
7 What's his flat like?  
8 Why do you like her?

- 2** a 4 c 7 e 6 g 2  
b 5 d 1 f 3

- 3 1 often; once/twice 5 belong  
2 Whose; mine 6 kind/sort/type  
3 What 7 idea  
4 Yeah/Yes 8 long
- 4 1 What 5 nearest  
2 long 6 seeing  
3 time 7 Which  
4 many 8 far
- 5 1 far 5 Which  
2 close/shut 6 nearest  
3 many 7 What  
4 worth 8 recommend

**6 possible answers:**

- 1 I live in Sevilla, in Spain.
- 2 I have lived here twenty-five years.
- 3 The Alcazar Palace and the Cathedral.
- 4 About a kilometre.
- 5 There are many, but my favourite is Egana Oriza.
- 6 It's only a few hundred metres.

**Unit 93**

- 1 1 you; me; course  
2 bring; please; problem  
3 Could (*also possible*: Can); afraid  
4 polite  
5 responses  
6 take; bring  
7 make  
8 requests; polite  
9 put
- 2 possible answers:  
1 A Could/Can you finish this exercise for homework, please?  
B Yes, sure.  
2 A Luca, can/could you change places with Maria, please?  
B Yes, no problem.  
3 A Could/Can you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?  
B I'm afraid I can't.  
4 A Can/Could you lend me a pencil, please?  
B Yes, sure.  
5 A Could you take these books to the library, please?  
B I'm afraid I can't. I have to leave now.  
6 A Could/Can you finish the/your essay by Monday?  
B Yes, sure.



- 3 possible answers:
- 1 Is it **all right** if I use this dictionary?
  - 2 Do you **mind** if I make a coffee?
  - 3 Could I stay for another ten minutes?/Is it **OK/all right if/Do you mind** if I stay another ten minutes?
  - 4 Is it **OK if I** close the window?
  - 5 Can I **borrow** your book?
  - 6 Yes, **sure/no problem/go ahead/that's fine**.
  - 7 I'm **afraid** I need it.
  - 8 Yes, **of course/no problem/go ahead/that's fine**.
- 4
- 1 Do you mind if I go at one o'clock today, please?
  - 2 Could I borrow a piece of paper, please?/ Could you lend me a piece of paper, please?
  - 3 Is it **OK if I** go to the toilet?
  - 4 Is it **all right if I** sit in a different seat?
  - 5 Can you lend me a pen, please?/ Can I borrow a pen, please?
- 5 go ahead; no problem; of course; I'm afraid I need it.; that's fine

#### Unit 94

1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

- 2
- 1 Would you **like** to come round later?
  - 2 Yes, I'd love **to**.
  - 3 Do you want to **go** out for dinner?
  - 4 That **sounds** lovely.
  - 5 I've just got an **invitation** to a party.
  - 6 I'm afraid I can't.
  - 7 That **would** be nice.
  - 8 Do you want **to** come to a party?
  - 9 I'm **sorry**, but I'm busy tonight.
  - 10 Ben **invited** me to lunch on Saturday.

- 3
- 1 Would you like to go out for a meal?  
~ Yes, great!
  - 2 Do you want to come round for a coffee?  
~ I'm afraid I can't.
  - 3 Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?  
~ Yes, that sounds lovely.
  - 4 Do you want to go out for a coffee?  
~ I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

#### 4 dialogue 1

What shall we do this weekend?  
The weather's nice, so  
what about going to the beach?  
Yes, that's a good idea.  
And maybe we could take the train.  
Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?  
I'd prefer to get them at the station.

#### dialogue 2

Where shall we go tomorrow?  
What about a nice meal at home?  
I think I'd prefer to go out.  
But it's going to rain.  
OK, then let's order a pizza.  
OK, fine.

- 5
- 1 What **shall** we do this evening?
  - 2 Do you have a **suggestion**?
  - 3 What about **going** to see a film?
  - 4 I'd prefer **to** go by train.
  - 5 Yes, **that's** a good idea.
  - 6 Where **shall** we go tomorrow?
- 6
- 1 B What about going to the theatre?  
A I'm not sure about that.
  - 2 A What shall we do on Saturday?  
B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.  
A OK, let's do that.
  - 3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?  
B Let's go to a museum.  
A Yeah, that's a good idea.

#### Unit 95

- 1
- 1 Do you want something to eat?
  - 2 No thanks.
  - 3 I'm fine, thanks.
  - 4 Would you like something to eat?
  - 5 Let me help you.
  - 6 Thank you very much.
  - 7 Thanks. Could I have a coffee?
- 2
- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 help; please | 4 let; worry |
| 2 offer        | 5 refused    |
| 3 need; Thanks | 6 accept     |
- 3
- 1 Would you like a drink?/Would you like something to drink?  
Yes, please. Could I have some water?
  - 2 Do you need some/any help?  
No, I'm fine, thanks./No, don't worry, thanks.
  - 3 Would you like something to eat?  
Thanks./Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
  - 4 Let me help you.  
No, don't worry.
- 4
- |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 f | 3 i | 5 d | 7 g |
| 2 a | 4 h | 6 e | 8 b |
- 5
- |                          |                 |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 That's                 | 5 mind          |
| 2 I'm                    | 6 sorry; polite |
| 3 forgotten; right       | 7 broken; worry |
| 4 very/really/so; matter | 8 rude          |
- 6
- 1 so, really
  - 2 it doesn't matter; that's all right; never mind; don't worry
  - 3 when you:  
feel bad about something  
feel sad about something  
want somebody to repeat something

## Unit 96

- 1 1 certainly  
2 impossible  
3 possibility  
4 definitely  
5 likely  
6 probably  
7 perhaps

- 2 1 D 3 D 5 D 7 D  
2 S 4 S 6 S 8 S

- 3 1 I'll probably ...  
2 ... likely to come ...  
3 ... think so.  
4 ... hope not.  
5 ... there's a chance ...  
6 I **may/might** see ...

- 4 1 probably; may/might  
2 definitely; probably; likely  
3 wedding; certainly  
4 chance  
5 attend; likely; may/might  
6 possibility; so  
7 maybe; certain; probably  
8 impossible

### 5 possible answers:

- 1 I hope so.  
2 I'll probably go out with my friends.  
3 No, I'm definitely going out on Sunday.  
4 I might do a bit of work.  
5 I'll probably watch some sport in the evening.  
6 I don't think I'm likely to spend a lot.  
7 Yes, I'm definitely going to see my family for lunch on Sunday.  
8 Maybe. I'm not sure.

## Unit 97

- 1 1 X it's **also** near the park  
2 X he understands Greek **too**  
3 ✓  
4 X and **also** washed the car  
5 ✓  
6 X and there's a park near the house **as well**
- 2 1 I often eat ice cream/cake and I also like cake/ice cream.  
2 I enjoy watching TV, and I go to the cinema a lot too.  
3 I can speak English/German and I can understand German/English as well.  
4 I read a lot of books and I also listen to music.  
5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.  
6 I drive and I walk a lot too.
- 3 'True' or 'false' as correct for you.

- 4 1 He went to bed late, but he couldn't sleep.  
2 People don't like her very much. However, she's very kind.  
3 Although the food was terrible, the service was good./The food was terrible, although the service was good.  
4 It was snowing, but we still decided to go out.  
5 We lost our dog. However, we found it after an hour.  
6 Although I wore a coat, I was still cold.  
7 I watched the whole programme. I didn't enjoy it, though.  
8 We had a big lunch. However, Jason was still hungry.
- 5 1 I was really hungry, but I had to wait until 10.00 for dinner.  
2 I was last in the queue. However, I only had to wait five minutes.  
3 I was very cold. However, someone lent me a jacket.  
4 I was very frightened, but someone held my hand.  
5 I was late for the party. However, everybody was still there.  
6 I was really tired. However, I stayed at work to finish the job.

### 6 possible answers:

- 1 I didn't like it.  
2 we (still) went out.  
3 it was very friendly.  
4 she (still) went to work.  
5 she didn't pass the exam.  
6 when I got there, it was closed.

## Unit 98

- 1 1 because of 5 so  
2 to 6 in order to  
3 because 7 so  
4 as a result
- 2 1 (in order) to 5 because  
2 so 6 so  
3 because of 7 (in order) to  
4 As a result 8 as a result/so
- 3 possible answers:  
1 because of the weather.  
2 in order to work.  
3 so I was late for work.  
4 and as a result I didn't get to work until 9.30.  
5 because I went out with friends in the evening.  
6 so I was tired the next day.
- 4 1 Secondly 4 First of all  
2 After that 5 then  
3 Finally 6 Before that



**5 possible answers:**

- 1 Firstly, you make the sauce. Secondly, you boil the pasta. Finally, you add the sauce to the pasta.
- 2 First of all, I did a degree in History. After that, I trained to be a teacher, and finally, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
- 3 First of all, we left our home in Rome. Then we stayed in Munich for a week. After that, we spent the second week in Heidelberg. Finally we flew back to Rome.
- 4 First I made a shopping list. Then I went to the market. After that I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner
- 5 Firstly, I had a shower, then I got dressed. After that, I had breakfast and finally, I rang for a taxi and left home.

**6 possible answer:**

First of all, I took a train to Bristol and met my friend, Sue. After that, we went for a walk by the river in the sunshine. Then we went to a café and had lunch which was delicious. And then finally, we went to her flat and had a cup of coffee with her brother.

**Unit 99**

- |        |       |
|--------|-------|
| 1 out  | 5 up  |
| 2 up   | 6 up  |
| 3 over | 7 off |
| 4 out  |       |

- |         |        |        |
|---------|--------|--------|
| 2 1 out | 4 down | 7 off  |
| 2 up    | 5 down | 8 over |
| 3 up    | 6 up   | 9 up   |

**3 possible answers:**

- 1 I would like to give up sweets.
- 2 I grew up in London.
- 3 I feel afraid.
- 4 I don't often go out in the evenings. When I do, I go to dinner with my friends.

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 4 1 Take it off. | 5 Take them off. |
| 2 Put it on.     | 6 Give it up.    |
| 3 Turn it on.    | 7 Turn them on.  |
| 4 Put them on.   | 8 Put it on.     |

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 5 1 correct   | 5 correct   |
| 2 correct     | 6 correct   |
| 3 turn it on  | 7 put it on |
| 4 take it off | 8 correct   |

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 6 1 go back | 4 take off |
| 2 carry on  | 5 go up    |
| 3 go away   | 6 wake up  |

**Unit 100**

- 1 1 d 2 c 3 b 4 f 5 a 6 e

- 2 1 go  
2 out  
3 in  
4 back  
5 ready/dressed/changed  
6 get

- |             |          |
|-------------|----------|
| 3 1 dressed | 4 sleep  |
| 2 ready     | 5 better |
| 3 changed   | 6 get    |

**4 possible answers:**

- 1 I get dressed before I have breakfast.
- 2 No, I get ready very quickly.
- 3 Yes, I usually get changed. I put my jeans on.
- 4 Yes, sometimes.
- 5 Yes, I hope so.
- 6 Yes, we get lots of tourists where I live.

- 5 the rest of the time; hurry up; let me know; I guess so; come on; well done; right now

- 6 1 nothing  
2 like  
3 away/now; hurry  
4 Guess; Wow; done  
5 after  
6 guess/suppose; let  
7 else


- 7 1 The bar was busy so we went somewhere else.  
2 Could you let me know later?  
3 Who is going to take care of the children?  
4 Hurry up, Sacha!  
5 Do you feel like going out?  
6 Penny is here. Everyone else went out.





This list includes some items which are used in Unit headings, and it is assumed learners will understand them.

classroom  
family  
hotel  
learn  
money  
number  
restaurant  
school  
sport  
university  
weather

This list includes some grammar words and some items which are very common, and it is assumed learners will know them. For any unknown words, please use the  to check the meaning.

adult  
anyone  
artist  
ball  
be  
boy  
cannot  
cent  
chart  
child  
class  
cup  
dancer  
diet  
difficult  
everybody  
future  
girl  
he  
hello  
her  
hey  
him  
his  
I  
imagine  
important  
interest  
it  
its  
join  
life  
list

local  
man  
me  
metre  
must  
my  
no  
no one  
nobody  
object  
or  
our  
page  
paint  
people  
period  
person  
quick  
quickly  
real  
room  
scientist  
second (= unit of time)  
section  
she  
show  
skill  
slow  
somebody  
someone  
something  
student  
talk  
tell  
that  
the  
theatre  
their  
them  
they  
title  
today  
tonight  
topic  
understand  
us  
we  
woman  
yes  
you  
young  
your  
yourself

## Word list

The CEFR (Common European Framework) levels are given for all the words/phrases in the **Oxford 3000**. The numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

- a bit (used as *adv*) **A2** 37  
a bit (+ *adj*) **A2** 37, 64  
a bit (of sth) **B1** 37  
a couple (of sth) **A2** 31, 50, 90  
a day/week, etc. 70  
a few **A1** 60  
a little **A1** 64  
a lot (of sth) **A1** 37  
a night *as in* £90 a night 87  
ability **A2** 83  
about **A1** 6  
about **A1** *as in* it's about ... 84  
above **A1** 20  
abroad **A2** 13  
accept **A2** 71, 95  
accessory 25  
accident **A1** 32  
accommodation **B1** 87  
achieve **A2** 86  
across **A1** 19  
act *v* **A2** 76  
action film 84  
active **A2** 15  
activity **A1** 5  
actor **A1** 76, 84  
actress **A1** 84  
actually **A2** 21  
add **A1** 71, 85  
address *n* **A1** 13  
address book 79  
adjective 2  
adventure film 84  
adverb 2  
advert 71, 85  
advertisement **A2** 71, 85  
advertising **A2** 70  
advice **A1** 16, 31  
afraid (of sth/sb) **A1** 17  
afraid *as in* I'm afraid (not) **A2** 87, 93  
afraid *as in* I'm afraid I can't **A2** 94  
Africa 35  
after that 98  
afternoon **A1** *as in* in the afternoon 7  
again **A1** 68  
against **A2** 82  
age **A1** *as in* at the age of **A1** 67  
ago **A1** 9  
agree with (sb) **A1** 22  
air **A1** *as in* fresh air **A1** 57  
airline **A2** 70, 89  
airport **A1** 89  
alarm clock 29  
album **B1** 83  
alcoholic drinks 50  
alive **A2** 30, 63  
all (of sth) **A1** 85  
all day **A1** /morning/afternoon/evening 7  
all right **A2** 49, 93  
all the time **A2** 37  
allow **A2** 55  
almost **A2** 7  
alone **A2** 15  
along **A2** 19  
already **A2** 9  
also **A1** 97  
although **A2** 97  
always **A1** 23  
a.m. 7  
amazing **A1** 72, 80  
American football 82  
American 35  
ancient **A2** 36  
and **A1** 97  
and so on **B1** 3  
angrily **A2** 65  
angry **A1** 17, 65  
animal **A1** 38, 47  
ankle **A2** 10  
another **A1** 49  
answer (the phone) **A1** 75  
any more **A2** 29  
anything else? **A1** 50  
anyway **A2** 91  
anywhere **A2** 33  
apartment **A1** 58  
appearance **A2** 26  
apple **A1** 46  
apply for sth **A2** 22, 71  
appointment **B1** 9  
April **A1** 8  
Arabic 35  
architect **A2** 68  
architecture **A2** 68  
area **A1** 30, 57  
Argentina 35  
Argentinian 35  
argue **A2** 17, 78  
argument **A2** 17, 78  
arm **A1** 10  
armchair 61  
army **A2** 70  
around **A1** 6  
arrange **A2** 78, 87  
arrangement **A2** 78  
arrival **B1** 89  
arrive (at a place) **A1** 23, 53, 89  
art **A1** 66  
art gallery 56, 79  
article **A1** 85  
arts subjects 66  
as a result **A2** 98  
as well **A2** 97  
Asia 35  
ask sb for sth **A1** 22  
asleep **A2** 63



## at

(a place) **A1** 20  
(a time) **A1** 18  
(= @) **A1** 74  
all 80  
breakfast, etc. **A1** 18  
Christmas 18  
first **A2** 21  
least **A2** 21  
midnight 7, 18  
New Year 18  
night 7, 18  
school **A1** 21  
(the age of sth) **A2** 67  
the back of sth 21  
the beginning/start of sth **A1** 21  
the bottom of sth 21  
the end of sth **A1** 21  
the front of sth 21  
the moment **A1** 18, 21, 75  
the same time **A1** 21  
the time **A2** 21  
the top of sth **A2** 21  
the weekend **A1** 18, 23  
university **A1** 21  
work **A1** 72  
attack **A2** 30  
attend **A2** 96  
attractive **A2** 11  
audience **A2** 83  
August **A1** 8  
aunt **A1** 14  
Australia 35  
Australian 35  
author **A2** 86  
autumn **A1** 8  
available **A2** 87  
average **A2** 11  
awake 63  
away **A1** as in go away **A2** 99  
away as in right away 100  
awful **A2** 26  
baby **A1** as in have a baby 16  
back **A1** 10  
backache 31  
bacon 47  
bad 17; **A1** 67  
bad at sth **A1** 66  
badly **A2** 65  
bag **A1** 1, 45  
baker's 28  
banana **A1** 46  
band **A1** 83  
bank account 27  
bar (of chocolate) **B1** 45  
bar **A2** 50  
base sth on sth **B1** 22  
baseball **A2** 82  
basketball 82  
bath **A1** 60  
bathroom **A1** 58, 79  
**be**  
able to do sth **A2** 83  
born **A1** 14  
divorced **A2** 16  
from **A1** 13  
sick **A1** 31  
the same as sth **A1** 3  
together **A1** 16  
beach **A1** 36, 90  
beans **A2** 46  
bear **A2** 38  
beard 11  
beat v **A2** 82  
beautiful **A1** 11  
because **A1** 98  
because of sth/sb **A1** 98  
become **A1** 16  
bed **A1** 60  
bedroom **A1** 58  
bee **B1** 38  
beef **A2** 47  
beer **A1** 48  
before that **A1** 98

begin **A1** 39  
beginning **A1** as in at the beginning of sth **A1** 21  
behind **A1** 20  
believe **A1** 30, 85  
belong to sb **A2** 29, 92  
below **A1** 20  
belt **A2** 25  
best **A1** as in (the) best 67  
best friend **A1** 16  
better (than) **A1** 37  
better **A2** as in get better **A2** 31  
between **A1** 20  
bicycle **A1** 51  
big **A1** 26  
bike **A1** 51  
bill **A1** 27, 49, 88  
billion **A2** 6  
bin **A2** 59  
biology **A2** 66  
bird **A1** 38  
birthday **A1** 8  
birthday card 79  
biscuit **A2** 45  
bit **A2** as in a bit (of sth) **B1** 37, 64  
black **A1** 26  
black coffee 50  
black pepper 48  
blog **A1** 74  
blonde **A1** 11  
blood **A2** 10  
blow **A2** 37  
blue **A1** 26  
board v (= get on) **B1** 89  
board **A2** 1  
board pen 1  
boarding pass/card 89  
boat **A1** 90  
body **A1** 10  
body **A1** as in a dead body 30  
boil **A2** 49  
boiled **A2** 49  
bone **A2** 10

**book** *v* **A2** 53, 87  
**bookshop** 28, 68  
**boots** **A1** 25  
**border** **B1** 36  
**bored** **A1** 17, 80  
**bored with sth** **A1** 22  
**boring** **A1** 80  
**born** **A1** *as in* **be born** **A1** 14  
**borrow** **A2** 93  
**boss** **A2** 69  
**both (of sb/sth)** **A1** 38  
**bottle** **A1** 48  
**bottom** **B1** 10  
**bowl** **A2** 48  
**box** **A1** 45  
**boyfriend** **A1** 14, 16  
**brain** **A2** 10  
**Brazil** 35  
**Brazilian** 35  
**bread** **A1** 45  
**bread (white/brown)** 50  
**break** **A1** 12, 32, 39, 95  
**break a rule** 86  
**breakfast** **A1** 23  
**bridge** **A2** 56  
**bright** **A2** 37  
**brilliant** **A2** 84  
**bring** **A1** 39, 93  
**Britain** 35  
**broken** **A2** 32  
**brother** **A1** 14  
**brother-in-law** 14  
**brown** **A1** 26  
**brown bread** 50  
**brush** *n, v* **A2** 60  
**build** **A1** 34, 39  
**builder** 69  
**building** **A1** 56, 70  
**burn** **A2** 32, 39  
**bus** **A1** 51  
**bus driver** 69  
**(bus) stop** 52, 79

**business studies** 68  
**businessman** **A2** 68, 69  
**businesswoman** 68, 69  
**busy** **A1** 51, 56, 94  
**busy (= telephone)** **B1** 75  
**but** **A1** 97  
**butter** **A1** 45  
**button** **A2** 24  
**buy** **A1** 27, 39  
**by** **A1** *as in* **a book by Tolstoy** 83  
**by the end of sth** **A2** 21  
**bye** **A1** 75, 91  
**cabbage** 46  
**café** **A1** 50  
**cake** **A1** 45, 50  
**call** *n, v* **A1** 44, 75, 88  
**call sb back** 75  
**called** **A1** 4  
**camera** **A1** 29  
**camping** **A2** 77, 81  
**Can I get ... ?** 50  
**Can I have ... ?** 50  
**Can I/you ... ?** 93  
**Canada** 35  
**Canadian** 35  
**capital** **A1** 36  
**capital letter** 8, 79  
**car** **A1** 51  
**car park** **A1** 79  
**care about sb/sth** **A2** 22  
**career** **A1** 69  
**careful** **A2** 73  
**carefully** **A2** 65, 73  
**carpet** **A2** 61  
**carriage** **C1** 53  
**carrot** **A1** 46  
**carry** **A1** 12, 25  
**carry on (with sth)** **A2** 67, 99  
**cartoon** **A2** 84  
**cash** **A2** 27  
**castle** **A2** 56  
**cat** **A1** 38

**catch (an illness)** **B1** 31, 39  
**catch (a ball)** **A2** 12, 39  
**cause** *n, v* **A2** 34, 44  
**CD** **A1** 1, 83  
**CD player** 1  
**celebrate** 78  
**celebration** 78  
**celebrity** 85  
**Central America** 35  
**century** **A1** 18  
**certain** **A2** 62, 96  
**certainly** **A2** 49, 88, 96  
**chair** **A1** 1  
**chance** **A2** *as in* **a good chance** 96  
**change (= become different)** **A1** 37  
**change (money)** **A1** 88  
**change (trains)** **A2** 53  
**change places** 93  
**character** **A2** *as in* **main character** 86  
**charity** **A2** 72  
**chat** *v, n* **A2** 44, 88  
**cheap** **A1** 26  
**check** **A1** 74, 87, 89  
**check in** **A2** 88, 89  
**check-in** 89  
**check-in desk** 89  
**check out** **A2** 88  
**cheese** **A1** 45  
**chef** **A2** 69  
**chemist's** 28, 31  
**chemistry** **A2** 66  
**chest** **B1** 10  
**chicken** **A1** 47  
**chin** 10  
**China** 35  
**Chinese** 35  
**chips** **A2** 49  
**chocolate** **A1** 45  
**choice** **A2** 28, 78  
**choose** **A1** 28, 78  
**Christmas Day** 8  
**church** **A2** 56



cinema <b>A1</b> 84	come from somewhere <b>A1</b> 13	Could I/you ... ? 4, 93
circle <i>n</i> <b>A2</b> 29	Come on! <b>A2</b> 100	count <b>A2</b> 6
circle <i>v</i> <b>A2</b> 3	come round 23, 94	country <b>A1</b> 35
city <b>A1</b> 36	comedy <b>A2</b> 84	couple (= two people) <b>A2</b> 16
classical music 83	comfortable <b>A2</b> 26	couple <b>A2</b> <i>as in a couple of sth/sb</i> <b>A2</b> 31, 50, 90
clean <i>adj</i> <b>A2</b> 56	comma 6	course <b>A1</b> 13, 68
clean <i>v</i> <b>A1</b> 59	comment <i>n</i> <b>A2</b> 44	coursebook 1
clean (your teeth) <b>A1</b> 60	comment <i>v</i> <b>B1</b> 44	cousin <b>A1</b> 14
cleaner 69	common <b>A1</b> 31, 63	cover <i>v</i> <b>A2</b> 3
clear (sky) <b>A2</b> 37	communicate <b>A2</b> 13	cow <b>A1</b> 38, 47
clearly <b>A2</b> 65	community <b>A2</b> 71	crab <b>A1</b> 47
clever <b>A2</b> 15	company <b>A1</b> 69	cream (= colour) <b>B1</b> 26
click on sth <b>B1</b> 74	compare (sth with sth) <b>A1</b> 5, 28	cream (= food) <b>A1</b> 49
client <b>B1</b> 70	competition <b>A2</b> 76	create <b>A1</b> 57, 86
climate <b>A2</b> 36	complain <b>A2</b> 78	creative <b>A2</b> 57
climb <b>A1</b> 12	complaint <b>B1</b> 78	credit card <b>A2</b> 27, 79
clock <b>A1</b> 29, 61	complete <i>v</i> <b>A1</b> 3	crime <b>A2</b> 30
close <i>v</i> <b>A1</b> 12, 73, 92	completely different 15	crime drama 85
close friend 16	computer games 81	criminal <b>A2</b> 30
closed <b>A2</b> 55	computer science 66, 68	crisps 50
clothes <b>A1</b> 24	concert <b>A1</b> 83	cross sth out 3
clothes shop 28	congratulations <b>C1</b> 100	cross <i>v</i> <b>A2</b> 54
clothing <b>A2</b> 24	contain <b>A2</b> 74	crowd <b>A2</b> 56
cloud <b>A2</b> 37	context <b>A2</b> 5	crowded <b>A2</b> 56
cloudy 37	continent <b>A2</b> 35	cry <b>A2</b> 17
club <b>A1</b> 81	continue <b>A2</b> 67	cucumber 46
coach (= bus) <b>A2</b> 51	control <i>n, v</i> <b>A2</b> 44	culture <b>A1</b> 36
coach (= in train) 53	conversation <b>A1</b> 5	cupboard <b>A2</b> 59
coal <b>B1</b> 34	cook <i>v</i> <b>A1</b> 59	curly <b>A2</b> 11
coast <b>A2</b> 36	cooked <b>A1</b> 46	curtain <b>B1</b> 61
coat <b>A1</b> 24	cooker <b>A2</b> 59	customer <b>A1</b> 45, 49
coffee <b>A1</b> 50	cooking <b>A1</b> 81	cut (= in a computer document) 73, 39
coin <b>B1</b> 27	cool <b>A1</b> 37	cut <i>n, v</i> <b>A1</b> 32, 39
cold <i>adj</i> <b>A1</b> 37	copy <i>n, v</i> <b>A2</b> 44, 73	Czech 35
cold <i>n</i> <b>A1</b> 31	corner <b>A2</b> 61	Czech Republic 35
colleague <b>A2</b> 70	corner <b>A2</b> <i>as in on the corner</i> 54	dad <b>A1</b> 14
collect (stamps, etc.) <b>A2</b> 81	correct <i>adj, v</i> <b>A1</b> 3, 4	daily <b>A1</b> <i>adj, B1</i> <i>adv</i> 23
collect (= go and get sth) <b>B1</b> 88, 89	correctly <b>A2</b> 65	dance <i>v</i> <b>A1</b> 12
college <b>A1</b> 67	cost <i>n, v</i> <b>A1</b> 27, 39, 44	dancing <b>A1</b> 81
colour <b>A1</b> 26	cough <i>n</i> 31	danger <b>A2</b> 30, 55
column <b>A2</b> 3	could (= suggestion) <b>A1</b> 94	
come <b>A1</b> 39	Could I have ... , please? 45, 95	

**dangerous** **A1** 30, 56  
**dark** (= with not much light) **A1** 63  
**dark** (= hair colour) **A1** 11  
**dark blue** 26  
**date** **A1** 8  
**daughter** **A1** 14  
**day** **A1** 8  
**dead** **A2** 30, 63  
**debit card** 27  
**December** **A1** 8  
**decide** **A1** 78  
**decision** **A2** 41, 78  
**deep** **A2** 33  
**definite article** 2  
**definitely** **A2** 88, 96  
**degree** **A2** 68  
**delicious** **A1** 49  
**dentist** **A2** 69  
**department store** 28, 79  
**departure** **B1** 89  
**depend on sb/sth** **A2** 22  
**describe** **A1** 5, 78  
**description** **A1** 5, 78  
**desert** **A2** 33  
**design** *n* **A1** 66  
**design** *v* **A1** 70  
**desk** **A1** 1  
**dessert** 49  
**destroy** **A2** 34  
**details** **A1** 87  
**detective** **A2** 86  
**develop** **A2** 34  
**device** **A2** 29  
**dialogue** **A1** 5  
**diary** **A2** 9, 29  
**dictionary** **A1** 1  
**die** **A1** 85  
**difference** **A1** 4  
**different** **A1** 3, 63  
**digital** **A2** 29  
**dining room** 58, 79  
**dinner** **A1** 23

**direct** **A2** 53  
**directions** **A2** 54  
**director** **A2** 84  
**dirty** **A1** 56  
**disagree with sb** **A2** 22  
**disappear** **A2** 34  
**disaster** **A2** 34, 85  
**disc jockey** 79  
**discover** **A2** 30, 78  
**discovery** **A2** 30, 78  
**discuss** **A1** 5, 70  
**discussion** **A2** 5  
**dish** **A1** 48  
**dishwasher** 59, 79  
**dislike** **B1** 80  
**divorced** **A2** 16  
**DJ** 79  
**do**  
 (= have a job or study sth) **A1** 13, 41  
 (an activity) **A1** 41, 82  
 a course 68  
 a degree (in sth) 68  
 an exam 67  
 an exercise 5, 41  
 badly 67  
 exercise 41  
 homework 5, 41, 67  
 research 68  
 the housework 41, 59  
 the ironing 59  
 the shopping 41  
 a sport 82  
 the washing 59  
 the washing up 59  
 well **A2** 67  
 you know the way to ... ? 54  
 you mind if I ... ? 93  
 you want to? 94  
 you want ... ? 95  
 your best 41  
 your hair 60

**doctor** **A1** 68  
**document** **A2** 73  
**dog** **A1** 38  
**dollar** **A1** 27  
**don't mind** 80  
**don't worry** 95  
**door** **A1** *as in front door* 58  
**dot** **B2**\* 74  
**double** **A2** 4, 75  
**double room** 87  
**down** **A1** 19  
**download (music)** *v* **A2** 83  
**downstairs** **A1** 58  
**draw with/against sb** 82  
**drawing** **A2** 81  
**dream** *n, v* **A2** 44  
**dress** **A1** 24  
**drink** *v* **A1** 39  
**drink** *n* **A1** 50  
**drive** **A1** 39, 51, 76  
**driver** **A1** 69, 76  
**driving** **A2** 77  
**drop** **A2** 12  
**drug** **A2** 32  
**dry** **A2** 37  
**duck** 47  
**during (the week)** **A1** 23  
**DVD player** 61  
**each** **A1** 27  
**each other** **A1** 15, 16  
**ear** **A1** 10  
**early** **A1** 23  
**earn** **A2** 27, 70  
**earth** **B1** 57  
**Earth** **A2** *as in planet Earth* 84  
**easily** **A2** 65  
**east** *n, adj* **A1** 36  
**easy** **A1** 65  
**eat** **A1** 47  
**education** **A2** 67  
**e.g.** 3  
**egg** **A1** 45



Egypt	35	equipment	A2 as in kitchen	factory	A2 70
Egyptian	35	equipment	59	fail an (an exam)	A2 67
eight	A1 6	error	A2 3	fair (hair)	B1 11
eighteen	A1 6	especially	A2 64	fall	A1 39, 44
eighteenth	8	essay	A2 as in write an essay 5, 68	fall over	12, 99
eighth	8	etc./etcetera	3	false	A1 3
eighty	A1 6	euro	A1 27	family name	13
either ... or	A2 67	Europe	35	famous	A1 36
electric fan	29	even	A1 64	fan (= to cool yourself)	29, 61
electric razor	60	evening	A1 as in in the evening 7	fantastic	A1 13
electrical store	28	event	A1 85	far	A1 as in how far 51, 92
electricity	A2 34	ever	A1 9, 39	Far East	35
electronic mail	74	every	A1 52	fare	B2* 53
elephant	A1 38	everyday	A2 59	farm	A1 38, 57
eleven	A1 6	everyone	A1 as in everyone	farmer	A1 38, 57
eleventh	8	else	A2 100	farming	A2 57
else	A1 as in everyone else A2, somewhere/nothing else 100	everything	A1 28	fashion designer	69
email <i>n, v</i>	A1 44, 74	everywhere	A2 83	fast <i>adj, adv</i>	A1 65
embarrassed	B1 17	ex (-wife/husband, etc.)	16	fast train	53
emotions	B1 17	ex-boyfriend (-girlfriend)	16	fasten (your seat belt)	B1 89
employ	A2 69	exactly	A2 13	fat	A1 11
employee	A2 69	exam	A1 67	father	A1 14
employer	A2 69	examination	B2 67	favourite	A1 80
empty <i>adj</i>	A2; <i>v</i> B1 59	example	A1 as in for example A1 3	feature	B1 11
en suite	87	excellent	A2 88	February	A1 8
end	A1 as in at/by the end of sth A1 21	except	A2 28	feed	A2 55, 59
end	A1 as in in the end A2 21	excited	A1 17	feel	A1 17
energy	A2 34	exciting	A1 84	feel	A1 as in I don't feel well 31
engineer	A2 68	excuse me	A1 52, 54	feel like (doing) sth	A2 100
engineering	B1 68	exercise book	1	feelings	A1 17
England	35	exercise	A1 [C] as in do exercises 41	feet	A1 10
English	35	exercise	A1 [U] as in do exercise 41	festival	A1 83
enjoy <i>v</i>	A1 80	exit	B2* 51, 55	fetch	100
enjoyable	B2* 80	expensive	A1 26	few	A1 60
enormous	A2 36	experience	A2 71	fiction	A2 86
enough	A1 27	explain	A1 4, 5	field	A2 57
enter	A2 55, 72	explanation	A2 5	fifteen	A1 6
entrance	B1 55	extra	A1 87	fifteenth	8
environment	A2 34	extreme	A2 34	fifth	8
environmental	B1 34	extremely	A2 37, 64	fifty	A1 6
equal <i>v</i>	B1 3, 6	eye	A1 10	fight <i>n, v</i>	A2 39, 44
		face	A1 10	file	B1 73
		fact	A1 36		

fill **A1** 59  
 fill in (a form) **A2** 71  
 film **A1** 84  
 final score 82  
 finally **A2** 98  
 find **A1** 30  
 find (sth) out **A1** 85, 99  
 fine (= OK) **A2** 50  
 fine (= well) **A1** 91  
 finger **A2** 10  
 finish **A1** 23, 93  
 fire **A1** 61  
 first **A1** 8, 98  
 first course 49  
 first floor 58, 79  
 first name 13  
 first of all **A2** 98  
 firstly **A2** 98  
 fish **A1** 47  
 fishing **A2** 81  
 fit **A2** 26  
 five **A1** 6  
 fizzy water 48, 49  
 fizzy drink 50  
 flat *adj* **A2** 29  
 flat *n* **A1** 58  
 flatmate 16  
 flight **A1** 87  
 flight attendant 89  
 floor **A1** 61  
 flower **A1** 57  
 flu **A2** 31  
 fly *n* (= insect) **A2** 38  
 fly *v* **A1** 87, 90  
 flying **A2** 77  
 follow (instructions) **A2** 5  
 food **A1** 45, 50  
 foot (*pl* feet) **A1** 10  
 football **A1** 82  
 for **A1** 9  
 for example **A1** 3  
 foreign **A2** 87

forest **A1** 33  
 forget **A1** 5, 39, 95  
 fork **A2** 48  
 form **A1** 71  
 formal **A2** 3, 62  
 fortunately **A2** 68  
 forty **A1** 6  
 four **A1** 6  
 fourteen **A1** 6  
 fourteenth 8  
 fourth 8  
 France 35  
 free **A2** 27  
 French 35  
 fresh **A2** 46  
 fresh air 57  
 Friday **A1** 8  
 fridge **A2** 59  
 fried **B1** 49  
 friend **A1** *as in* best friend **A1** 16  
 friendly **A1** 15  
 from *as in* be from 13  
 from ... to **A1** 70  
 front **A1** *as in* at the front of 21  
 front **A1** *as in* in front of sth **A1** 20  
 front door 58  
 frozen **B1** 46  
 fruit **A1** 46  
 fruit and vegetable shop 28  
 fry **B1** 49  
 full **A1** 59  
 full stop 79  
 fun **A1** 15, 80  
 funny **A1** 15, 84  
 furniture shop 28  
 furniture **A2** 60  
 game **A1** *as in* play a game 23, 81, 82  
 gap **A2** 55  
 garden **A1** 57  
 gardening 81  
 garlic 46  
 gas **A2** 34

gate **A2** 57  
 gate (= at an airport) **A2** 89  
 general **A2** 63  
 geography **A1** 66  
 German 35  
 Germany 35  
 get **A1** 39  
 (= arrive at/in somewhere) **A1** 23, 42, 51, 53  
 (= be given) **A1** 42, 67, 74  
 (= become) **A2** 42  
 (= buy) **A1** 42  
 (= fetch) **A1** 100  
 (= travel by sth) **A1** 42, 52, 53  
*as in* we/you get (= there are) 100  
 back (= return) **A2** 100  
 better **A2** 31, 100  
 changed 100  
 divorced 14  
 dressed 23, 100  
 in (= arrive) **B2** 100  
 lost **A2** 74, 90  
 married **A1** 14, 16  
 on/off (a train, plane, bus, etc.) **A1** 12, 52, 53, 89  
 on (well) with sb **B1** 16  
 out (of sth) **A2** 100  
 ready **A1** 45, 100  
 sb (= go and find) **A1** 75  
 there **A1** 51  
 to know sb **B1** 16, 100  
 to sleep 100  
 to work 23  
 up **A1** 23  
 gift **A2** 22, 28  
 gift shop 28  
 girlfriend **A1** 14, 16  
 give **A1** 12  
 my love to sb 91  
 sb advice 16  
 sb a call 44  
 sb a smile 44



sb a surprise 44  
 sth up **A2** 99  
 glass (of sth) **A1** 48  
 glasses **A1** 25  
 gloves **B1** 25  
**go** **A1** 52  
   + -ing **A1** 82  
   across (the road, a bridge) 19  
   ahead (= yes, of course) **B1** 93  
   along (the road) 19  
   along here 54  
   and get **A2** 100  
   away **A2** 99  
   back **A1** 99  
   camping 81  
   by car 51  
   down (the stairs) 19  
   down (= decrease) **A2** 99  
   fishing 81  
   for (a walk/swim) **A2** 23  
   home **A1** 23  
   into (a house, etc.) **A1** 19  
   on a guided tour 90  
   on a trip 88  
   on foot 51  
   over (a bridge) 19  
   out **A1** 23, 99  
   out for sth 94  
   out of (a house, etc.) 19  
   out (with sb) 81  
   out with sb (= have a relationship) 16  
   past (a church, etc.) 19  
   shopping 23  
   sightseeing 90  
   straight on 54  
   through (a gate) 19  
   to bed **A1** 23  
   towards (a hill, etc.) 19  
   under (a bridge) 19  
   up (the stairs) 19  
   up (= increase) **A2** 99  
   on holiday 87

goal **A2** 82  
 gold **A2** 25  
 golf **A2** 81  
 good **A1** 67  
 good at sth **A1** 22, 66, 81  
 good chance 96  
 good fun 15  
 good to meet you 91  
 good-looking 11  
 goodbye **A1** 75  
 government **A2** 34  
 grade **B1** 67  
 gram 45  
 granddaughter 14  
 grandfather **A1** 14  
 grandmother **A1** 14  
 grandparents **A1** 14  
 grandson 14  
 grapes 46  
 grass **A2** 57  
 great **A1** 13, 26, 94  
 great fun 15  
 Great Britain 35  
 Greece 35  
 Greek 35  
 green **A1** 26  
 green pepper 46  
 greet **A2** 91  
 greeting *n* 91  
 grey **A1** 11, 26  
 ground floor 58  
 group (= musical) 83  
 grow **A1** 57  
 grow up **A1** 99  
 guess *n, v* **A1** 5  
 Guess what? **A1** 100  
 guess **A1** as in I guess so **A2** 100  
 guest **A2** 88  
 guide *n* **A2** 90  
 guidebook 90  
 guided tour 90  
 guitar **A1** 81  
 gun **A2** 29

gym **A1** 81  
 hair **A1** 10  
 hairdresser 69  
 half **A1** 45  
 half past (one, etc.) 7  
 half-time 82  
 hall **A2** 58  
 ham 47  
 hand **A1** 10  
 hand luggage 89  
 handbag 25  
 handsome 11  
 happen **A1** 30, 85  
 happily **A2** 65  
 happy **A1** 17  
 hard *adj* (= difficult) **A1** 65  
 hard *adj* (= not soft) **A2** 63  
 hard *adv* (= a lot) **A1** 65, 67  
 hardworking 15, 63  
 hat **A1** 25  
 hate **A1** 80  
**have** **A1** 40  
   (= eat/drink) **A1** 50  
   a good/great day 40  
   a good/great time 40  
   a good/great weekend/holiday/  
   journey 40  
   a baby 16  
   a bath 40  
   a break 40  
   a chat 44  
   a dream 44  
   a drink/sth to eat 40  
   a fight 44  
   a guess 5  
   a look (at sth) 40, 44  
   an argument 78  
   a rest 40  
   a run 40  
   a seat 50  
   a shave 60  
   a sleep 44  
   a (nice) smell 44

a swim 40  
 a thought 78  
 a wash 40, 60  
 a shower 23, 40  
 a walk 40  
 breakfast 23, 40  
 got (an illness) 31  
 got (family) 14  
 got **A1** 40, 45  
 got to do sth **A2** 91  
 dinner 23, 40  
 lunch 23, 40  
 to do 59, 88  
 head **A1** 10  
 headache **A2** 31  
 health **A1** 31  
 healthy **A1** 31, 62  
 hear **A1** 85  
 hear about sth **A2** 22  
 heart **A2** 10  
 heavy (= not light) **A2** 63  
 heavy rain 37  
 height **A2** 11  
 help *v* **A1** 4, 13, 95  
 help *n* **A1** 95  
 helpful **A2** 88  
 here **A1** *as in* go along here 54  
 here **A1** *as in* over here 53  
 hero **A2** 84  
 heroine 84  
 hi **A1** 91  
 high **A1** 63  
 high **A1** *as in* 3,000m high 36  
 high street **B1** 79  
 hill **A2** 57  
 Hindi 35  
 history **A1** 66  
 hit *v* **A2** 32, 39  
 hit *n* **A2** 83  
 hobby **A1** 81  
 hold **A2** 12, 39  
 holiday **A1** 87

home **A1** 58  
 homework **A1** 5, 41, 59  
 hope **A1** *as in* I hope so / I hope not 96  
 hope to see you again 91  
 horror film 84  
 horse **A1** 38  
 hospital **A1** 70  
 hot **A1** 37  
 hot chocolate 50  
 hour **A1** 70  
 house **A1** 58  
 housework 41, 59

## how

are things? 91  
 are you? **A1** 91  
 do I get to ... ? 54  
 do you do? 91  
 do you say ... ? 4  
 far 51, 92  
 long **A1** 13, 52, 68, 92  
 many **A1** 45, 92  
 much **A1** 44, 45, 92  
 often **A1** 92  
 old 13  
 tall 11  
 however **A1** 97  
 huge **A2** 36  
 human **A2** 33  
 hundred **A1** 6  
 Hungarian 35  
 Hungary 35  
 hungry **A1** 17  
 hurry up 100  
 hurt **A2** 32, 39  
 husband **A1** 14, 16

## I

don't think so 96  
 guess so **A2** 100  
 hope so 96  
 hope not 96  
 suppose so 100

think so **A2** 96  
 'd like 50  
 'd love to 94  
 'll have (when ordering) 49  
 'm afraid (not) **A2** 87, 93  
 'm afraid I can't 94  
 'm fine, thanks 95  
 'm not sure 94  
 'm sorry but ... 94  
 'm sorry I'm late 95  
 ice (= weather) **A1** 37  
 ice (= in a drink) **A1** 50  
 ice cream **A1** 49  
 ice hockey 82  
 icy 37  
 idea **A1** 92  
 idea **A1** *as in* that's a great idea 94  
 ideal **A2** 90  
 identity card 79  
 if **A1** *as in* Do you mind if / Is it OK if ... ? 93  
 ill **A2** 31  
 illness **A2** 31  
 immediately **A2** 23  
 impolite 62  
 impossible **A2** 62, 96  
 improve **A1** 13, 31  
 improvement **B1** 13

## in

(a place) **A1** 20  
 (something with walls or sides) **A1** 20  
 (= at home) **A2** 75  
 (a big area) **A1** 20  
 2020, etc. **A1** 18  
 (ten) days **A1** 9  
 fact **A1** 21, 86  
 front of sth **A1** 20  
 hospital **A2** 21  
 January, etc. **A1** 18  
 love **A2** 17  
 order to do sth **B1** 98  
 pain 17, 32



prison <b>A2</b> 21	involve <b>A2</b> 70	keyboard <b>B1</b> 73
the back of sth 21	Ireland 35	kill <b>A2</b> 30
the end <b>A2</b> 21	ironing 59	kilo(gram) 45
the middle of sth 21	irregular 2, 62	kilometre <b>A1</b> 36
the morning, etc. <b>A1</b> 18	Is it OK/all right if ... ? 93	kilometres (per hour) 51
the (news)paper 85	Is that everything? 50	kind <b>B1</b> 15
the past <b>A1</b> 86	Is that ... ? (= on the phone) 75	kind <b>A1</b> as in What kind of ... ? 84, 92
(the) spring, etc. <b>A1</b> 18	Is there ... near here? 54	kitchen <b>A1</b> 58
trouble 86	island <b>A1</b> 33	knee <b>A2</b> 10
include <b>A1</b> 87	it doesn't matter 87, 95	knife <b>A2</b> 48
included <b>A2</b> 87	IT manager 68	knock <b>B1</b> 32
including <b>A2</b> 86	Italian 35	know <b>A1</b> 4, 16
increase <i>n, v</i> <b>A2</b> 34	Italy 35	Korean 35
incredible <b>A2</b> 72, 80	item of clothing 24	kph 51
indefinite article 2	jacket <b>A1</b> 24	lake <b>A2</b> 57
India 35	jam <b>A2</b> 45	lamb 47
Indian 35	January <b>A1</b> 8	lamp <b>A2</b> 60
industry <b>A2</b> 36	Japan 35	land <i>v</i> <b>A2</b> 89
informal <b>A2</b> 3, 62	Japanese 35	land <i>n</i> <b>A1</b> 34
information <b>A1</b> 13, 74	jazz <b>A2</b> 80	landline 75
injury <b>A2</b> 32	jeans <b>A1</b> 24	language <b>A1</b> 35, 66
insect <b>A2</b> 38	jewellery <b>A2</b> 25	laptop <b>A2</b> 73
inside <b>A2</b> 10, 58	job <b>A1</b> 13, 67, 69	large <b>A1</b> 26
instead <b>A2</b> 49	journalism <b>B2</b> * 68	last (stop) <b>A1</b> 52, 53
instruct <b>C1</b> 76	journalist <b>A2</b> 68, 85	last <i>v</i> <b>A2</b> 68
instructions <b>A2</b> 5	journey <b>A1</b> 51, 53	last year <b>A1</b> /week/night, etc. 9
instructor <b>A2</b> 76	juice <b>A1</b> as in orange juice 50	late <i>adv, adj</i> <b>A1</b> 23, 65
instrument (= musical) <b>A2</b> 83	July <b>A1</b> 8	late <b>A1</b> as in in your late thirties 30
intelligent <b>A2</b> 15	jump <b>A2</b> 12	later <b>A1</b> as in see you later 91
interested (in sth) <b>A1</b> 22, 80	jumper 24	Latin America 35
interesting <b>A1</b> 80	June <b>A1</b> 8	laugh <b>A1</b> 15
international <b>A2</b> 60	just <b>A1</b> 9	law <b>A2</b> 68
internet <b>A1</b> 74	just a moment 75	lawyer <b>A2</b> 68
interview <i>n, v</i> <b>A1</b> 71	just before/after 7	lazy <b>A2</b> 15, 63
interviewer 71	just over/under 36, 45	lead <i>v</i> <b>B1</b> 82
into <b>A1</b> 19	keep <b>A1</b> 73	leather <b>B1</b> 25
introduce sb (to sb) <b>A1</b> 91	keep a record of sth 4	leave <b>A1</b> 53, 89
introduction <b>A2</b> 91	keep <b>A1</b> as in keep warm 31	leave a message 75
invent <b>A2</b> 5, 78	keep going 54	leave home 23
invention <b>A2</b> 78	keep left/right 55	leave school 67
invitation <b>A2</b> 94	keep off 55	leave sth somewhere 88
invite <b>A2</b> 94	key <b>A1</b> 58, 88	lecture <b>A2</b> 68

lecturer 68  
 left (= not right) **A1** 54  
 leg **A1** 10  
 lemon **A2** 46, 50  
 lend **A2** 39, 93  
 lesson **A1** 67  
 let **A1** 39, 55  
 let me ... **A2** 95  
 let sb know **A2** 100  
 let's 84  
 letter **A1** 74  
 lettuce 46  
 level **B1** 13  
 library **A1** 56, 68  
 lie down 12, 99  
 lift **A2** 58  
 light (= not heavy) **A2** 63  
 light *n* **A1** 61  
 light blue 26  
 like (= similar to) **A1** 4  
 like *v* **A1** 80, 81  
 like **A1** *as in* What's he/she like? 15  
 likely (to) **A2** 96  
 line (= of a phone) **A2** 75  
 line (= of writing) **A1** 73  
 link **A2** 74  
 lion **A1** 38  
 listen **A1** 22, 76, 85  
 listener **A2** 76  
 literature **B1** 66  
 little **A1** 26  
 live (= happening now) **B1** 83  
 live with sb **A1** 22  
 living room **A1** 58  
 lock **A2** 58  
 long (= not short) **A1** 11, 26  
 long **A1** *as in* 20km long 36  
 long hours 70  
 look *n* **A2** 44  
 look *v* **A1** 44  
 look nice/great, etc. 26  
 look after sth/sb 59, 100

look at sb/sth **A1** 22, 74  
 look round 90  
 look sth up **A2** 5, 99  
 lorry **A2** 51  
 lorry driver 69  
 lose (to sb) **A1** 39, 82, 95  
 lose weight 11  
 lost **A2** *as in* get lost **A2**; be lost 74, 90  
 loudly **A2** 65  
 love *v* **A1** 80  
 love *n* **A1** 17  
 love story 84  
 lovely **A2** 11, 26, 94  
 low **A2** 63  
 lucky **A2** 62  
 luggage 89  
 lunch **A1** *as in* have lunch 23, 40  
 machine 89  
 made of sth 22  
 magazine 85  
 main character 86  
 main course 49  
 main road 51  
 mainly **B1** 86  
 major **A2** 30, 36

## make

(= produce/create) **A1** 41  
 (= produce a change) **A1** 41  
 a call 75, 88  
 a choice 78  
 a comment 44  
 a complaint 78  
 a copy 44, 73  
 a decision 41  
 a discovery 78  
 a mistake **A2** 41  
 an arrangement 78  
 a noise 41  
 a promise 44  
 money **A2** 41  
 sense **A2** 41

sure **A2** 93  
 the bed 41  
 sth up **B1** 5  
 make-up **B2** \* 60  
 manage **A2** 70  
 manager **A2** 70  
 manner **A2** 65  
 many **A1** *as in* how many **A1** 45, 92  
 map **A1** 90  
 March **A1** 8  
 mark *n* **B1** 67  
 market **A1** 56  
 married **A1** 13  
 match *n* **A1** 82  
 match *v* **A1** 3  
 material **A2** 29  
 mathematics **A2** 66  
 maths **A2** 66  
 matter **A2** *as in* it doesn't matter 15, 87, 95  
 matter **A2** *as in* What's the matter? 31  
 May **A1** 8  
 may **A2** 96  
 maybe **A1** 94, 96  
 meal **A1** 49  
 mean **A1** 4  
 meaning **A1** 4  
 meat **A1** 47  
 media **A2** 85  
 medical **A2** 31  
 medicine **A2** 28, 68  
 meet (= for the first time) **A1** 16, 70  
 meet (= go somewhere and wait for sb) **A1** 16  
 meeting **A1** 70  
 member **A1** 30  
 memory **A2** 29  
 menu (= in a restaurant) **A1** 49  
 menu (= on a computer) **A1** 73  
 message *n* **A2** 74, 75  
 message *v* 75  
 metal **A2** 29



metre high 36  
 Mexican 35  
 Mexico 35  
 mice (= animal) A1 38  
 mice (of a computer) 73  
 midday 7  
 middle-aged 11  
 Middle East 35  
 midnight A1 7  
 might A2 87, 96  
 miles per hour, mph 51  
 milk A1 45, 50  
 million A1 6  
 mind A2 as in Do you mind if ...? 93  
 mind A2 as in I don't mind 80  
 mind (= be careful) B1 55  
 mine A2 92  
 minus 6  
 minutes past/to 7  
 mirror A2 60  
 miss (a train) A1 53  
 missing A2 3  
 mistake A1 as in make a mistake A2 3, 41  
 mobile phone A1 29, 75  
 mobile number 75  
 model A2 69  
 modern A1 36, 58, 63, 80  
 moment A1 as in at the moment A1 18, 21, 75  
 moment A1 as in just a moment 75  
 Monday A1 8  
 monkey A2 38  
 month A1 8  
 moon A2 7  
 more A1 as in any more 29  
 more A1 as in some more 49  
 morning A1 as in in the morning A1 7  
 most (of sth) A1 85  
 mostly A2 86  
 mother A1 14  
 motor racing 82  
 motorbike 51  
 motorcycle A2 51  
 motorway 51  
 mountain A1 36  
 mouse (pl mice) (= animal) A1 38  
 mouse (pl mice) (= of a computer) A1 73  
 mouth A1 10  
 move A1 73, 78  
 movement A2 78  
 movie A1 84  
 much A1 as in how much A1 44, 45  
 much A1 as in thanks very much 54, 95  
 mum A1 14  
 museum A1 56  
 mushroom 46  
 music shop 28  
 musical instrument 83  
 musician A2 83  
 name v A1 30  
 narrow A2 63  
 national A2 60  
 nationality 35  
 natural A1 57  
 nature A2 57  
 near A1 20, 52, 54  
 nearest 54, 92  
 nearly A2 7  
 necessary A2 62  
 neck A2 10  
 necklace 25  
 need v A1 45, 95  
 negative A1 63  
 neighbour A1 58  
 nephew 14  
 nervous A2 17  
 never A1 23  
 never mind 95  
 new A1 80  
 news A1 as in the news A1 85  
 New Year's Day 8  
 newspaper A1 85  
 next (stop) A1 52, 53  
 next to A1 20  
 next week/Thursday/year A1, etc. 9  
 nice A1 15, 26  
 nice to meet you 91  
 niece 14  
 night A1 as in at night 7, 18  
 night A1 as in last night 9  
 nil 82  
 nine A1 6  
 nineteen A1 6  
 ninety A1 6  
 nineteenth 8  
 ninth 8  
 no problem A1 54, 93  
 no smoking 55  
 no, thanks / thank you 50, 95  
 no vacancies 55  
 noise A2 56  
 noisy A2 56  
 non-fiction 86  
 none (of sth) A2 85  
 noon 7  
 normally A2 23  
 north A1 n, adj 36  
 North America 35  
 north-east 36  
 north-west 36  
 Northern Ireland 35  
 nose A1 10  
 not bad 91  
 not sure 4  
 note (= money) B1 27  
 notebook B2 \* 1, 4  
 nothing else 100  
 notice n A2 1, 55  
 notice v A2 22  
 noticeboard 1  
 noun 2  
 novel A2 86  
 November A1 8  
 now A1 as in right now A1 100

**nowhere** **A2** 33  
**number** (= phone) **A1** 75  
**nurse** **A1** 69  
**nuts** **A2** 46  
**o'clock** **A1** 7  
**ocean** **A2** 36  
**October** **A1** 8  
**of course** **A1** 49, 93  
**off** **B1** *as in* **50% off** 27  
**offer** *n, v* **A2** 71, 95  
**office** **A1** 70  
**often** **A1** 23  
**oh** (= zero) 75  
**oh!** **A1** 91  
**Oh dear!** **A2** 87, 91  
**oil** **A2** 48  
**OK** **A1** *as in* **Is it OK if ... ?** 93  
**OK** **A1** *as in* **that's OK** 54  
**old** **A1** 58, 80  
**old friend** **A2** 16  
**older than** 14  
**oldest** *as in* **the oldest** 14  
**olive oil** 45  
**olive** 45  
**on**  
     **1st January, etc.** **A1** 18  
     **foot** 51  
     **his/her, etc. mobile** 21  
     **holiday** **A1** 21, 87  
     **Monday, etc. evening** **A1** 18  
     **my/your, etc. own** **B1** 15  
     **(something long/flat)** **A1** 20  
     **the coast** **A2** 20  
     **the corner** 54  
     **the ground/first/second/top floor** 58  
     **the phone** **A1** 21, 75  
     **the river** 20  
     **the road** 20  
     **the side of sth / the other side** **A2** 21  
     **the table** 20  
     **the wall** **A2** 20

**time** **A2** 21  
**tour** 83  
**TV** **A1** / **the radio** 85  
**your right/left** 54  
**once** **A1** *as in* **once a** **A1** (week) 23  
**one** **A1** 6  
**onion** **A1** 46  
**online** **A1** 27, 28, 74  
**only** **A1** 64  
**open** **A1** 12, 92  
**open (a document)** **A1** 73  
**opera singer** 83  
**opinion** **A1** 56, 85  
**opposite** **A1** 3, 4, 20, 54  
**option** **A2** 67  
**orange** (= colour) **A1** 26  
**orange** (= fruit) **A1** 46  
**orange juice** 50  
**orchestra** **B2** \* 83  
**order** *v* **A1** 49  
**order** **A1** *as in* **Are you ready to order?** 49  
**organization** **A2** 78  
**organize** **A2** 70, 78  
**other** **A1** *as in* **each other** **A1** 15, 16  
**out** (= not at home) **A1** 75  
**out loud** 4  
**out of (a place)** **A1** 19  
**out of order** 55  
**outside** (= in front of sth) **A2** 52  
**outside** (= not inside) **A2** 58  
**oven** **A2** 59  
**over** (= direction) **A1** 19  
**over** (= more than) **A1** 36  
**over here** 53  
**over there** **A1** 53  
**overweight** 11  
**own** *as in* **on my own** **B1** 15  
**own** *v* **A2** 57, 76  
**owner** **A2** 57, 76  
**pack** **A2** 87  
**pain** **A2** 32  
**painting** **A1** 77, 81

**pair** **A1** *as in* **a pair of shoes** 25  
**palace** **A2** 56  
**paper** **A1** 85  
**paragraph** **A1** 5  
**parent** **A1** 14  
**park** **A1** 56  
**park** *v* **A1** 58  
**parking** **A2** 55, 58, 87  
**part of speech** 2  
**part of sth** **A1** 72  
**particular** **A2** 28  
**partner** **A1** 16  
**party** **A1** 94  
**pass (an exam)** **A2** 67  
**passenger** **A2** 53, 89  
**passport** **A1** 87  
**password** **B2** \* 74  
**past** (= direction) **A2** 19  
**past** **A1** *as in* **half past** 7  
**past participle** 2, 79  
**past simple** 2  
**past tense** 79  
**pasta** 45, 48  
**patient** **B2** 15  
**pay** **A1** 27, 88  
**pay attention** **A2** 5  
**pay for sth** **A1** 22  
**PC** (= personal computer) 73  
**PE** (= Physical Education) 66  
**peace** **A2** 85  
**peach** 46  
**pear** 46  
**peas** 46  
**pen** **A1** 1  
**pencil** **A1** 1  
**pepper** (= black pepper) **A1** 48  
**pepper** *as in* **red/green pepper** 46  
**per cent** **A2** 27  
**perfect** **A1** 13, 90  
**perform** **A2** 83  
**performance** **B1** 83  
**performer** 83



perhaps <b>A2</b> 94, 96	plant <b>v</b> <b>A2</b> 57	prefer (X to Y) <b>A1</b> 28, 80
permission <b>A2</b> 93	plastic <b>A2</b> 25, 29	prepare <b>A1</b> 59
personal (= for one person) <b>A1</b> 28	plate <b>A2</b> 48	preposition 2
personal (information) 13	platform <b>A2</b> 53	present <b>A1</b> 22, 28
personal computer 73	play (a game) <b>A1</b> 23, 81, 82	pretty (= attractive) <b>A1</b> 11
personality <b>A2</b> 16	play (an instrument) <b>A1</b> 81	pretty (= quite) <b>A1</b> 64
pet <b>A2</b> 38	player <b>A1</b> 82	price <b>A1</b> 27
petrol <b>A2</b> 34	please <b>A1</b> 45, 50, 55	print <b>A2</b> 73, 89
pharmacy 28, 31	pleased <b>A2</b> 17	printer <b>A2</b> 73
phone <i>n, v</i> <b>A1</b> 29, 61, 75	plus <b>B1</b> 6	prison <b>A2</b> <i>as in in prison</i> <b>A2</b> 21
phone <b>A1</b> <i>as in on the phone</i> <b>A1</b> 21, 75	p.m. 7	prize <b>A2</b> 27
phone number <b>A1</b> 75, 79	pocket <b>A2</b> 24	probably <b>A1</b> 96
phone sb back 75	point <b>A2</b> 82	problem <b>A1</b> <i>as in no problem</i> <b>A1</b> 54, 93
photo <b>A1</b> 73, 90	Poland 35	produce <b>A2</b> 57
photograph <b>A1</b> 73	police officer <b>A2</b> 69, 79	product <b>A1</b> 27
phrasal verb 79	policeman <b>A1</b> 69	professor <b>A2</b> 68
phrase <b>A1</b> 2	policewoman 69	program <b>A1</b> 73
physical education 66	Polish 35	programme <b>A1</b> 85
physics <b>A2</b> 66	polite <b>A2</b> 62, 93, 95	progress <b>A2</b> 13
pianist 83	pollution <b>A2</b> 34, 56	project <b>B1</b> 70
piano <b>A1</b> 83	poor <b>A1</b> 63	promise <i>n, v</i> <b>A2</b> 44
pick <b>B1</b> 57	popular <b>A1</b> 36, 81	pronoun 2
pick sth up <b>A2</b> 12	population <b>A2</b> 36	pronounce <b>A2</b> 4
picture <b>A1</b> 60	pork 47	pronunciation 4
pie 49	Portugal 35	provide <b>A2</b> 89
piece <b>A1</b> 45	Portuguese 35	pub <b>A2</b> 50
piece <b>A1</b> <i>as in a piece of</i> furniture 60	positive <b>A1</b> 63	public <b>A2</b> <i>as in the public</i> 30
piece <b>A1</b> <i>as in a piece of music</i> 83	possessions <b>A2</b> 29	public transport <b>A2</b> 51
piece <b>A1</b> <i>as in a piece of paper</i> 1	possibility <b>A2</b> 96	publish <b>A2</b> 86
pig <b>A1</b> 38, 47	possible <b>A1</b> 62, 96	pull <b>A2</b> 12
pill <b>B2</b> * 31	post office <b>A1</b> 56	purple <b>A1</b> 26
pilot <b>A2</b> 69	post <i>n, v</i> <b>A1</b> 71, 74	purpose <b>A2</b> 29
pineapple 46	postcard 90	purse 27
pink <b>A1</b> 26	postcode 13	push <b>A2</b> 12
pizza 49	potato <b>A1</b> 46	
place <b>A1</b> 56	pound <b>A1</b> 27	put <b>A1</b> 39
plan (to do) sth <b>A1</b> 13	practice <i>n</i> <b>A1</b> 5	on make-up 60
plan <i>n, v</i> <b>A1</b> 30	practise <i>v</i> <b>A1</b> 5	on weight 11
plane <b>A1</b> 89	prawn 47	sth back 93
planet <b>A2</b> 84	predict <b>A2</b> 78	sth down 12
plant <i>n</i> <b>A1</b>	prediction <b>B1</b> 78	sth in order 3
	prefer to do sth <b>A1</b> 28, 90, 94	on clothes <b>A2</b> 24, 99

**quality** **A2** 28  
**quarter (to/past)** 7  
**question mark** 79  
**queue** **B1** 55  
**quiet** (= not talking a lot) **A1** 15  
**quiet** (= not noisy) **A1** 56  
**quiet** (= not busy) **A1** 51  
**quietly** **A2** 65  
**quite** **A1** 11, 64, 80  
**race** **A2** 76  
**radio** **A1** *as in on the radio* 85  
**railway station** 53, 79  
**rain** *n, v* **A1** 37  
**rather** **A2** 64  
**razor** 60  
**reach** **A2** 89  
**reader** **A1** 76  
**reading** **A1** 76, 77  
**ready** **A1** 45  
**realize** **A2** 86  
**really** **A1** 15, 64; *as in really like* 80  
**reason** **A1** 98  
**receive** **A2** 74  
**recent** **A2** 30, 86  
**recently** **A2** 9  
**reception** **A2** 13  
**receptionist** 13  
**recipe** **A2** 29  
**recognize** **A2** 74  
**recommend** **A2** 88, 92  
**record** *n* **A2** 4  
**record** (= with music) 83  
**record** *v* **A2** 83  
**recording** **A2** 29  
**recycle** **A2** 34  
**red** **A1** 26  
**red pepper** 46  
**red wine** 48  
**reduce** **A2** 28  
**refuse** **A2** 95  
**region** **A2** 33  
**regular** **A2** 2, 62  
**relationship** **A2** 16  
**relative** **B1** 14  
**relax** **A1** 90  
**relaxed** **B1** 15  
**remember** **A1** 4  
**repair** **A2** 81  
**repeat** **A1** 5  
**replace sth (with sth)** **A2** 73  
**reply** *n, v* **A2** 44, 74  
**report** *v* **A2** 85  
**report** *n* **A1** 70  
**reporter** **A2** 68, 85  
**request** **A2** 93  
**research** **A2** *as in do research* 68  
**reserve** **B2** \* 53  
**respond** **A2** 93  
**response** **A2** 93  
**rest** **A2** 31  
**rest** **A2** *as in the rest* **A2** 100  
**result** **A1** 67, 98  
**return (ticket)** 53  
**review** **A2** 84  
**revise** **B1** 5  
**rice** **A1** 45  
**rich** **A1** 63  
**ride (a bike/motorbike, etc.)** **A1** 12, 39, 51  
**right** (= correct) **A1** 3, 4, 26  
**right** (= not left) **A1** 54  
**right** (= OK) 45  
**right now** **A1** /away (= immediately) 100  
**ring** *n* (= jewellery) **A2** 25  
**ring** *v* (= telephone sb) **A2** 39, 75  
**ring sb back** 75  
**river** **A1** 36  
**road** **A1** *as in main road* 51  
**rock** **A2** 33, 90  
**rock music** 81  
**roll** *n* **B1** 50  
**romantic** **B1** 16, 84  
**roof** **A2** 58  
**room** [U] (= space) **B1** 60  
**route** **A2** 52  
**routine** **A1** 23  
**rubbish** **A2** 59  
**rude** **A2** 62, 95  
**rule** **A1** 86  
**run** (= on foot) **A1** 12, 39  
**run** (= travel) **B1** 52  
**running** **A2** 82  
**rush hour** 51  
**Russia** 35  
**Russian** 35  
**sad** **A1** 17, 65  
**sadly** **A2** 65  
**safe** **A2** 30, 56  
**salad** **A1** 46, 49  
**salary** **A2** 70  
**sale(s)** **A2** 27, 28, 55  
**sales assistant** 69, 79  
**salmon** 47  
**salt** **A1** 48  
**same** **A1** *as in the same* **A1** 3  
**same** **A1** *as in be the same as sth* 3  
**same** **A1** *as in at the same time* **A1** 21  
**sandwich** **A1** 50  
**Saturday** **A1** 8  
**sauce** **A2** 49  
**Saudi Arabia** 35  
**Saudi** 35  
**sausage** 47  
**save (money)** **A2** 27  
**save** (= on a computer) **A2** 73  
**say** **A1** 4  
**say sorry** 95  
**scared (of sth/sb)** **A2** 17  
**scarf** 25  
**scary** **A2** 84  
**school** **A1** 67  
**science fiction** **A2** 84  
**science (subjects)** 66  
**sci-fi** 84  
**score** *n, v* **A2** 82  
**Scotland** 35



**screen** **A2** 73  
**sea** **A1** 90  
**seafood** 47  
**search** *n, v* **A2** 30  
**search (for sth)** (= on a computer) **A2** 74  
**season** **A2** 8  
**seat** **A2** 50, 53  
**seat belt** 89  
**second** **A1** 8  
**second floor** 58  
**secondly** **A2** 98  
**secretary** **A2** 69  
**security** **B1** 89  
**see** (= notice) **A1** 43  
**see** (= watch a film/TV) **A1** 43, 85  
**see** (= find out about sth) **A1** 43  
**see** (= visit/spend time with sb) **A1** 16, 43  
**see** (= understand) **B1** 43  
**see you** **A1** (later/soon/then) 91  
**sell** **A1** 27  
**send** **A1** 39, 70, 74  
**send an email** 44  
**send a reply** 44  
**sentence** **A1** 2  
**separate** **B1** 16  
**September** **A1** 8  
**series** (on TV, etc.) **A2** 86  
**series** (of events, etc.) **B1** 30  
**serious** (= not fun) **A2** 15  
**serious** (= very bad) **A2** 32  
**serve** **A2** 28, 88  
**service** **B1** 28, 88  
**seven** **A1** 6  
**seventeen** **A1** 6  
**seventeenth** 8  
**seventh** 8  
**seventy** **A1** 6  
**shake hands** 91  
**Shall we ...?** 94  
**shape** **A2** 29  
**share a flat** 15

**shave** *n* 60  
**sheep** **A1** 38, 47  
**sheet** **A2** 60  
**shelf** **B1** 61  
**shine** **B1** 37  
**shirt** **A1** 24  
**shoe** **A1** 25  
**shoe shop** 28  
**shop** **A1** *n* 28  
**shop assistant** 45, 69, 79  
**shop online** 28, 74  
**shopping** **A1** *as in go shopping / do the shopping* 23, 28, 41, 77  
**shopping centre** 28, 79  
**short** (= not tall) **A1** 11  
**short** (= not long) **A1** 11, 26  
**short form** 3  
**shorts** 24  
**should** **A1** 31  
**shoulder** **A2** 10  
**shower** (= in a bathroom) **A1** 23, 60  
**shower** (= light rain) **B1** 37  
**shut** *adj* **A2** 55  
**shut** *v* **A2** 12, 39, 92  
**sick** **A1** *as in be/feel sick* 31  
**sightseeing** *as in go sightseeing* 77, 90  
**sign** *n* (= notice) **A2** 55  
**sign** *v* (= write your name) **A2** 88  
**silver** **A2** 25  
**similar** **A1** 63  
**simple** **A2** 5  
**since** **A2** 9  
**sing** **A1** 39, 81  
**singer** **A1** 81  
**single (ticket)** 53  
**single** (= not married) **A2** 13  
**single room** 87  
**sink** *n* 59  
**sister** **A1** 14  
**sister-in-law** 14  
**sit** **A1** 39  
**sit down** **A1** 12, 99

**site** (= website) **A2** 74  
**situation** **A1** 4  
**six** **A1** 6  
**sixteen** **A1** 6  
**sixteenth** 8  
**sixth** 8  
**sixty** **A1** 6  
**size** **A2** 26  
**skiing** **A2** 82  
**skin** **A2** 10  
**skirt** **A1** 24  
**sky** **A2** 37  
**sleep** *v* **A1** 23, 44  
**sleep** *n* **A1** 44  
**slim** 11  
**slow train** 53  
**slowly** **A2** 65  
**small** **A1** 26  
**smartphone** 75  
**smell** *n, v* **A2** 44  
**smile** *n, v* **A2** 11, 44  
**smoking** **A2** 77  
**smoking** **A2** *as in no smoking* 55  
**snack** 50  
**snake** **A1** 38  
**snow** *n, v* **A1** 37  
**so** conjunction **A1** 98  
**so ... (that)** *adverb* (= for emphasis) **A1** 72  
**soap** **A2** 60  
**soccer** **A2** 82  
**social life** 15  
**social media** 63  
**socks** **A2** 25  
**sofa** 61  
**soft** **A2** 63  
**software designer** 68  
**soldier** **A2** 69  
**solution** **A2** 78, 86  
**solve** **A2** 78, 86  
**some (of sth)** **A1** 45, 85  
**some more** 49  
**sometimes** **A1** 23

somewhere **A2** 33  
 somewhere else 100  
 son **A1** 14  
 song **A1** 81  
 soon **A1** *as in* see you soon 91  
 sorry **A1** *as in* (so/very/really) sorry 17, 94, 95  
 sorry **A1** *as in* sorry I'm late 95  
 sort **A2** *as in* What sort of ... ? 84, 92  
 sound **A1** *as in* that sounds lovely 94  
 soup **A1** 49  
 source **A2** 34  
 south *n, adj* **A1** 36  
 South America 35  
 South Korea 35  
 south-east 36  
 south-west 36  
 soy sauce 49  
 space [U] **A1** 60  
 Spain 35  
 Spanish 35  
 speak **A1** 39, 76  
 speaker **A2** 76  
 speaking 75  
 special **A1** 8  
 specific **A2** 63  
 speed limit 51  
 spell **A1** 4, 39  
 spelling **A1** 77  
 spend money (on sth) 22, 27, 39  
 spend time doing sth **A1** 70  
 spend time with sb 14, 39  
 spider **A2** 38  
 spoon **A2** 48  
 sports centre 79  
 spring **A1** 8  
 square (= shape) **A2** 29  
 square (= in a town) **A2** 56  
 squid 47  
 stairs **A2** 58  
 stand up **A1** 12, 99

star *n* **A1** 84  
 star *v* **A2** 84  
 start school 67  
 starter 49  
 statement **A1** 30  
 station **A1** 53  
 stay *v* **A1** 88  
 stay *n* **A2** 88  
 stay at school 67  
 stay in **A1** 23  
 stay in bed 31  
 steps **A2** 58  
 still water 49  
 still (= continuing) **A1** 64, 97  
 stomach **A2** 10  
 stomach ache 31  
 stop *n* **A1** 52  
 storm **A2** 37  
 story **A1** *as in* love story 84  
 straight **A2** 11  
 strange **A2** 15  
 strawberry 46  
 stress **B2** 30  
 strong (= not weak) **A1** 31, 63  
 strong (wind) **A2** 37  
 study *n* **B1** 58  
 stupid **A2** 15  
 style **A1** 26  
 subject **A1** 66  
 subway 51  
 succeed **A2** 78  
 success **A1** 78  
 such ... (that) **A2** 72  
 suddenly **A2** 37  
 sugar **A1** 45  
 suggest **A2** 94  
 suggestion **A2** 94  
 suit **A2** 24  
 suitcase 60, 87  
 summer **A1** 8  
 sun **A1** 37  
 sunny 37

Sunday **A1** 8  
 sunglasses 25  
 supermarket **A1** 28  
 support *v* **A2** 72  
 suppose **A2** *as in* I suppose so 100  
 sure (= certain) **A1** 4, 62  
 sure (= of course) **A2** 49, 93  
 surname 13  
 surprise *n, v* **A2** 44  
 surprised **A2** 17  
 surprising **A2** 72  
 sweet **A2** 46  
 swim *v* **A1** 39  
 swim *n* **B1** 23  
 swimming **A1** 82  
 swimming pool **A1** 79  
 Swiss 35  
 Switzerland 35  
 symbol **A2** 3  
 synonym 3  
 system **A2** 67  
 T-shirt **A1** 24  
 table (= furniture) **A1** 1, 60  
 table (= diagram) **A2** 3  
 table tennis 82  
 tablet (= computer) **A2** 73  
 tablet (= medicine) **B1** 31  
 take  
   size 12, etc. 26  
   (time) **A1** 68  
   (= carry) **A1** 93  
   a message 75  
   an exam 67  
   a photo 90  
   a seat 50  
   away 50  
   care of sb/sth **A2** 100  
   off (= leave) **A2** 89, 99  
   place **A2** 30  
   sth off (= remove) **A2** 24, 99  
   the bus/train 51, 53  
   *as in* how long does it take? 52



<i>as in</i> take the first/second, etc.	the news 85	timetable 52, 53
turning 54	the oldest 14	tired <b>A1</b> 17
tall <b>A1</b> 11	the rest 100	to (= purpose) <b>A1</b> 98
tap <b>B2</b> * 59	the same 3	toasted sandwich 50
task <b>A2</b> 59	the worst 67	toe <b>B1</b> 10
taste <b>A2</b> 46	the youngest 14	together <b>A1</b> 14
taxi <b>A1</b> 51	then <b>A1</b> 98	together <b>A1</b> <i>as in</i> be together 16
taxi driver 69	there are five of us 14	toilet <b>A1</b> 55, 60
tea <b>A1</b> 50	there's lots / a lot / nothing to do 56	tomato <b>A1</b> 46
teach <b>A1</b> 39, 76	thin <b>A2</b> 11	tomorrow morning 9
teacher <b>A1</b> 68, 69, 76	thing <b>A1</b> 4	too (= excessive) <b>A1</b> 26
teaching <b>A2</b> 77	think <b>A1</b> 39, 78	too (= also) <b>A1</b> 97
team <b>A1</b> 82	think about/of sth <b>A1</b> 22	tool <b>A2</b> 29
technology <b>A2</b> 66	think <b>A1</b> <i>as in</i> I think so <b>A2</b> / I don't think so 96	tooth ( <i>pl</i> teeth) <b>A1</b> 10
teenage <b>A2</b> 11	third <b>A1</b> 8	toothache 31
teenager <b>A1</b> 11	thirsty <b>A1</b> 17	toothbrush 60
teeth <b>A1</b> 10	thirteen <b>A1</b> 6	top (= clothes) <b>A2</b> 24
telephone <b>A1</b> 29, 61	thirteenth 8	top (= highest) <b>A2</b> 82
television <b>A1</b> 61	thirtieth 8	top floor 58
temperature <b>A2</b> 31	thirty <b>A1</b> 6	total <b>B1</b> 27
ten <b>A1</b> 6	this evening/weekend/ morning <b>A1</b> , etc. 9	touch <b>A2</b> 28
tennis <b>A1</b> 23, 82	This is ... (= on the phone) <b>A1</b> 75	tour <b>A2</b> <i>as in</i> go on a guided tour 90
tent <b>B1</b> 81	This is ... (= introducing sb) <b>A1</b> 91	tourism <b>A2</b> 88
tenth 8	though <b>B1</b> 97	tourist <b>A1</b> 88
term <b>A2</b> 68	thought(s) <b>A2</b> 78	towards <b>A2</b> 19
terrible <b>A1</b> 26	thousand <b>A1</b> 6	towel <b>A2</b> 60
terrible at sth 66	three <b>A1</b> 6	tower <b>A2</b> 56
test <i>v</i> <b>A1</b> 3	thriller 84	town <b>A1</b> 36
text <i>n</i> <b>A1</b> 5, 73, 75	through <b>A1</b> 19	town centre <b>A1</b> 79
Thai 35	throw <b>A2</b> 12	toy <b>A2</b> 28
Thailand 35	Thursday <b>A1</b> 8	toy shop 28
than <b>A1</b> 14	tick 3	tradition <b>A2</b> 63
thank sb (for sth) 22	ticket <b>A1</b> 53	traditional <b>A2</b> 63
thanks a lot 95	ticket machine 89	traffic <b>A1</b> 51
thanks very much 54	ticket office 53, 79	traffic lights 54, 79
that would be lovely 94	tidy <b>A2</b> 15	train <b>A1</b> 53
that's a great idea 94	tie <b>A2</b> 24	train driver 69
that's all right 95	tiger 38	train station 53, 79
that's all, thanks 45, 50	tights 25	trainers <b>A2</b> 25
that's fine 45, 93	time <b>A1</b> <i>as in</i> on time <b>A2</b> 21	training <b>A2</b> 67, 71
that's OK 54		travel <b>A1</b> 76
the army 70		traveller <b>A2</b> 76
the best 67		

travelling 81  
 tree **A1** 57  
 trip **A1** 88  
 trouble **A2** 86  
 trousers **A1** 24  
 truck **A2** 51  
 true **A1** 3  
 try **A1** 86  
 try sth on 28  
 Tuesday **A1** 8  
 tuna 47  
 Turkey 35  
 Turkish 35  
 turn left/right 54  
 turn sth on/off **A2** 59, 99  
 turning *as in* take the second turning 54  
 TV **A1** 61  
 twelfth 8  
 twelve **A1** 6  
 twentieth 8  
 twenty **A1** 6  
 twenty-first 8  
 twenty-one 6  
 twenty-second 8  
 twenty-third 8  
 twenty-three 6  
 twenty-two 6  
 twice **A1** 23, 92  
 two **A1** 6  
 type **A1** *as in* What type of ... ? 47, 84, 92  
 type **v** **B1** 73  
 typical **A2** 90  
 UK 35  
 umbrella **A1** 25  
 uncertain 62  
 uncle **A1** 14  
 uncomfortable 26  
 under (= below) **A1** 19  
 under (= less than) **A1** 36  
 underground 51

underline 3  
 understanding **A2** 77  
 unemployed **B1** 69  
 unfortunately **A2** 51, 68  
 unfriendly 15  
 unhappy **A2** 17  
 unhealthy 31, 62  
 uniform **A2** 24, 67  
 unit **A2** 72  
 United Kingdom 35  
 United States (of America) 35  
 unlucky 62  
 unnecessary **B1** 62  
 unsure 62  
 untidy 15  
 until **A1** 88  
 unusual **A2** 29, 63  
 up **A1** 19  
 up to (an age) **B1** 67  
 upset **B1** 17  
 upstairs **A1** 58  
 use **v** **A1** 4  
 used to **A2** 90  
 useful **A1** 63  
 useless **B2** \* 63  
 usually **A1** 23  
 vacancy 55  
 valley **A2** 57  
 van **A2** 51  
 variety **A2** 86  
 various **B1** 81  
 vegetable **A1** 46  
 vegetarian 47  
 vehicle **A2** 51  
 verb 2  
 very **A1** 26, 64  
 very well 91  
 video **A1** 74  
 view (= opinion) **A2** 56  
 view (= what you can see) **A2** 58  
 village **A1** 36  
 vinegar 48

violent **b1** 84  
 violin 83  
 violinist 83  
 virus (= illness) **A2** 31  
 virus (= on a computer) **A2** 74  
 visit *n, v* **A1** 76, 90  
 visitor **A1** 76  
 vocabulary 5  
 voice **A2** 29  
 vomit 31  
 waist 10  
 wait for sth **A1** 22, 53  
 waiter **A1** 49  
 wake up **A1** 23, 39, 99  
 Wales 35  
 walk **A1** 12  
 wall **A1** 60  
 wallet 27  
 want **A1** *as in* Do you want to ... ? 94  
 want **A1** *as in* Do you want ... ? 95  
 war **A2** 85  
 war film 84  
 wardrobe 60  
 warm **A1** 37  
 wash **A1** *as in* wash the dishes 59  
 wash *n* **A2** 60  
 washbasin 60  
 washing **A2** 59  
 washing machine 59, 79  
 washing-up 59  
 watch *n* **A1** 25  
 watch *v* **A1** 43, 81, 85  
 water *n* **A1** 48  
 water *v* **B1** 57  
 way **A1** 54  
 way out 55  
 weak **A2** 31, 63  
 wear **A1** 24, 25  
 website **A1** 74  
 wedding **A2** 96  
 Wednesday **A1** 8



<b>week</b> <b>A1</b> <i>as in last/next week</i> 9	<b>whose</b> <b>A2</b> 92	<b>wrong</b> (= not correct) <b>A1</b> 3, 4, 26
<b>weekday</b> 23	<b>why</b> <b>A1</b> 92	<b>wrong number</b> 75
<b>weekend</b> <b>A1</b> 9, 23	<b>wide</b> <b>A2</b> 63	<b>yeah</b> <b>A1</b> 92
<b>weigh</b> <b>B1</b> 11	<b>wife</b> <b>A1</b> 14, 16	<b>year</b> <b>A1</b> 8
<b>weight</b> <b>A2</b> 11	<b>wild</b> <b>A2</b> (animal/plant) 38, 57	<b>yellow</b> <b>A1</b> 26
<b>welcome</b> <i>adj, v</i> <b>A1</b>	<b>will</b> (= in promises) <b>A1</b> 91	<b>yes, please</b> 50, 95
<b>welcome</b> <i>n</i> <b>A2</b> 91	<b>win</b> <b>A1</b> 27, 39, 76, 82	<b>yesterday</b> <b>A1</b> 9
<b>well</b> <b>A1</b> 65	<b>wind</b> <b>A2</b> 37	<b>yesterday evening</b> 9
<b>well</b> (= not ill) <b>A1</b> 31	<b>window</b> (= in a room) <b>A1</b> 61	<b>yet</b> <b>A2</b> 9
<b>Well done!</b> 100	<b>window</b> (= on a computer) <b>B1</b> 73	<b>younger than</b> 14
<b>west</b> <i>n, adj</i> <b>A1</b> 36	<b>windy</b> 37	<b>youngest</b> <i>as in the youngest</i> 14
<b>wet</b> <b>A2</b> 37	<b>wine</b> (white/red) 48	<b>zero</b> <b>A2</b> 75
<b>whale</b> 38	<b>wing</b> <b>B1</b> 38	<b>zoo</b> 38
<b>what</b> <b>A1</b> 92	<b>winner</b> <b>A2</b> 76	
<b>about?</b> <b>A1</b> 94	<b>winter</b> <b>A1</b> 8	
<b>can I get you?</b> 50	<b>without</b> <b>A1</b> 49	
<b>do you do?</b> (= what's your job?) 13, 69, 92	<b>wonderful</b> <b>A1</b> 80, 94	
<b>kind/sort/type of ... ?</b> 84, 92	<b>wood</b> (= product) <b>A2</b> 29, 60	
<b>time is it?</b> 7	<b>wood</b> (= place with trees) <b>A2</b> 57	
<b>time/when ... ?</b> 92	<b>wooden</b> <b>A2</b> 60	
<b>would you like?</b> 50	<b>word</b> <b>A1</b> 2	
<b>'s on?</b> 84	<b>work</b> <i>v</i> <b>A1</b> 69, 70, 76	
<b>'s sth like?</b> 15, 92	<b>work</b> <i>n</i> <b>A1</b> 69	
<b>'s the matter?</b> 31, 91	<b>work hard</b> <b>A1</b> 67	
<b>'s the time?</b> 7	<b>worker</b> <b>A1</b> 76	
<b>'s the weather like?</b> 37	<b>working</b> 77	
<b>'s your job?</b> 13, 69	<b>world</b> <b>A1</b> 33	
<b>when</b> <b>A1</b> 92	<b>worried</b> <b>A2</b> 17	
<b>Where's it on?</b> (= film) 84	<b>worry</b> <i>v</i> <b>A2</b>	
<b>Where's the nearest ... ?</b> 92	<b>worry</b> <i>n</i> <b>B1</b> 72, 95	
<b>whereabouts</b> 13	<b>worse</b> (than) <b>A2</b> 37	
<b>which</b> <b>A1</b> 92	<b>worst</b> <b>A2</b> <i>as in the worst</i> 67	
<b>while</b> <b>A2</b> 9, 90	<b>worth doing</b> 92	
<b>white</b> <b>A1</b> 26	<b>Would you like to ... ?</b> 94	
<b>white bread</b> 50	<b>Would you like ... ?</b> <b>A1</b> 95	
<b>white coffee</b> 50	<b>Wow!</b> <b>A2</b> 100	
<b>white wine</b> 48	<b>write</b> <b>A1</b> 39	
<b>whiteboard</b> 1	<b>write an essay</b> 68	
<b>who</b> <b>A1</b> 92	<b>write a reply</b> 44	
<b>Who's calling?</b> 75	<b>write sth down</b> <b>A2</b> 4	
<b>whole</b> <b>A2</b> 72	<b>writing</b> <b>A1</b> 77	
	<b>writer</b> <b>A1</b> 86	

\* These 13 words are from the **Oxford 5000**.

## Abbreviations used in the book

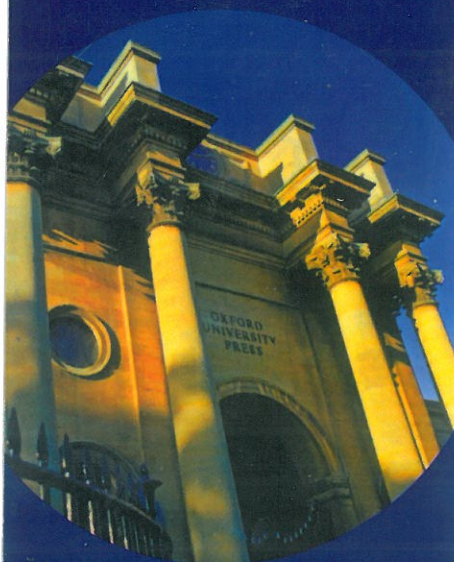
<i>adj</i>	adjective
<i>adv</i>	adverb
[C]	(of a noun) countable
<i>inf</i>	informal
<i>n</i>	noun
OPP	opposite
<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>pp</i>	past participle
<i>pt</i>	past tense
<i>sing</i>	singular
<i>sb</i>	somebody
<i>sth</i>	something
SYN	synonym
[U]	(of a noun) uncountable
<i>v</i>	verb



Oxford University Press  
is the world's authority  
on the English language.

As part of the University of  
Oxford, we are committed to  
furthering English language  
learning worldwide.

We continuously bring  
together our experience,  
expertise and research to  
create resources such as  
this one, helping millions of  
learners of English to achieve  
their potential.



**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

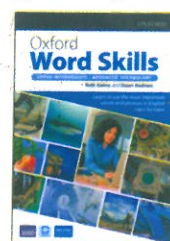
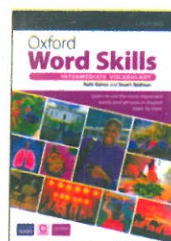
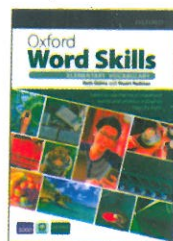
[www.oup.com/elt](http://www.oup.com/elt)

# Oxford Word Skills

## ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY

**Learn to use the most important words  
and phrases in English topic by topic**

Based on the Oxford 3000™, *Oxford Word Skills* teaches you  
the words and phrases you need to use in English in real life.  
The Oxford 3000 is a list of the 3,000 essential core words that  
every learner of English needs to know, graded by CEFR level.



- learn over 2,400 words and phrases
- improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- practise the words in context
- study 100 units (20 extra!) with more practice
- use in the classroom and for self-study

Now with one year's access to the best-selling  
*Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app.

Use the app with *Oxford Word Skills* to:

- listen to the pronunciation of each new word  
and do exercises on pronunciation
- look up the meaning of any word you don't know



Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who  
specialize in writing material for learning and teaching vocabulary.

**Oxford  
3000**

